This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

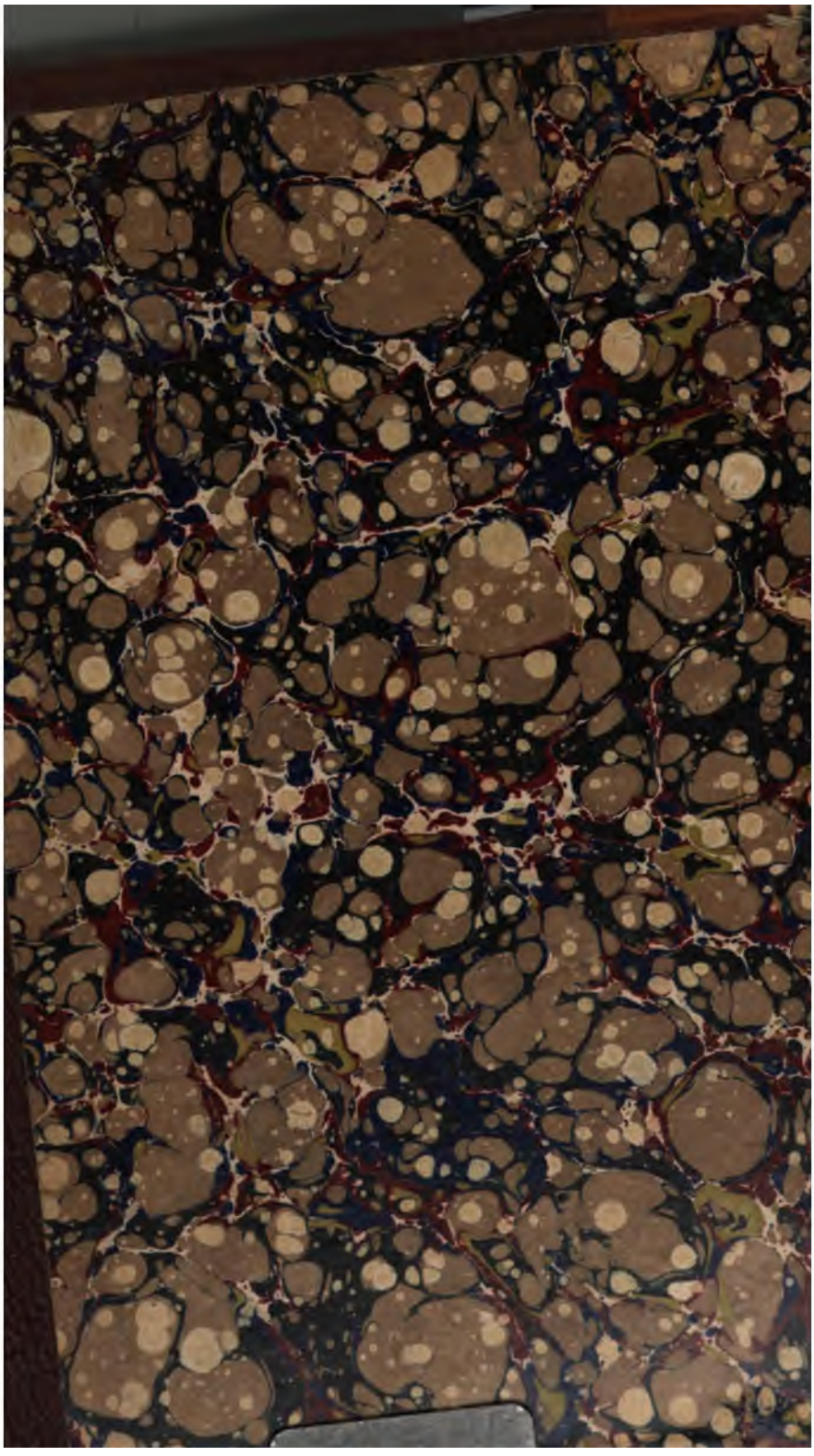
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



.6

2e

Caxton's Blanchardyn and Eglantine.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, No. LVIII.

1890.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & Co.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Blaincandin

Caxton's

Blanchardyn and Eglantine

c. 1489.

FROM LORD SPENCER'S UNIQUE IMPERFECT COPY,
COMPLETED BY THE ORIGINAL FRENCH AND THE SECOND
ENGLISH VERSION OF 1595,

EDITED BY

DR. LEON KELLNER,
OF VIENNA.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,
DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.
1890.
[*Reprinted 1906.*]

LIBRARY
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR
UNIVERSITY
122444

Extra Series, LVIII.

Richard Clay & Sons, Limited, London and Bungay.

TO

DR. F. J. FURNIVALL,

THE DISINTERESTED FURTHERER

OF

TRUE SCHOLARSHIP,

THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED.

CONTENTS OF INTRODUCTION.

I. SYNTAX OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

NOUN.

§ 1. *Relations between the Noun and the other parts of speech*, p. v.
§ 2. *Abstract and concrete Nouns interchanged*, p. viii.
§ 3. *Number*, p. ix.
§ 4. *The Nominative Case*, p. xi.
§ 5. *The Genitive Case*, p. xv.
§ 6. *The Dative Case*, p. xxiii.
§ 7. *The Accusative Case*, p. xxiv.
§ 8. *The Article*, p. xxvi.
§ 9. *The Adjective*, p. xxviii.
§ 10. *Personal Pronouns*, p. xxix.
§ 11. *Reflexive Pronoun*, p. xxxv.
§ 12. *The Possessive Pronoun*, p. xxxv.
§ 13. *The Demonstrative Pronouns*, p. xxxvi.
§ 14. *Interrogative Pronouns*, p. xxxvii.
§ 15. *The Relative Pronoun*, p. xxxvii.
§ 16. *The Indefinite Pronouns*, p. xlvi.

VERB.

§ 17. *Impersonal Verbs*, p. xlvii.
§ 18. *Intransitive, Transitive, and Reflexive Verbs*, p. li.
§ 19. *Auxiliary Verbs*, p. liii.
§ 20. *Voice*, p. liv.
§ 21. *Verbal Forms in Old English, indifferent with regard to Voice*, p. lv.
§ 22. *Tense*, p. lvi.
§ 23. *Mood*, p. lix.
§ 24. *Imperative Mood*, p. lx.
§ 25. *The Infinitive. Active and Passive*, p. lxi.
§ 26. *The Simple Infinitive not so much restricted as in Modern English*, p. lxiv.
§ 27. *'To' and 'for to' preceding the Gerundial Infinitive*, p. lxv.
§ 28. *Functions of the Infinitive*, p. lxv.
§ 29. *The Infinitive Absolute*, p. lxvi.
§ 30. *The Infinitive in connection with the Accusative (or Nominative) Case*, p. lxx.
§ 31. *The Infinitive sometimes omitted*, p. lxxi.
§ 32. *The Present Participle*, p. lxxi.
§ 33. *The Past Participle*, p. lxxii.
§ 34. *The Verbal Noun*, p. lxxiv.
§ 35. *The Adverb*, p. lxxvii.
§ 36. *Prepositions*, p. lxxxii.
§ 37. *Conjunctions*, p. lxxxvi.

II. SYNTAX OF THE SENTENCE.

§ 38. *Concord*, p. xci.
§ 39. *Co-ordination instead of Subordination*, p. xciv.
§ 40. *Noun Clauses*, p. xcv.
§ 41. *Change of direct and indirect speech*, p. xcviii.
§ 42. *Adjective Clauses*, p. c.

III. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

§ 43. *Subject and Predicate (Inversion)*, p. ci.
§ 44. *The Predicative Verb*, p. ciii.
§ 45. *Place of the Object*, p. ciii.
§ 46. *Place of the Attribute*, p. cv.
§ 47. *Place of the Adverb*, p. cvi.
§ 48. *Apposition*, p. cvii.
§ 49. *Contraction*, p. cviii.

APPENDIX.

I. *Caxton as a translator. His style*, p. cx.
II. *The Manuscripts and Prints of the Romance*, p. cxvi.

LIST OF BOOKS QUOTED IN THE INTRODUCTION.

Abbott, A Shakspearian Grammar.
Aelfric's Homilies. Ed. B. Thorpe.
Aelfric's Lives of Saints. Ed. Skeat, E. E. T. S.
Ancren Riwle. Ed. Morton.
Ayenbite of Inwyt, by Dan Michel. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
Aymon, The four Sonnes of, by Caxton. Ed. Octavia Richardson, E. E. T. S.
Beowulf. Ed. M. Heyne, Paderborn, 1879.
Blades, William Caxton, 4°.
Blanchardyn and Eglantyne. The present edition.
Blickling Homilies. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
Boorde, Andrew. Ed. J. F. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
Charles the Grete, by Caxton. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, E E. T. S.
Chaucer, Boece. Boethius's De Consolatione philosophiæ. Ed. R. Morris, 1886. Chaucer Society.
Chaucer. Ed. R. Morris, 1866, 6 vols.
Chronicle, Anglo-Saxon. Ed. Earle.
Cura Pastoralis, Pope Gregory's. Old English Translation. Ed. Sweet, E. E. T. S.
Curial, Caxton's. Ed. F. J. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
Cursor Mundi. A Northumbrian Poem of the 14th Century. Ed. R. Morris, I—V. London, E. E. T. S.
Curtesye, Book of, by Caxton. Ed. F. J. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
Einenkel, Streifzüge durch die M.E. Syntax. Münster, 1887.
Elene, Cynewulf's. Ed. Zupitza. Berlin, 1877.
Eneydos, Caxton's. Ed. M. T. Culley, E. E. T. S.
Gascoigne, Steel-Glass. Ed. Arber.
Genesis and Exodus, Story of. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
Gesta Romanorum. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, 1879, E. E. T. S.
Gorboduc or Ferrex and Porrex. Ed. L. Toulmin-Smith. Heilbronn, 1883.
Greene, Robt., Works. Ed. A. Dyce.
Guy of Warwick. Ed. Zupitza, E. E. T. S.
Hampole, Prose Treatises. Ed. Perry, E. E. T. S.
Huon of Burdeux, by Sir John Bourchier, Lord Berners. Ed. S. L. Lee, E. E. T. S.
Koch, C. F., Historische Grammatik der englischen Sprache II. Second edition. Revised by Zupitza.
Layamon's Brut. Ed. Sir F. Madden.
Lyly's Euphues. Ed. Landmann. Heilbronn, 1887.
Marlowe's Works. Ed. A. Dyce.
Melusine. Ed. A. K. Donald, E. E. T. S.
Morte Darthur, by Malory. Ed. O. H. Sommer, 1889.
O. E. H. = Old English Homilies, I. II. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
Old English Miscellany. Ed. R. Morris, E. E. T. S.
Orm. = Ormulum. Ed. White-Holt.
Orosius. Ed. Sweet, E. E. T. S.
Peele's Works. Ed. A. Dyce.
Piers Plowman. Ed. Skeat, E. E. T. S.
Schmidt, Alex., Shakspere-Lexicon.
Shakspere's Works. Globe Edition.
Spenser's Works. Ed. R. Morris.
Starkey, England in the Reign of Henry VII. Ed. J. M. Cowper and S. H. Herrtage, E. E. T. S.
Trevisa, Higden's Polychronicon. Ed. Churchill Babington and Rawson Lumby.
Wills, Bury. Camden Society.
Wills, Early English. Ed. F. J. Furnivall, E. E. T. S.
Wulfstan, Homilies. Ed. Napier. Berlin, 1883.
Wyclif's English Works. Ed. F. D. Matthew, E. E. T. S.

INTRODUCTION.

I. SYNTAX OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. *Relations between the Noun and the other parts of speech.*

From the logician's point of view, every 'part of speech' has a province of its own, strictly limited and separated from the other 'parts'; but in practice, language constantly cuts the line drawn by Aristotle, and some English students are wont to say that nearly every short English noun and verb can be used as verb, noun, and adjective, while nearly every adjective can be used as a noun: 'a plant, plant-life or plant-culture, to plant; tea, tea-district, we'll tea you at our tent; love, love trifles, to love; his english, English ways, to english; the true, the beautiful; true that line,' &c.

In Old English there are several instances in which both noun and adjective are denoted by the same form of a word, as *earfoð* (difficulty and difficult), *leoht* (light *sb.*, bright *adj.*), *weorð* (worth, *sb.* and *adj.*), *yrre* (wrath, *sb.* and *adj.*); every adjective may be used substantively, in the singular as well as in the plural, in the positive as well as in the comparative and superlative degree; the infinitive and the verbal noun (in *-ung*, *-ing*) may be said to belong to the noun as well as to the verb. Theoretically, the tendency of every literary language of the present day is to observe the laws of logic in grammar and style, and to restrict as far as possible the use of every part of speech to its own dominion, though practically, as stated above, speakers and writers claim and exercise full freedom in this respect. Caxton and his contemporaries did not care to be fettered by niceties of logic, and thus we have to state the following relations, in his books, between the noun and the other parts of speech.

1. *Nouns used as adjectives.*

We have kept in Modern English a few such expressions as 'queen-mother, queen-dowager, lord-lieutenant,'[1] where 'queen,' 'lord'

[1] At the Philological Society's Meeting on Nov. 1., when parts of this Introduction were read as a Paper, the Members divided these 3 sample-words into two classes, I. two nouns, 'queen-mother'; II. noun and adjective, 'queen-dowager,' 'lord-lieutenant.'

are to be looked on more as appositions than as the first part of compounds; and there are others, like 'fellow-creature, deputy-marshal, champion-sculler,' where 'fellow,' 'deputy,' 'champion' are used quite adjectively. But while in Modern English this use is restricted in common speech to a few cases,—I exclude the conscious archaisms in poetry and historic romances,—Caxton is very free in forming such *appositive compositions*:—

the paynem kynge Alymodes, *Blanchardyn* 38/2, 90/25, 133/11; a man straunger,[1] *ibid.* 43/9 (original: homme estrange); a knyght straunger,[1] 51/19, 125/33; lady paramours, 78/31, 205/23; leches cyrurgiens,[1] 102/18; kynge sarasyne,[1] 129/8, 133/31 (sarasyn is a pure adjective as well, cf. 131/15); kyng prysoner, 148/5; felon conspiratours, 178/16; felon paynems, 189/1; felon enmyes, 205/25.

This is quite a common Middle English use.

Cursor Mundi—yon traitor juu, 4397; knau barns (male children), 5544. Cf. *Orm. Gloss.* s. v.

Chaucer—a coward ape, III. 198; felon look, V. 9.

Gesta Romanorum—the fole knygt, p. 20; lorell knaue, p. 80; a leper man, p. 190; the traitour servant, p. 316.

Early E. Wills (ed. Furnivall)—the freres prechoures, 17/2.

Morte Darthur—queens sorceresses, 187/27; cf. 212/19. the same traitour knyght, 289/34; cf. 290/17, 294/33.

This use becomes rare in the 16th century, and probably dies out for a time, though it is afterwards revived in literary, if not in common, speech. Berners, in his *Hum of Burdeux*, has still 'a felon traitour,' I. 5/4; 'thou false traitour knyght,' I. 41/26. But the edition of 1601 alters the latter passage into '*trayterous* knyght.' 'Traitor knight' and like expressions will, however, be found in plenty of later poems and romances, though more or less consciously as archaisms.

2. *Adjectives used substantively.*

Compared with its power in Old English, and even in the first two centuries of the Middle-English period, the adjective of the present day has lost a good deal of its vigour and independence. By inflexion, any adjective could formerly express alone what it can now say only by adding a noun: e. g. *se góda* (the good man), *þæt*

[1] This postposition of the adjective-noun, due to French influence, will be dealt with under Arrangement of Words.

gód (the good, in opposition to evil), *þá gódan* (the good ones, the righteous). We can still use: 'the good and evil of this life, of adversity,' &c.; 'the good (*pl.*) shall be happy, the evil (*pl.*) miserable, hereafter.' But in consequence of the inflexion having decayed, the independence of the adjective was to some extent given up, in order to avoid ambiguity. In Modern English prose we only retain—and in the plural only, as to persons—those which exclude all ambiguity, *e. g.* 'the poor and the rich,' always *plural* now, Psalms and Bible used *singular*, or whose ambiguity the context removes. Caxton's use of the adjectives is, in this respect, nearly modern.

The adjectives used substantively may be divided into the following groups:—

(*a*) Adjectives qualifying concrete nouns, mostly persons.

Specyall = friend, *Blanch.* 84/34; elsewhere, frende specyall, 72/10, 73/30, 75/9.

crysten = christians, 154/1, 183/31 (crysten men, 140/2).

famyllyer = intimate friend. 'That night noon of them alle, were he neuer so moche her famyllyer, cam to see her,' *Blanch.* 51/16.

the quycke = the quick (living) flesh. Cf. the French: toucher au *vif*, 'loue smote her ayen wyth a darte *to the quycke* tyll þe herte of her,' *Blanch.* 67/32.

his elder = his elders. 'He passed them that were his elder in age,' *Blanch.* 13/21. Original: les plus sagies de soy.

(*b*) Adjectives used as abstract nouns.

Such adjectives in the positive degree are rarely met with. 'Casuall fryuolles,' *Blanch.* 44/21, translates Old French 'frivoleances.' 'yet ought ye to maynten & holde *thapposite*,' *ibid.* 44/17; in certayne, 97/1.

To this group belong also the adjectives denoting *a.* languages, as: frenshe, *Blanch.* 1/24; englysshe, 1/24, 2/9; *b.* colours, as: in red, 64/10, 164/5; and *c.* adjectives in the genitive case used adverbially, as: of freshe, *Blanch.* 164/12, 165/21; of newe, *ibid.* 100/26, 147/18, 195/7. The latter correspond to the Middle English 'newes,' *Story of Gen. and Exodus* (ed. R. Morris), l. 240, and note; of lyght = lightly, 129/33.

There is one instance of an abstract adjective in the comparative degree: 'men must suffre, for *better* to haue,' *Blanch.* 68/25.

But it occurs pretty often in the superlative:—The thykkest of the folke = the thykkest press, 42/6, 59/5, 106/8, 167/16; it is for your best, 44/23, 185/19; he sholde do the best and the worst, 48/16; at the last, 188/20, and frequently.

3. *Prepositions used as Nouns.*

'Her best biloued (Blanchardyn) was alle redy com *to his aboue* ouere Rubyon,' *Blanch.* 85/3; *his aboue* (in this as well as in the following two passages) translates the French *au-dessus;* 'they were come *to their aboue* of their enmyes,' 142/32; 'ye are therof come *to your aboue*,' 149/27.

4. *The Adverb used as a Noun.*

There is one instance only in *Blanchardyn:* 'he had called alle his barons and lordes, & alle the gentylmen *of there aboute*,' 98/16. Cf. Modern English, *the whereabouts*; perhaps also *Aymon*, 59/5: 'ye shall now here and understande from *the* hensfourthon a terryble and a pyteous songe.'

§ 2. *Abstract and concrete Nouns interchanged.*

Logic classifies nouns, with reference to the mode in which things exist, into concrete and abstract. However, not only in poetry, but also in simple prose both classes are often (as now) interchanged.

(*a*) Abstracts used in a concrete sense:—

counseyll (as now) = French *conseil.* '(She) spake at that same owre wyth *certayne of her counseyll*,' *Blanch.* 76/32.

chivalrie = knights. 'I do yelde and delyuere into your handes the kynge of Polonye, your enemye, whiche I haue taken with the helpe of your sone, and of your noble and worthy cheualrye,'[1] 108/34. Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 47/22.

love = lover, sweetheart (as now), 25/2, 26/15, *et passim.* Cf. Gloss. *lover* occurs 30/14.

grace = gracious person. 'I presente this lytyl book unto the noble grace of my sayd lady,' 1/7, 8. ('Her Grace, your Grace,' now.)

Verbal nouns in *-ing*, originally abstracts, often become concrete.

clothing = clothes, *Blanch.* 148/18, 159/32. (*Bible:* 'her clothing was of wrought gold.')

kyssing = a kiss. 'That one onely kyssyng that I toke of yow,' *Blanch.* 134/8.

[1] So in Byron, Macaulay's *Ivry*, &c. &c.

It is doubtful whether 'helpes' in the following passage is correct, or a misprint for helpers:[1] 'Would Subyon or not, and all his helpes, the noble lady was taken out of his power,' 197/21. *Helpe* = helper looks suspicious, because it does not occur, so far as I am aware, elsewhere in Caxton; but it is used in the same sense in the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, l. 3409:

> And (Ietro) at wiþ moysen festelike,
> And tagte him siþen witterlike
> Under him *helpes* oþere don.

Of course 'helpe' is not to be confounded with 'help'; the latter is abstract, the former concrete; cf. hunte = hunter. *Layamon*, 21337; *O. E. Hom.* II. 209; *Orm.* 13471; Chaucer, *Knight's Tale*, 1160; *Stratmann*, s. v.; Skeat, *Notes to Piers Plowman*, p. 402.

Abstracts used for concretes are not very common in Middle English:—

Cursor Mundi, barunage = barons, 4627, 8533.

Chaucer, message = messenger, *Man of Law's Tale*, 333. Cf. sonde = messenger, *O. E. Hom.* I. 249, *Story of Gen. and Ex.* Glossary.

Langland (*Piers Plowman*), retynaunce = a suit of retainers. Skeat, *Notes to P. Pl.*, p. 46. treuthe = a true man, a righteous man, Skeat, *l. c.* 297.

A few are retained in Modern English, as a justice = judge, a witness, &c.

(*b*) Concrete nouns used as abstracts.

I know of only one instance in *Blanchardyn*, *chief* = beginning: 'or euer he myght come to the chyeff of his enterpryse,' *Blanch.* 17/4. chief is = *cap* (caput), which exactly answers to *heafod*, head. Cf. *Morte Darthur* 144/8: 'ther by was *the hede of the streme*, a fayre fountayn.'

field = battle, occurs in *Morte Darthur* 172/17, and is often to be met with in Elizabethan authors: *Gorboduc*, l. 230; Gascoigne, *Steel-Glass*, pp. 58, 63, 64; Spenser, *F. Q.*, I. iii. 379; Shakspere, Schmidt, *s. v.*

§ 3. *Number.*

[1] Cf. our 'lady-help,' and 'help' (American), the regular word for servant.

CONTENTS.

	PAGES
INTRODUCTION ON CAXTON'S SYNTAX, STYLE, ETC. ...	v-cxxvii
Caxton's Blanchardyn and Eglantine ... ... (less Leaf VI, supplied from the Paris MS. Bibl. Nat. 24.371, of the French original.)	1-206
Continuation FROM THOMAS POPE GOODWINE'S[1] ENGLISHING OF 1595, AND THE PARIS MS. (which ends on p. 219)	206-223

APPENDIX.

TITLE-PAGES AND DEDICATIONS OF THE TWO PARTS OF THE Blanchardine and Eglantine OF 1595, BY THOMAS POPE GOODWINE, THEREIN CALLED "P. T. G. *GENT*," p. 231	225-234
INDEX OF NAMES	235-236
GLOSSARY	237-242

[1] The unique copy of Part I of the second edition of 1597, in the Public Library, Hamburgh, has the name of 'the translator or paraphrast,' Thomas Pope Goodwine, to its Dedication to M. William Peeter (see below, p. 229-233).—Hazlitt's *Collections and Notes* (1876), p. 40.

CONTENTS OF INTRODUCTION.

I. SYNTAX OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

NOUN.

§ 1. *Relations between the Noun and the other parts of speech*, p. v.
§ 2. *Abstract and concrete Nouns interchanged*, p. viii.
§ 3. *Number*, p. ix.
§ 4. *The Nominative Case*, p. xi.
§ 5. *The Genitive Case*, p. xv.
§ 6. *The Dative Case*, p. xxiii.
§ 7. *The Accusative Case*, p. xxiv.
§ 8. *The Article*, p. xxvi.
§ 9. *The Adjective*, p. xxviii.
§ 10. *Personal Pronouns*, p. xxix.
§ 11. *Reflexive Pronoun*, p. xxxv.
§ 12. *The Possessive Pronoun*, p. xxxv.
§ 13. *The Demonstrative Pronouns*, p. xxxvi.
§ 14. *Interrogative Pronouns*, p. xxxvii.
§ 15. *The Relative Pronoun*, p. xxxvii.
§ 16. *The Indefinite Pronouns*, p. xlvi.

VERB.

§ 17. *Impersonal Verbs*, p. xlvii.
§ 18. *Intransitive, Transitive, and Reflexive Verbs*, p. li.
§ 19. *Auxiliary Verbs*, p. liii.
§ 20. *Voice*, p. liv.
§ 21. *Verbal Forms in Old English, indifferent with regard to Voice*, p. lv.
§ 22. *Tense*, p. lvi.
§ 23. *Mood*, p. lix.
§ 24. *Imperative Mood*, p. lx.
§ 25. *The Infinitive. Active and Passive*, p. lxi.
§ 26. *The Simple Infinitive not so much restricted as in Modern English*, p. lxiv.
§ 27. '*To*' *and* '*for to*' *preceding the Gerundial Infinitive*, p. lxv.
§ 28. *Functions of the Infinitive*, p. lxv.
§ 29. *The Infinitive Absolute*, p. lxvi.
§ 30. *The Infinitive in connection with the Accusative (or Nominative) Case*, p. lxx.
§ 31. *The Infinitive sometimes omitted*, p. lxxi.
§ 32. *The Present Participle*, p. lxxi.
§ 33. *The Past Participle*, p. lxxii.
§ 34. *The Verbal Noun*, p. lxxiv.
§ 35. *The Adverb*, p. lxxvii.
§ 36. *Prepositions*, p. lxxxii.
§ 37. *Conjunctions*, p. lxxxvi.

II. SYNTAX OF THE SENTENCE.

§ 38. *Concord*, p. xci.
§ 39. *Co-ordination instead of Subordination*, p. xciv.
§ 40. *Noun Clauses*, p. xcv.
§ 41. *Change of direct and indirect speech*, p. xcviii.
§ 42. *Adjective Clauses*, p. c.

III. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

§ 43. *Subject and Predicate (Inversion)*, p. ci.
§ 44. *The Predicative Verb*, p. ciii.
§ 45. *Place of the Object*, p. ciii.
§ 46. *Place of the Attribute*, p. cv.
§ 47. *Place of the Adverb*, p. cvi.
§ 48. *Apposition*, p. cvii.
§ 49. *Contraction*, p. cviii.

APPENDIX.

I. *Caxton as a translator. His style*, p. cx.
II. *The Manuscripts and Prints of the Romance*, p. cxvi.

whiche he smote here and there with bothe his handes by suche a strengthe, that *him* that he rought with full stroke was all in to brused,' 63/2,—him that = whom that, for 'he whom,' as if the use of the flexionless *that* threw the case on to *he;* 'and sware that he sholde neuer departe from afore the place unto the tyme that the castel were take, and *theym* of within at his wyll,' 181/31,—'them' for 'they.'

But the passages from *Aymon* do not admit of such an explanation:—

'whan thise wordes were fynysshed, all the foure brethren, and all *theym* of theyr companye arayed themselfe . . .' 78/22; 'the base courte began to be sore moved, and the crye was so great, for al *them* of the dongeon defended themselfe valyantlye,' 94/12; 'But I telle you, upon your feythe that none other shal knowe the same, but only we, *us* three, unto the tyme that the dede be accomplysshed,' 212/30. Cf. *The Curial*, 4/18: 'For ther is nothyng more suspecte to euyl peple than *them* whom they knowe to be wyse and trewe.'

On the other hand, there are striking instances of the nominative being used instead of the dative or accusative case:—

'But at thentree of a forest that was there, they loste their trayne, and went oute of ther waye, wherby they myght not folowe nor ouertake the pucell, nor *they* that brought her with theym.'—*Blanchardyn*, 181/22; 'Go ayen to Tormaday to see the noble lande of that lady, *she* of whom thou art amorouse so moche,' 186/19.

On this point I cannot refrain from quoting those passages of a 16th century play which contain the same use, as I have never come across any parallel earlier or later. Both in the last passage of Caxton's and in those of *Sir Clyoman and Sir Clamydes* (falsely attributed to Peele, and printed in Dyce's edition of Peele's works, pp. 490—534; see my essay in *Englische Studien*, XIII, p. 187), *a pronoun referring as apposition to a noun in one of the oblique cases appears in the nominative:*—

To go and come, of custom free or any other task:
I mean *by Juliane, she*, that blaze of beautie's breeding. 491, *b.*
Do never view *thy father, I*, in presence any more. 497, *a.*
Sith that mine honour cowardly was stole *by caitiff he. ibid.*
But shall I frame, then, mine excuse *by serving Venus, she.* 501, *b.*
Than thus *to see fell fortune, she*, to hold her state in spite. 505, *b.*

Clamydes, ah, *by fortune, she*, what froward luck and fate
Most cruelly assigned is unto thy noble state. 507, *b*.
Fie *on fell Fortune, she*. 508, *a*.
Although that *with Clamydes, he*, I haue not kept my day. 511, *a*.
Yet though *unto Neronis, she*, I may not show my mind. *ibid*.
Neronis, daughter to the king, *by the king of Norway, he*,
Within a ship of merchandise convey'd away is she. 514, *a*.
So do I fly from tyrant he, whose heart more hard than flint. 515, *a*.

The Foure Sonnes of Aymon and *Huon* contain several striking instances of the nominative instead of the dative case :—

'Reynawde toke hym, . . . and made all *they* that were wyth hym . . . to be hanged and slayne.'—*Four Sons*, 90/19 ; 'For never Hector of Troy was worthe *thou*,' 127/29. 'Before you and all your barons I haue dyscomfyted in playn batayll *he* that hath brought you into all this trouble.'—*Huon*, i. 46/10. 'Syr, ye may se here before you *he* that wolde do lyke case agaynst me.'—*ibid*. 288/16. 'I haue found so nere me *he* that purchaseth my dethe and shame.'—*ibid*. 288/23. On pages 83, 84, and 87, *thou* is apparently a misprint for *you*.

Finally, it is worth stating that *but* and *sauf* (save) don't govern the accusative as prepositions, but are followed by the nominative, as if they were conjunctions. 'Noon but *I* have seen it.'—*Blanchardyn*, 43/32. 'Al be ded sauf *I*.'—*Charles the Grete*, 102/31.

§ 5. *The Genitive Case.*

(*a*) The genitive in connection with nouns (and pronouns).

The applicability of this genitive, which was nearly unlimited in Old English, especially in poetry, is rather restricted in Caxton's time.

1. The first function of this case, viz., that denoting birth and relationship (whence the name *genetivus*), shares its dominion with the dative :—

'My lady Margarete . . Moder unto our naturel & souerayn lorde.'—*Blanchardyn*, 1/3. 'Blanchardyn, sone unto the kynge of Fryse.'—*ibid*. 1/27. 'Blanchardyn ansuered that he was of the lande of Grece, and sone to a kynge,' 100/1 ; 'and sayde to the kynge, fader unto Blanchardyn,' 174/18 ; 'daughter to Kyng Alymodes,' 83/9 ; 'quene Morgause of Orkeney, moder to Sire Gawayne.'—*Morte Darthur*, 357/25 ; 'kynge Lots wyf and moder *of* sir Gawayne and *to* sire Gaheris,' *ibid*. 425/12.

2. The objective genitive is not very frequent :—

'She bereth in her herte care ynough and dyspleysure for the loue *of him.*'—*Blanchardyn*, 73/33, 76/5, 77/25; 'for right moche he desyred to shewe hymself, for his *ladyes loue*,' 83/8.

3. The genitive denoting quality is used in the same way as in Modern English; only it is noteworthy that Malory treats it quite as if it were an adjective, so as to use it in the comparative and superlative degree. 'She is the fairest lady and *most of beautie* in the world,' *Morte Darthur*, 357/23; more of beautie, 358/13, 358/18, 360/33, 450/13, and frequently. Instead of *of*, *a* sometimes appears:—

'yf he had been yet man *alyue*, I wolde haue gyuen you tyl his wyff.'—*Blanchardyn*, 93/22. alyue = of life; cf. liues = alife.—*Rob. of Gloucester*, 301/376; *Owl and Nightingale*, 1632; Morris, note to l. 250 of *Story of Genesis and Exodus*. 'I am not a power to reward the after thy merite.'—*Blanchardyn*, 109/9.

4. The genitive of the personal pronoun instead of the possessive pronoun occurs very frequently:—

(I) 'knewe wel that the story of hit was honeste.'—*Blanchardyn*, 1/11. 'the sowle of the (thee),' 17/21; 'for pryde of her,' 39/14; 'the herte of hym,' 39/33, 64/17, 86/20, 87/31, 92/7, 106/17, 114/32, etc.

This use is especially worth noting, when it occurs in sentences like the following:—

'ye haue exposed the body *of you and of your men*,' 171/20. In Modern English we should say: 'your body *and those* of your men.' Malory once says: 'I pray you hertely to be my good frende and *to* my sones,' *Morte Darthur*, 406/28.

5. The partitive genitive was not a great favourite with the English of the 14th and 15th centuries. After comparing the use of this case in that time with what it was in Old English, we cannot but conclude that the idea of partition attached to such phrases as MÁÞMA FELA (many treasures), *Beówulf* 36, in Old English was about to be supplanted by that of the simple apposition. Apart from the fact that the numerals, as well as many indefinite adverbs and pronouns, no longer governed the genitive, compare the following expressions:—

Robert of Gloucester (quoted by Koch, II², p. 169): 'þe þrydde

del my kingdom, y geue þe,' 285; 'þe þrydde del ys londe,' 711; 'From þe on ende Cornewayle,' 178.

Chaucer (*Einenkel*, p. 93): 'A busshel venym,' IV. 267; 'no morsel bred,' III. 215; 'the beste galoun wyn,' III. 249.

E. E. Wills (ed. Furnivall): 'a peyre schetys,' 4/16, 5/8, 41/24, 76/16, 101/18; 'a peyre bedes,' 5/3.

Bury Wills (Camden Society): 'a pece medowe,' 47; 'a peyre spectaclys,' 15; 'a quart wyne,' 16; 'a galon wine,' 30.

But there was a sudden stop in the development towards apposition instead of the genitive; and at the end of the 15th century there was a sort of reaction in favour of the Old English use. Expressions like those quoted above are not to be met with in Caxton; only a few traces of the Middle English tendency remained.

Maner without *of* occurs in *Blanchardyn* three times: 'by al manere wayes,' 50/19; 'all manere noureture,' 74/8; 'al manere poyntes,' 109/16; while there are 18 instances of *maner* + *of* viz., 28/20, 53/17, 55/27, 58/19, 60/31, 73/34, 93/32, 111/28, 117/27, 119/2, 119/11, 159/34, 174/12, 177/4, 186/8, 188/26, 197/28, 200/18.

Other is used for 'others of.' '*Other* her gentyll women,' 76/31; 'other his prysoners,' 121/25.

Also *any* occurs for 'any of':—

'Affermyng that I oughte rather tenprynte his actes and noble feates than of Godefroy of boloyne or *ony the eight*.'—Caxton's Preface to *Morte Darthur*, 2/1.

In *Aymon* is a curious remnant of what must have been rather common in the 14th century, as Chaucer offers several instances of it. The passage runs as follows: 'but of all Fraunce I am *one of the best & truest knyght* that be in it,' 272/23. These are the parallels in Chaucer:—

'Oon of the grettest auctour that men rede' (5 MSS., one has 'auctours'), III. 234; 'On of the best farynge man on lyue,' III. 8; 'On of the best enteched creature,' V. 35 (cf. *Einenkel*, p. 87).

This odd expression is made up of two constructions: I. 'One the best knyght.' II. 'One of the best knyghtes.' The former, which was at last supplanted by the second, crops up many times in Middle English, and has its parallel in other numerals:—

'Oute of þilke hilles springeþ þre þe noblest ryueres of al Europe.' —*Trevisa*, I. 199. 'I deuyse to Iohane my doughter . . . III. the

best pïlwes after choys of the forseyde Thomas my sone.'—*E. E. Wills*, 5/9. 'I wyll that Richard my sone haue tweyne my best hors.'—*ibid.* 23/23. 'II. the best yren broches.'—*ibid.* 46/17. 'too the best sanapes,' 101/ 24, *Guy of Warwick* (ed. Zupitza), 8095; 'at two the firste strokes,' *Morte Darthur*, 343/29; 'two the best knyghtes that euer were in Arthurs dayes,' *ibid.* 419/31.

This free use of apposition (instead of the modern genitive) did not die out before the time of James I.:—

'Enough is, that thy foe doth vanquisht stand
Now at thy mercy: Mercy not withstand:
For he is *one the truest knight* aliue.'—*Faerie Q.*, I. iii. 37.

'Or who shall not great Nightes children scorne,
When two of *three her Nepheives* are so foule forlorne?'
Ibid. I. v. 23.

'His living like sawe never living eye,
Ne durst behold; his stature did exceed
The hight *three the tallest sonnes* of mortall seed.'—*Ibid.* I. vii. 8.

'Was reckoned *one the wisest* prince that there had reigned.'
Shakspere, *Henry VIII.*, II. ii. 48.

Apart from this liberty, we have to state a few other noteworthy points respecting Caxton's use of the partitive genitive.

(*a*) There are numerous instances of the *independent*, or, as it is sometimes called, the elliptic genitive partitive, which is so often met with in Chaucer; cf. 'Of smale houndes hadde sche, that she fedde,' II. 5. Before Chaucer the instances are rare. Perhaps the following passages may be looked upon as approaching that use:—

'hwa se euer wule habbe lot wiȝ þe of þi blisse: he mot deale wiȝ þe *of* þine *pine* on eorþe.'—*O. E. Hom.* I. 187. 'man eggeȝ his negebure to done oȝer to speken him harm, oȝer s(c)ame, and haueȝ uiȝ elch wiȝ oȝer, and makeȝ him to forlese his aihte, oȝer *of his rihte*.'—*O. E. Hom.* II. 13. 'þe priue þyeues byeþ þo þet ue steleȝ naȝt of oncouþe ac of priueþ. And of zuichen þer byeȝ *of* greate and *of* smale. þe greate byeȝ of þe kneade and þe ontrewe reuen.' . . —*Ayenbite*, 37.

Caxton has several instances of this use:—

'(She) tolde hym that she was right wel content of his seruyce, and wolde reteyne hym in wages, and gyue hym *of her goodes*, for he was worthy therof.'—*Blanchardyn*, 75/5. 'wherof the kynge was right wele content, and reseyued hym *of* his hous.'—*ibid.* 99/21; = as one of his house, or court. (Cf. *Huon*, I. 13/20: 'the two sonnes

of Duke Seuyn of burdeux shal come to the courte, and, as I haue harde say, the kynge hath sayde that, at there comynge, they shal be made *of hys* pryuey counsell.') 'And wyte, that Guynon hadde wyth hym of the beste knyghtes of Charlemagne.'—*Aymon*, 91/18. 'and therefore lete us set upon hym or day, and we shalle slee doune *of his* knyghtes: ther shal none escape.'—*Morte Darthur*, 121/10. '(He) charged hym that he shold gyue hym *of* al maner of metes.' —*ibid.* 214/20. (Cf. *Gesta Romanorum*, 197: 'þe knyghte of baldak sent to the knite of lumbardye *of* al maner thinges.')

This use too was continued in the time of Henry VIII.:—

'I wyll ye take *of* your best frendys.'—*Huon*, 5/25. 'this that I haue shewid you is of truth.'—*ibid.* 61/26. 'I requyre you, shewe me *of* your newes and adventures that ye haue had.'—*ibid.* 566/12. 'Englysh marchauntes do fetch *of* the erth of Irlonde to caste in their gardens.'—*Andrew Borde*, p. 133; cf. p. 170.

From an alteration of the 1601 edition of *Huon* we may perhaps conclude that the English of that time did not relish this use in prose. The original edition has: 'for incontinent they wyll sende *of* theyr shyppes, and take thys shyp,' 212/29; the edition of 1601 alters *of* into '*some of*.'

(*b*) Here and there indefinite pronouns like 'much, many (other)' are followed by *of* + *noun*: 'for he hath doon to us this day so moche *of* euyl.'—*Blanchardyn*, 169/22. 'wherof soo many *of* children (were) faderles, and soo *many churches* wasted.'—*Aymon*, 27/19. 'a grete many of prysoners.'—*ibid.* 87/4. But, as a rule, the modern use prevails.

(*c*) There is another sort of Genitive, which we may, perhaps, not improperly term *pseudo-partitive*, viz. that which appears in sentences like 'a castle of hers, a knight of Arthur's.' It is true, that in many cases we might translate these phrases by 'one of her castles, one of Arthur's knights'; but there are many examples in Middle English which do not admit of such an explanation, and the Modern English use ('that beautiful face of hers!') proves that no idea of partition is included in such expressions. After a close examination of the oldest instances as met with in the 14th century (second half?), we see that they are brought into existence by another necessity.

In Old English the possessive pronoun, or, as the French say, 'pronominal adjective,' expresses only the conception of belonging

and possession; it is a real adjective, and does not convey, as at present, the idea of determination. If, therefore, Old English authors want to make such nouns determinative, they add the definite article:

bæleð mín se leofa, *Elene*, 511; þú eart dóhtor mín séo dýreste, *Juliana*, 166; þæt tacnede Leonīða on his þæm nihstan gefeohte and Persa, *Orosius*, 84/31; Mammea his sio gode modor, *ibid.* 270/26; mid hire þære yfelan scéonnesse, *Blickling Homilies*, 5/1; openige nu þin se fægresta fæþm, *ibid.* 7/24; þonne bið drihten ure se trumesta staðol, *ibid.* 13/10; hé wolde oferswíðan úrne ðone écan déað, *Ælfric's Homilies*, I. 168/1; úre se ælmihtiga scyppend, *ibid.* I. 192/6; þurh his þæs méran forryneles and fulluhteres ðingunge, *ibid.* I. 364/5. The article preceding the possessive pronoun: se heora cyning, *Orosius*, 56/31; seo heora iugoð, *Blickling Homilies*, 163/3; seo hire gebyrd, 163/9, etc.

In Middle English the possessive pronoun apparently has a *determinative meaning* (as in Modern English, Modern German, and Modern French); therefore its connection with the definite article is made superfluous, while the indefinite article is *quite impossible*. Hence arises a certain embarrassment with regard to one case which the language cannot do without. Suppose we want to say 'she is in a castle belonging to her,' where it is of no importance whatever, either to the speaker or hearer, to know whether 'she' has got more than one castle—how could the English of the Middle period put it? The French of the same age said still 'un sien castel'; but that was no longer possible in English. There's only one instance of indefinite article + possessive pronoun that has come to my knowledge, and that is of the early period of Middle English: *Sawles Warde* (*O. E. H.*, I. p. 265): 'for euch an is al mihti to don al þat he wule, ȝe, makie to cwakien heouene ba ant eorþe wið *his an finger*' (for one is mighty enough to do all that he desires, yea, to make heaven and earth quake with *one of his fingers*. Translation by R. Morris).[1]

We should expect the genitive of the personal pronoun (of me, etc., as in Modern German),—and there may have been a time when this use prevailed,—but, so far as I know, the language decided in

[1] Other instances, however, may have escaped my notice, and it is worth while to search Middle English literature for evidence on this hitherto puzzling point.

favour of the more complicated and rather absurd construction 'of mine, of thine,' etc.

This was, in all probability, brought about by the analogy of the very numerous cases in which the indeterminative noun connected with *mine*, etc., had a really partitive sense (cf. the examples below), and, moreover, by the remembrance of the old construction with the possessive pronoun.

There is a good deal of guesswork in this explanation, of course; but one thing is sure—it was the impossibility of connecting the indefinite article with the possessive pronoun which suggested the new construction. This is proved by indisputable chronological facts.

I. First, we find the indefinite article (or the equally indefinite words *any, every, no*) in connection with *of mine, of thine*, etc. This construction is met with in the 14th century.

II. Next, analogy introduces the indefinite article in connection with the double genitive of a noun, 'a knyght of king Arthur's.'

III. Last, we come across definite pronouns (this, that) in connection with *of mine;* and exceptionally the definite article occurs there also in connection with the double genitive of a noun (the knight of kyng Arthur's).

CHAUCER: A friend of his, IV. 130, IV. 257, IV. 356; an hors of his, II. 271; an old felaw of youres, III. 97; eny neghebour of myne, III. 198; every knight of his, II. 239; no maner lym of his, V. 170.—Cf. that ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste, II. 226; *this my* sentence heere, III. 40; oure wreche is this, oure owen wo to drynke, IV. 184 (*Einenkel*, pp. 86, 87).

Early E. Wills: I will that William . . . be paied of their billes for making off *a liuery of myn*, 53/20; ȝif any servaunt *of myn* haue labord for me . . . 53/23 (both instances ab. 1420 A.D.); I will that Chace haue a habirion *of myne*, 54/7; he may haue such a good honest booke of his owne, 59/9; every child *of hires* lyuynge at the day of my decesse haue xx li to their mariage, 107/1.

Bury Wills (A.D. 1434): and more stuff I haue not occupied *of hers*, p. 23; such goodes *of myn* as shall be sold, 24; such tyme as money may be reysid of goodes as shal be sold *of myn*, 36.

In neither of these 'Wills' volumes is there any instance of the second or third stage of the development of our construction. Cf. *E. E. Wills:* this my present testament, 49/4; similar cases are in 51/5, 79/26, 119/15.

Gesta Romanorum offers instances of II, but not of III: I am forrester of the Emperours, 206; a noþere kny3t of the Emperours, 241.

In Caxton the *I. group* is represented by numerous instances: And for this cause departeth now my sayd lady from *a castell of hers*, *Blanchardyn* 38/6. (Original: dun sien chastel.) He toke also a grete spere from the hande of *a knyght of his*, ibid. 107/32; for the kyng Alymodes hath a daughter of his owne . . . *ibid.* 125/4; a yeoman of his owne, *ibid.* 201/18; a town of his, *Aymon* 69/15; a gentylman of his, 412/29; a neuewe of his, 527/22. Cf. Malory's *Morte Darthur*, 35/35, 38/28, 365/12, 366/2, 369/17, etc.

Group II. is often met with in the *Morte Darthur:* a knyghte of the dukes, 37/7, 9; Syre gawayne, knyghte of kynge Arthurs, 146/30; I am a knyghte of kynge Arthurs, 153/32, 263/31, 263/34, 330/22, 331/19; a trusty frende of Sir Tristrams, 363/8; and ryght so cam in knyghtes of kynge Arthurs, 386/29; and he had gotten hym ten good knyghtes of Arthurs, 459/33; and therewith foure knyghtes of kynge Markes drewe their swerdes to slee syre Sadok, 469/30, 521/24, 522/12, 635/21.—In two instances *s* is omitted: Thenne came forth a knyght, his name was lambegus, and he was a knyght of syr Trystrem, 318/16; there was a knyghte of kyng Arthur, 331/17.

The frequent occurrence of this genitive in connection with Arthur and his knights has often (in English Grammars, &c.) suggested the supposition that there is a sort of ellipsis in this construction: a knyghte of kynge Arthurs = a knyghte of kynge Arthurs *court*.[1] But first of all, such instances as 'a trusty frende of syr Tristrams,' 'I am forester of the Emperors,' do not admit of such an explanation—unless we say 'among Sir T.'s friends,' 'among the Emperor's foresters';—and secondly, there are no other examples of this elliptic construction in Caxton or Malory.

Of Group III., there are *two* instances in *Blanchardyn* with *that*, and a few with the definite article in *Morte Darthur:*

'as for to wene to haue her, thou haste *that berde of thyne* ouer whyte therto; thy face is so mykel wonne, and *that olde skynne of thyne* ys ouer mykel shronken togyder,' 186/22-25. Original: 'vous auez la barbe trop grise, la face trop usee, et le cuir trop retrait.'

Elsewhere Caxton is not afraid of using *this* in connection with the possessive pronoun. Cf. this my towne, *Blanch.* 73/18; this her werre, 90/1.

[1] Cf. two knyghtes of kynge Arthurs Courte, 297/1, 6, 16, 298/33, etc.

There are two passages in *Morte Darthur* belonging to this group: 'Alle the knyghtes of kynge Arthurs,' 330/9; 'he sholde haue her and her landes of her faders that sholde falle to her,' 488/14;—in both instances the partitive genitive is wholly excluded.

B. The Genitive governed by adjectives and verbs is, on the whole, the same as in Modern English. But it is worth noting that the ideas of *reference* and *cause* are still expressed in Caxton by *of*, while, in Modern English other prepositions (*in, as to, with* &c.) are preferred.

(*a*) Reference :—

The childe grewe and amended sore of the grete beaulte . . . *Blanchardyn*, 13/6; of the tables and ches playing, and of gracious and honeste talkynge, he passed them that were his elder in age, 13/9; demaunding of the batailles of Troy, 14/13, 15/8; sore troubled of wyttis, 45/8; nought dommaged of nothing, 48/31; there was no man that of prowes and worthynes coude go beyonde hym, 65/21; wele shapen of alle membres, 99/14; sore chaunged of face, 145/30; what wyl you do of me?, 146/16. Cf. 150/25, 178/21, 184/6, 193/14;—*Aymon*, 54/25, 64/5, 290/32;—*Morte Darthur*, passim.

(*b*) Cause :—

(They) judged hem self right happy of a successoure legytyme, 12/17; (the kyng) that of this adventure was ful sory and dolaunt, 21/4; Blanchardyn sore angry and euyll apaid of that he sawe . . . 28/13; sore passioned of one accident, 68/20;—*thank of*, 49/33, 60/25; pardon of, 50/9, 10.

Of is sometimes replaced by *ouer:* Right enamored they were ouer hym, 66/25; auenged ouer hym, 86/30. Once *for of* occurs: and also *for of* the grete dysplesure that he had . . . 111/34.

(*c*) For the Genitive used adverbially, see *Adverb*, p. lxxvii.

§ 6. *The Dative Case.*

After the decay of the Old English inflection there was a tendency to make up for it by the preposition *to*. But from the time in which the *Old English Homilies* were composed, down to our own days, *to* never became the rule.

In Caxton *to* is often used after verbs, where we omit it, especially after *tell*:—

Now anon brynge *to me* myn armes, *Charles the Grete* 48/15; but on the same page: he shold brynge hym hys armes, l. 4; after

brought he hym hys hors, l. 22. I assure *to* you by my faith that I shall do it . . . *ibid.* 49/30; I graunte *to* you alle my goodes, *ibid.* 50/3; I do *to* the grete amytye, *ibid.* 55/34. Cf. *Blanchardyn*, 20/17; *Aymon*, 362/31, 367/9.

Tell. and whan thou hast told *to* me thy name . . . *Charles the Grete*, 53/16; I telle to the, *ibid.* 54/17. Cf. 55/2, 57/23, 61/3, 86/5, etc.

Demand is usually followed by *of*; but there is an exception, perhaps brought about by French influence: 'Thenne cam kyng Alymodes forthe, and demaunded *to* the stywarde' . . . *Blanchardyn*, 283/23. *Require*, also, occurs with *to*: *Blanchardyn*, 168/3; *Aymon*, 34/20. *Ask*, followed by two objects, occurs: *Aymon*, 362/31; (he) asked for hym *to* two of his men.

There is one instance of *offend* + *to*: 'Yf there be ony man here that I haue offended *unto*,' *Morte Darthur*, 292/19.

The *Ethic Dative* is not frequent in Caxton:

'A right grete and impetuouse tempeste rose, that lasted *us* thre dayes,' *Blanchardyn*, 100/9; their sorrowe redoubled *them* full sore, *ibid.* 119/34; the bloode ranne *me* doune, *Aymon*, 88/19. (But ye withdrawen *me* þis man.—Chaucer, *Boethius*, ed. Morris, p. 7. Caxton has: fro me.)

§ 7. *The Accusative Case.*

A. The Accusative Case, as governed by transitive verbs, sometimes differs in *Caxton* from the modern use.

Besides such verbs as 'demand, require, serve, tell,' quoted above, *behold* is followed by *of*, e. g. *Aymon*, 391/26; and especially noteworthy is the construction of *swear*. In Middle English this verb is followed by *on*. Cf. *Chaucer*, IV. 363: and this *on* every God celestial I swere it yow, V. 222. Caxton uses 'swear' as a transitive verb, and makes the accusative case follow it: he sware his Godes, *Blanchardyn*, 92/25, 107/22; swore God, *Aymon*, 38/4, 73/14, 87/10, 185/4, 201/33, 459/11, 471/7, 515/7, 526/17. In *Aymon* are only three examples of 'swear' followed by a preposition: (he) sware *by* God, *Aymon*, 61/29; he sware *by* saint Denys, *ibid.* 411/11; I swere *upon* all sayntes, *ibid.* 85/4.

From one passage of the *Ayenbite*, and another in *Blanchardyn*, we may safely infer that this use is due to French influence.

Ayenbite, p. 6: huo þet zuereþ wiþ-oute skele þane *name* of oure lhorde . . . he him uorzuereþ, *Blanchardyn*, 107/22; The kynge of polonye . . . sware his goode goddes, that he sholde neuer haue loye at his herte. Original: 'jura ses bons dieux.'

Dan Michel always translates literally; and Caxton too, in this case, introduced the French construction.

The *Cognate Object* occurs several times:

And there she had not been no longe whyle, when she had *perceyued* the playn *choys and syght* of a right grete and myghty nauye, *Blanchardyn*, 56/2; (choys = syght). deye a shamefull dethe, *ibid.* 190/4, and very often in the other works of Caxton. I rebuke hym neuer for no hate that I hated hym, *Morte Darthur*, 349/4; the good loue that I haue loued you . . . *ibid.* 364/4.

B. The *Accusative absolute* is used with great freedom by Caxton and Malory, and even by Berners. Instances abound. I quote only a few to illustrate my statement:—

He fonde hym *the terres* (= *tears*) *at the eyes of him* makynge his full pituouse complayntes, *Blanchardyn* 123/24; (there) he toke a bote, prest and garnysshed wyth eight goode felawes, eche of them an ore in his hande . . . *ibid.* 154/7; The good erle, then, the prouost, and the knyghte of the fery, their swerdes in their handes naked, toke and seysyd her by force, *ibid.* 180/19; Thenne came syluayn, his felawes wyth hym, and ascryed the two barons to dethe, *ibid.* 205/19. Original: 'siluain auant auec ses compaignons.'

C. For the Accusative with Infinitive, *see Infinitive*, p. lxx.

D. The *Adverbial Object* exhibits some peculiarities worth stating.

(*a*) Time. *Never the days of her lyff* she sholde wedde paynem nor no man infidele, *Blanchardyn*, 65/15. Malory has: *neuer his lif*, 127/23; cf. Chaucer. Imeneus, that god of weddyng is, Seigh neuer his lif so mery a weddid man, II. 333; many a wighte hath loued thynge he neuer saugh his lyue, V. 8 (cf. *Einenkel*, p. 52; Zupitza, note to *Guy of Warwick*, ll. 1747-8); (he) wend neuer to haue come *tyme enough*, *Blanchardyn*, 158/4. Original: 'a tans (temps).' Cf. 170/5; *Aymon*, 265/19, 343/5; *Morte Darthur*, 228/24; *Huon*, 332/8, 334/10.

That tyme, in *Morte Darthur*, 48/8, is equivalent to '*at* that tyme,' *ibid.* 49/16. Cf. the same tyme, *Blanchardyn*, 127/13, 128/8, 143/29; and at that same houre, 139/8; at the tyme, 194/32; *Morte Darthur*, 363/35; and the instructive example, *Morte Darthur*, 356/7, 8: *sometyme* he was putte to the werse by male fortune, and *at sometyme* the wers knyghte putte the better knyghte to a rebuke.

(*b*) Manner.

Seeyng that *noon otherwyse* he myghte doo, *Blanchardyn*, 30/26; and noon otherwyse wyll I doo, *ibid.* 93/25; the best wyse that he myght or coude, he ordeyned his batayIles, 162/27, 171/32;—but we find too: *in* like wise, 98/23; *in* the best wyse, 125/24, 166/2.

Chaucer never uses *other wyse;* only *other weye, other weyes.* Cf. *Einenkel*, p. 66.

§ 8. *The Article.*

There are several remarkable peculiarities about Caxton's use of the Article.

(*a*) Nouns in the Vocative case are preceded by the definite article instead of O:—

'Sith that we haue lost thee, farewell *the* ioye of this world!' *Aymon*, 574/30; 'Then syr Launcelot cryed: *the* knyght wyth the blak shelde, make the redy to Iuste wyth me!' *Morte Darthur*, 392/16.

(*b*) Possessive Pronouns used substantively are sometimes preceded by the definite Article:—

'Thenne toke the prouost his spere, and so dyde Blanchardyn *the his*,' *Blanchardyn*, 48/20 (Original: la sienne); I praye you that euery man force hymself to do worthily hys deuoyr, that your worship and *the oures* be kepte, *Aymon*, 72/21; In whiche he hath not rendred the reason or made any decision, to approve better *the his* than that other, *Eneydos*, 23/19.

(*c*) Numerals denoting part of a whole are sometimes preceded by the definite Article:—

'And yf peraventure one of them dare not come allone hardyly, late come *the* two or thre or foure of the moost valyauntest' . . . *Charles the Grete*, 41/27; and yf *the* foure dare not come, late come fyue, *ibid.* 29. Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 355/5: wete thou wel, said sir Tristram, *the* one of us shalle dye or we departe.

In the last two groups Caxton copied only too faithfully his French originals. I do not know of any other Middle English instance of 'the his'; but as for 'the two,' there is the authority of Chaucer and the unknown translator of the *Romaunt of the Rose*, if not to sanction it as a good Middle English expression, at least to excuse it:

And sins he ran . . . And borwed him large boteles thre; and in *the two* his poysoun poured he; The thrid he keped clene for his

drynke, *Cant. T.* III. 103; And if thou maist so fer forth wynne, That thou resoun derst byginne, And woldist seyn thre thingis or mo, Thou shalt fulle scarsly seyn *the two.*—*Romaunt of the Rose*, V. 77/8.

Perhaps the following expressions too may be attributed to French influence:—

The captayne gaff *the* goode nyght to the damoyselle, *Blanchardyn*, 51/27 (Original: la bonne nuit); and gaff hym *the* goode nyght, *ibid.* 74/26; onely the captayne of Tormaday, that cam for to make unto her *the* reuerence, *ibid.* 51/17. Cf. 77/2, 158/16: Blanchardyn coude not kepe hymself, but that *the* grete teerys dropped fast out of his eyen, *ibid.* 145/33.

(*d*) Before two adjectives qualifying one noun, the Article is often repeated:—

He sawe there under in a playn a moche ample and *a* grete medowe, *Blanchardyn*, 32/2; the prouoste of the towne dyde ordeyne a stronge and *a* bygge warde, 58/20; ye be enamored of a hyghe and *a* ryche pryncesse, 75/7; he was a ryght valyaunt and *a* hardy prynce, 113/20; makyng *a* grete and *a* solempne oath, 177/16.—There are, in *Blanchardyn*, but two exceptions[1]: A noble and victorious prynce, 1/26; the rude and comyn englysshe, 2/9.

(*e*) The definite article is repeated where one of the two adjectives is in close connection with the noun. Thus in *Blanchardyn* 'proude' and 'pucelle' are looked upon as one noun, hence the following expressions:—

The right gracious and fayre, *the* proude pucelle in amours, 76/30; the fayer, the proude pucell, 83/12; the right desolate, the proude pucelle, 89/29; cf. 94/9, 96/7, 127/10, 129/29. There are two exceptions: the fayr pucelle and proude in amours, 128/8; the fayr proude mayden, 131/10.

(*f*) There are three instances (in *Blanchardyn*) of the indefinite article used in analogy to *such* + *adjective* + *a*:—

It nedeth not to be doubted that he is come to his extremyte of prowes and valyantes, wythout that amours hathe be the cause in the persone of *some hyghe a* pryncesse, 72/20; hy gaf to hym-self grete merueylle, and was wel abashed of *that soudayne a* wylle that was come to hym, 126/9; which is the most fayr, and the most

[1] These are where Caxton is writing his own English, not englishing another man's French. I wish all his Prologues and Epilogues, as collected in Blades's quarto, could be examined for other contrasts of his phraseology. —F. J. F.

noble, and the most complete *a* lady, and most pleasaunt of all the remnaunt of the world, 156/13.

§ 9. *The Adjective.*

For adjectives used substantively see § 1, p. vi. For the arrangement of noun and adjective see the chapter below, on 'The Arrangement of Words.' The tautology in the formation of the comparative and superlative degree (more better, most best) so well known from Shakspere, occurs here and there in Caxton, and is extremely frequent in *Morte Darthur*:—

more werse, *Blanch.* 23/33; more better, *ibid.* 91/35; the most valyauntest, *Charles the Grete*, 41/27; more sonner, *ibid.* 44/18; most next, *ibid.* 44/17; more gretter, *Curial*, 5/13. *Morte Darthur*, 74/37, 142/8, 144/29, 35; 148/5, 215/29, 218/3, etc.

Adjectives referring to preceding nouns are *not* yet followed by *one*:—

So grete a stroke and *so heuy* he gaffe hym, *Blanch.* 62/22; god hath well kept hym from so moche an hap and so hyghe, 75/24; a trusty man and secret, 81/23, 86/17, 97/20, 110/2, 156/14, 163/4, 169/17, 178/2, 179/5, 200/29. *Aymon*, 392/9, 504/20. *Morte Darthur* constantly.

But the Middle English use of '*one*' *following a noun* is met with in Malory several times:—

There lyueth not a bygger knyght than he is *one*, 72/22; (it) was grete pite that so worthy a knyght as he was *one* shold be ouermatched, 87/35; such yong knyghtes as he is *one* . . . ben neuer abydynge in no place, 251/25. Cf. Chaucer: For in my tyme a seruaunt was I *on*, II. 56, V. 112. The oldest instance quoted by Mätzner, *Glossar*, is from *Robert of Gloucester*, p. 17: 'a wonder maister was he on;' but without the preceding article, the use goes as far back as the *Ormulum*:—

> þatt ȝho wass adiȝ wimmann *an*
> All wimman kinn bitwenen. 2333.

So far as I know, but one instance occurs in Caxton of *one* following an adjective:—

And after whan thou shalt haue employed thy body, thy tyme and thy goodes for to deffende the, another *newe one* cometh to the courte, and shall supplante thy benediction.—*Curial*, 12/13.

The syntax of the numerals is that of our own day.

THE PRONOUNS.

§ 10. *Personal Pronouns.*

(*a*) Cases interchanged. *See* § 4, p. xi.

(*b*) Use of *thou* and *ye*.

Thou is used from superiors to inferiors, or from equals to equals *as a sign of contempt or defiance*:—

Lohier, the son of Charlemagne, delivering his message to the duke Benes of Aygremonte, addresses him with '*thou*,' *Aymon*, pp. 24, 25; and so do all the knights challenging each other to fight. Instances abound.

In many cases *thou* and *ye* are used in the same speech:—

Blanchardyn. Eglantyne always addresses her lover with 'ye'; but on p. 109 the following passage occurs: 'Ha, my right trusty frend . . . . that hath ben the pyler, susteynynge under *thy* swerde bothe myself and all my royaulme, I am not a power to rewarde *the* after the meryte that *ye* deserued to haue of me. Well *ye* haue shewed . . . the excellent vertu of humylite that is in *you*,' etc., ll. 9 ff. Again, Beatrice addressing her father Alymodes with contempt, says: 'medel *thou* nomore wyth loue, leue thys thoughte, and make no more *thyne* accomptes for to entre wythin thir cite; for yf *ye* haue taken and bounde my husband . . .' 186/28 ff.

Aymon. Ogier the Dane addressing his sword Cortyne: 'Ha, Cortyne that so moch I haue loued *the*, and, certes, it is wel rayson, for *ye* be a good swerde, and in many places *ye* haue wel holpen me,' 268/1 ff.

—Charlemagne asks Rypus to hang Richard: 'Rypus, yf *ye* wyll do soo moche for me that *ye* wyll go hange Rychard, I shall make *the* lord of grete londes,' 333/6—8.

—Mawgis blaming Rypus: 'Ha, rypus, *thou* traytour, euyll man, *ye* haue always be redy for to doo some euyll against us, but sith that I haue found *you* here I shall not seke *you* nowhere else,' 339/17 ff. Cf. 435/10 ff., 468/8 ff.

Morte Darthur. The lady's thanking Sir Lancelot for his killing the giant: 'For *thou* hast done the most worship that euer dyd knyght in this world, that wyll we bere recorde, and we all pray *you* to tell us *your* name,' 199/15 ff.

—Sir Raynold addressing Lancelot: '*thou* art a strong man, and I suppose *thou* hast slayn my two brethren . . . I wolde not haue a doo wyth *you*,' 202/35 ff. Cf. 209/14, 211/8, 214/13, 224/20, 226/5, 227/14, 234/14, etc.

This change of the pronoun in the address may be observed even in good Elizabethan prose:—

'Young gentleman, althoug[h] my acquaintaunce be small to intreate *you*, and my authoritie lesse to commaund *you*, yet my good will in giuing *you* good counsaile should induce you to beleeue me, and my hoarie haires (ambassadors of experience) enforce *you* to follow me, for by howe much the more I am a straunger to *you*, by so much the more *you* are beholdinge to mee, hauing therefore opportunitie to vtter my minde, I meane to be importunate with *you* to followe my meaninge. As *thy* birth doth shewe the expresse and liuely Image of gentle bloude, so *thy* bringing vp seemeth to mee to bee a greate blotte to the linage of so noble a boute, so that I am enforced to thincke, that either *thou* dyddest want one to giue *thee* good instructions, or that *thy* parentes made *thee* a wanton wyth too much cockeringe; either they were too foolishe in vsinge no discipline, or *thou* too frowarde in reiecting their doctrine, eyther they willinge to haue *thee* idle, or *thou* wylfull to be ill employed.'—Lyly, *Evphves*, p. 2, ed. Landmann.

Philautus answering to Evphves: 'friend Euphues (for so *your* talke warranteth me to terme *you*), I dare neither vse a long processe, neither louing speach, least vnwittingly I should cause *you* to conuince me of those thinges which *you* have already condemned. And verily I am bolde to presume vpon *your* curtesie, since *you yourself* haue vsed so little curiositie, perswading my selfe that my short answere wil worke as great en effect in *you*, as *your* few words did in me. Try all shall proue trust; heere is my hand, my heart, my lands and my lyfe at *thy* commaundement: *Thou* maist well perceiue that I did beleue *thee*; and I hope *thou* wilt the rather loue me, in that I did beleeue *thee*.'

Lucilla, declaring her love to Euphues, uses both *thou* and *you*. —*Ibid.* p. 50.

Cf. *New Custom* (Dodsley's Collection, ed. Hazlitt, Vol. IV.), p. 18; *Trial of Treasure* (*ibid.*), p. 264; Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, l. 189 ff.; Greene, *A Looking-Glass for London and England;* for Shakspere, see Abbott, § 231.

(*c*) Personal pronouns are emphasized by a preceding *it is*. It is he . . . *Aymon*, 33/9, 251/18; it is she, *Blades*, p. 166; it was I, *Morte Darthur*, 38/21, 83/25. In *Malory* the older expression occurs several times: I am he, 36/18; I was he, 67/7.—'It is *me*' was never used by Caxton, though he had the strong temptation of the French.

(*d*) Pleonastic use of the personal pronoun. If the predicate is separated from the subject by any adverbial, participial, or adjectival (relative) clause, a personal pronoun is pleonastically inserted to mark the subject:—

The proude pucelle in amours, with what peyne and grief that it was, atte thynstaunce and requeste of her sayd maystresse, *she* mounted anon upon her whyte palfray, *Blanch.* 45/4; The kyng thenne, after the knyght had thus spoken to hym, *he* gaff commandment . . . *ibid.* 102/16; How Gryffon of Haultefelle and Guenelon, after that they hadde slayne the Duke Benes of Aygremonte, *they* retorned to Paris, *Aymon*, 58/13; whiche, whan he sawe that Guycharde was entred into the castell, *he* retorned ayen, *ibid.* 73/6; the whiche whan he founde not his master in the chirche, *he* was al abasshed, *ibid.* 573/16; the damoysel that came from la Beale Isoud unto syr Tristram alle the whyle the tournament was advoynge *she* was with Quene Guenever, *Morte Darthur*, 389/8; thenne Kyng Arthur with a grete egre herte *he* gate a spere in his hand . . . *ibid.* 391/18, 395/37.

This pleonasm is very frequent after participle clauses:—

Thenne one of the daughters of the provost, *knowyng* that Blanchardyn was armed and redy to goo out wyth her fader, *she* cam and brought with her a fayre whyte coueryng . . . *Blanch.* 61/5; the Kynge Alymodes, *seeynge* the grete prowes that was in Blanchardyn, and that non so hardy durste approche hym, *he* began to crye aloude . . . *ibid.* 88/18; cf. 126/17, 128/28, 129/27, 138/9, 144/14, 150/19, 152/33, 167/12, 170/2, 173/24, 181/15.

But the pronoun was not the rule. The number of the passages quoted above is 13; but there are 16 (in *Blanchardyn*) where the pronoun is omitted, 22/20, 26/17, 27/23, 33/3, 41/27, 48/1, 50/1, 53/2, 56/12, 57/24, 93/11, 118/10, 148/22, 152/9, 166/30, 169/16. This use crops up very often in the *Gesta Romanorum*, pp. 3, 5, 45, 171, 209, 210, 221, 233, 235, 276, 316, 335.

After adjectival or relative clauses this use may be traced back to the earliest periods of the English language. A few instances will suffice for the present occasion:—

Ælfred's Orosius. Ac þa lond on east healfe Danais þe þær nihst sindon, Albani *hi* sind genemnede, 14/23; and he Ninus Soroastrem Bactriana cyning, se cuðe manna ærest drycræftas, *he hine* oferwinnand ofsloh, 30/10; cf. *ibid.* 12/16, 26/20, 72/13, 98/2, 124/16, 188/26, 204/6.

Cura Pastoralis. Ure ældren, þa þe þas stowa ær hioldon, *hie* lufedon wisdom, p. 4; cf. 22.

Blickling Homilies. Lazarus, þe Crist awehte þy feorþan dæge þæs þe he on byrgenne wæs ful wunigende, *he* getacnaƀ þysne middangeard, 75/4; cf. 85/25, 147/2.

Ancren Riwle. þeo ilke þet he bledde vore ne brouhten heo him to presente ne win et. 114.

O. E. Hom. I. pp. 3, 7, 9, 253; II. pp. 15, 19, 41, etc. *Old English Miscellany*, pp. 17, 18, 40. *Story of Gen. and Exodus*, ll. 1003-4, 1065, 3839. *Cursor Mundi*, ll. 283, 285, 7184, 8940, 9014, etc., etc.

Caxton exhibits several instances of this pleonasm :—

He that wyll bee enhaunced in price, *he* oughte not to looke so nyghe, *Aymon*, 354/23; *he that* beginneth a game, *he* oughte to see an ende of it to hys proffyte, 355/6; and again the Frenshemen *that* sawe their kynge come agen, *they* were ryght glad, 413/19; for he that had ony mete, *he* hyd it incontynent, 422/2; and Charlemagne, that sawe aymon goo thus quyte, and that he had garnysshed mountalban of vytayllis, *he* was full angry for it, 436/14; this mornynge, thenne, reynawde *that* was wythin ardein, after that he had herde his masse, *he* called his thre bredren, 476/10; and thenne therle Faffras that was a worthy knyghte and a wyse, *he* wente to the gate of saynt stevyn, and kepte hym there, 504/21; for he that shall deye in the sawtynge of the holy cite, *he* shall be saved wythout doubte, 512/8.

There are many instances of the pleonastic personal pronoun after the compound relative *who that* or simple *who* = whosoever.

And who had seen him at that tyme, *he* wolde not haue trowed that he had be a man . . . *Blanch.* 194/21; who soever rekeneth wythoute his hoste, *he* rekeneth twys, *ibid.* 202/6; *who that* beleueth ouermoche in dremes, *he* doth agenste the commaundemente of god, *Aymon*, 222/12; *who that* doth you goode, *he* leseth well hys tyme, 269/18, 363/5, 368/5, 420/28, 453/3, 514/15, 590/24.

For the apparently pleonastic use of personal pronouns in the oblique case, see 'Relative Pronouns,' p. xlii.

(*e*) *Personal Pronoun omitted.*

A. As subject.

This omission is a remnant of the oldest stage of the language, when the personal endings of the verb made any pronoun (as a subject) superfluous, as in Greek and Latin. It is common to Old English, Middle English, and Old French :—

Old English. Her com Eomer from Cwichelme West Seaxna cininge. þohte þæt he wolde ofstingan Eadwine cininge, *Chronicle*, ab. 626; cf. 656 (Laud MS.) þæs on þæm afterran geare Hannibal sende sciphere on Rome, and þær ungemetlice gehergedon (*scil.* hie, namely the army), *Orosius*, 180/3; cf. 68/27, 134/6.

Middle English. and ȝif he hit naueð, aȝefe (*scil.* he) swa muchel swa he mai, *O. E. Hom.*, I. 29; þa he iseh Martham and Mariam Magdalene þe sustren wepe for hore broðer deð, and ure drihten ðurh rouðe þet he hefde of hom, schedde of his halie eȝene hate teres, and hore broðer arerde, and (*scil.* heo, they) weren stille of hore wope, *ibid.* 157; þu seist þat on gode bileuest (*scil.* thou), *ibid.* II. 25, l. 2; after þe forme word of þe salme abugest gode (*scil.* thou), *ibid.* l. 4. Cf. 71, 89, 93, 97, 101, 111, 119, 123, 197, 199, 215. *Gen. and Exodus*, ll. 1183, 1729, 1732, etc., etc.

Caxton is extremely free in omitting the pronoun. The instances occurring may be divided into the following groups:—

1. When the subject is the same in two co-ordinate sentences, it is omitted in the second. The omission is striking, whenever there is a clause inserted between the two principal sentences:—

So ranne the vasselles to gyder, and roughte eche other by suche a force upon the sheldes, that they were brusen and broken all to peces; theire speres (that sore bygge and stronge were) broke also all to peces. And *thenne toke* theire swerdes (*scil.* they) . . . *Blanch.* 28/11; A lytyl shal here cease *oure matere* to speke of hym, unto tyme and oure shal be for to retorne to the same. And shall shewe the sorowes and the complayntes of the proude pucelle in amours (*scil.* it, namely, *oure matere*), *ibid.* 43/5; [the provost is introduced making a long speech; then the author continues:] and thenne (that is, after the speech) wythout taryeng drewe his swerde (namely, the provost), 49/29. On p. 52 the subject for the first sentence of the 16th chapter must be supplied from the preceding chapter:—whan the proude lady in amours understode the squyer speke thus, the bloode ranne up at her face, and [she] wexed red as a rose, 64/16; wherof the provost was not lesse reioysshed than blanchardyn was. The dyner was redy, and [they] made an ende of their proces tyl another tyme, 81/26; cf. 14/21, 16/10, 22/15, 30/27, 32/7, 33/18, 41/19, 41/24, 42/8, 43/1, 52/17, 58/23, 64/16, 64/20, 66/17, 66/21, 67/4, 68/4, 69/1, 85/27, 85/32, 88/11, 99/32, 100/21, 106/8, 108/19, 127/4, 146/9, 157/3, 170/29, 174/20, 195/22, 203/29.

2. When the subject is the same in a principal and a subordinate sentence, the pronoun is omitted in one of them.

(*a*) Pronoun omitted in the subordinate sentence:—

Blanchardyn emonge other passetymes, delyted hymself in hawkynge and huntyng, wheras right moderately and manerly [he] mayntened hymself, 13/18; cf. 21/2, 22/11, 25/8, 39/25, 97/32, 152/28, 169/13.

(*b*) Pronoun omitted in the principal sentence:—

And for tabredge, after the rewthes, syghes and wepynges that so moche incessantly or wythout ceasse made the noble pucelle, [she] fell doune sterk ded upon the stomak of her most dere louere, 30/13; cf. 30/20, 49/11, 52/21, 53/24, 54/6, 65/3, 127/16.

3. When the subject of a subordinate sentence is not the same as that of the principal one, and is yet omitted, it must be supplied from the context.

How be it I knowe right wel, and make no doubt at all, but that first of all hit shall tourne for pryde of her, tyl a grete displeasire unto her, and [she] shal be therof wors apayed more than reason requyreth, *Blanch.* 39/15; certaynly I shal doo folow hym; and byleue for certayn that *his* laste daye is comen, and [he] shal deye, 44/12; cf. 45/16, 45/21, 87/10, 97/3, 133/33, 146/13, 150/23, 167/16.

4. *It* preceding impersonal verbs is omitted.

There are but two instances of this omission in *Blanchardyn*:—

But [it] seemed that she sholde slee herself to be more hastely venged, 43/26; so [it] taryed not long after thys was doon that the tempeste ceassed, 137/29.

Other instances: *Charles the Grete*, 41/6, 47/28, 49/11, 50/7, 63/11, 77/14, 83/9, 83/24, 85/7, etc. *Morte Darthur*, 136/7, 145/34, 163/35, 217/4, 241/34, 266/5, 278/20, 318/9, 354/29, etc. *Aymon*, 24/15, 27/26, 31/32, 39/29, 43/26, 45/3, 47/3, 48/24, etc.

B. A pronoun as object is very rarely omitted.

'But the knyght that was ryght courteys, guyded hym and *conduyted* a whyle,' *Blanch.* 39/30, is scarcely to be called an omission (see 'Arrangement of Words,' p. ci); but the pronoun is certainly wanting in the following passage: 'For as to his fadir, he wolde not touche,' *Aymon*, 85/29. Cf. Starkey, *England in the Reign of Henry VII*, 71/66: as for thys matter we shal ryght wel avoyd.

(*f*) The Emphatic Pronoun (himself, etc.) is used either in apposition (he himself), or independently (himself):—

For yf I sholde doo it, he hymself sholde blame me for it, *Aymon*, 189/33; and he hymselfe is delybered for to take the habyte and to become a monke, *ibid.* 280/23. By my faith, said Charlemagn, myself shall it be, *ibid.* 387/19; he thrested his swerde in one of his flankes wel depe, and hys swerde, hymself, and the place was all bybled of the blood, *Charles the Grete*, 77/12; wherin hym self is buryed, *ibid.* 37/24. There are not instances enough to decide which use prevails.

Own is sometimes inserted: 'I shall hang you my owne self.' *Aymon*, 339/13.

§ 11. *The Reflexive Pronoun.*

Both the simple and the compound forms occur, but the latter are apparently the rule. Of thirty instances occurring on the first forty-two pages of *Blanchardyn*, only three are simple, namely, 1/22, 2/10, 41/21.

§ 12. *The Possessive Pronoun.*

(*a*) *My, thy*, are used before consonants; *mine, thine*, before vowels. *Its* never occurs; in its place we find *his*, as in Old and Middle English. For the possessive pronouns used substantively, 'mine, thine, ours, yours' is the rule; 'our, your' occur, but quite exceptionally:—

I haue herde that ye haue called me and my broder the sones of a traytour, and that the kyng knoweth well that our fader slewe yours by trayson, wherof I wylle ye wyte that ye lie falsely, but your fader dyde assaylle *our* by trayson, *Aymon*, 545/10; Ye wolle enforce yourselfe to rescue oute of daunger of deth, my lorde and *youre*, my good husband Sadoyne, *Blanchardyn*, 189/25. *his* is sometimes preceded by the definite article. *See* 'Article,' p. xxvi.

The possessive pronouns are sometimes preceded by *this*: 'This their message,' *Morte Darthur*, 160/30. Cf. above, § 5, on the Genitive Case, p. xv.

(*b*) The possessive pronoun *my* is used as a term of courtesy. It occurs very frequently in connection with *lady*, so as to form almost *one word*. This is made evident by the repetition of *my* in the following instances:—

Unto the right noble puyssaunt and excellent pryncesse, *my* redoubted lady, *my* lady Margarete, duchesse of Somercete, etc., *Blanchardyn* (Dedication), 1/2; I haue told you her byfore, that the paynem kynge Alymodes apparreylleth hymself to make werre

to *my* lady, *my* maystresse, the proude pucelle in amours, *ibid.* 38/3; *my* lady *my* susters name is dame Lyonesse, *Morte Darthur*, 232/13; I byleue certeynly that he shall doo soo, for the kindness that *my lorde my* fader dyde shewe unto Charlemagne, *Aymon*, 427/33; I praye you ryde unto *my* lorde *myn* unkel kynge Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 267/32. I met with only one exception: At yonder wyndowe is *my lady syster* dame Lyones, *ibid.* 237/3.

Instead of 'my lady his moder,' Caxton says several times *his lady moder: Aymon*, 57/34, 62/20, 81/13.

(*c*) The possessive pronoun is often replaced by the genitive of the personal pronoun: the head of him = his head. See 'Genitive.'

(*d*) *his* instead of the genitival inflexion *'s* is very rare:—

And with that renne, blanchardyn *his* courser ran ouer þe provost that he tradd upon one of his armes, *Blanchardyn*, 48/35; to what thynge Charles *hys* sone and *hys* doughters were instructe and taughte to doo, *Charles the Grete*, 28/1; this lord of this castel, *his* name is syr Damas, *Morte Darthur*, 126/17 (not exactly equal to a genitive); the fyrste knyghte *hys* hors stumbled, *ibid.* 220/30.

(*e*) *mine* is sometimes equivalent to *of me* used in an objective sense. It occurs in connection with the gerund, and translates the French *mon*, etc. 'Thou knowest well, that I dyde was *in my deffendynge*,' *Aymon*, 88/26; 'it was I that slewe this knyght *in my deffendaunt*,' *Morte Darthur*, 83/25. This is false analogy to the other gerundial constructions, like 'in my talking,' etc., formed out of the intransitive or transitive verbs. There is a parallel passage in Chaucer:—'Another homicidy is doon for necessite, as whan a man sleth another *in his defendaunt*,' III. 312. One MS., however, has *him defendaunt*.[1]

§ 13. *The Demonstrative Pronouns.*

With the exception of one remnant of Middle English use, the syntax of the demonstrative pronouns is really the same in Caxton as in our own time. *That* is sometimes used in connection with *one* and *other*:—

[1] Perhaps the following passage cannot be explained in the same way:—'Syre, ye be a right fayre Iouncell . . . and *to my seming* right wel worthy to haue the grace and fauour of the right gentyll damoyselle,' *Blanchardyn*, 37/22. Probably 'seem' is here 'think'; 'to my thinking' is still in use. Cf. the chapter on the Impersonal Verb.

That one looked upon t*hat other* for to see who wold sette fyrst honde upon hym, *Charles the Grete*, 44/26; *that one* was named babtysme, and *that other* grabam, *ibid.* 59/17-18. Cf. *ibid.* 59/24-5, 62/19, 70/21.

The same is often used as a mere equivalent of the simple personal pronoun :—'Where by experience he shuld lerne to bere armes, and shuld exercyce and take payne and dyligence upon hymself to knowe the ways of *the same* = of them' (*scil.* armes), *Blanchardyn* 16/6; cf. 19/16, 22/1, 38/9, etc. It crops up very often in Elizabethan times: Marlowe, *Tamb.* I. 2; *Edward* II. l. 1439; Greene, *Looking Glass*, 135 *a*, 142 *a*; Greene, *Alphonsus*, 228 *a*, 228 *b*, 229 *a*; *Gorboduc*, 18, 23; Spenser, *View of the State of Ireland*, p. 609 *a*, 624 *a*. For Shakspere, see Schmidt, *Lexicon*, s. v.

§ 14. With regard to *Interrogative Pronouns* it is noteworthy that *what* often refers to persons :—

She loked bakward for to se *what* he was that so hastely rode after her, *Blanchardyn*, 41/30; moche grete desyre I haue to wyte and knowe *what* he may be, 64/1; (he) asked of him *what* he was,[1] of what lande and of what lynage, 99/35. Cf. 43/13, 128/17, 154/11, 183/20, 194/3. Very often in *Morte Darthur*, and also in Berners's *Huon*, we find '*what* he was and *who* was his father,' 17/22. Cf. 23/12, 29/11, 30/3, 30/13, 54/7, 104/11, etc.

§ 15. *The Relative Pronoun.*

(*A.*) The relative clause either follows its antecedent, or rather *correlative*, or precedes it. Accordingly we find two sorts of relative pronouns in Caxton :—

I. That, which, the which, whom, where, as.

II. Who, who that, whosoever (whomsoever).

(I.) *That* is used of persons and things, *especially after pronouns* (he, that), but is restricted to the nominative and accusative case, when used alone, and is never preceded by a preposition. Of all the relative pronouns it is by far the most frequent.

'*That conveys a vague idea of reference;* this is its function compared with the other relative pronouns. It answers thus to

[1] Though we say still '*What* are you? an engineer or a teacher?' meaning 'of what profession or business are you?' the first quotation above shows that *what* in it means *who*.

Old English þe, to the German *was*, used by illiterate people, and to the Hebrew *ascher*.

Dr. Abbott's rule with regard to the Elizabethan use of *that* does not apply to Caxton. *That* is not only used (*a*) after a noun preceded by the article, (*b*) after nouns used vocatively, in order to complete the description of the antecedent by adding some essential characteristics of it. Cf. the following passages :—

That used of persons : *Blanchardyn*, 1/9 (theym that); 12/17 (people of the lande that ludged hemself right happy) ; 14/5 (theym that); 15/2 (Blanchardyn that); 15/22 (knyghtes that); 19/16 (dyuers there were that); 19/19 (blanchardyn that); 19/21 (no tonge humayn that); 19/23, 24; 20/1, 21/11, 22/2, 4, 17; 23/2, 7, 13, 17, 19, 24; 25/15, 16, 22, 24; 26/16, 27/11, 28/6, 31/2, 9; 32/13, 22, 25; 33/4, 5; 38/8, 39/29, etc.

That used of things : 12/5, 19; 15/6, 16, 21; 16/7, 17, 19; 17/10, 14; 18/10, 22; 19/1, 14, 15, 25, 26; 20/19, 22/9, 11; 23/6, 24/9, 26/1, 7, 19, 25; 27/4, 16, etc.

Next in frequency comes *which*. It refers to persons and things, but differs from *that* in three points.

1. It not only follows an immediate antecedent, but may be separated from it by other nouns :—

he found the foot of the hors of hym for whom he wente in enqueste, *whiche* (*sic.* the foot) he folowed ryght quykly, *Blanchardyn*, 25/19; at thynstaunce and requeste of my sayd lady, *whiche* I repute as a commaundemente, I haue reduced, 1/23; he gate a fyght goode and riche swerde, that longed unto the kynge his fader, *whiche* afterward was to hym wel syttynge, 17/15; where he fonde the leest courser of the kinge his fader, *whiche* was the fairest and the best that coude haue ben founde in ony contreye at that tyme, 18/1; cf. 19/10. There is a very instructive instance in *Morte Darthur*: 'when syr Gaherys sawe hys tyme, he cam to their beddes syde, alle armed, with his swerd naked and soddenly gat *his moder* by the here and strake of her hede; whenne syr Lamorak sawe the blood dasshe upon hym all hote, *the whiche* he lefte passynge wel (*i. e.* his moder), wete ye wel he was sore abasshed,' 452/27.

2. *Which* is used in connection with prepositions. Upon whiche, *Blanchardyn*, 18/7; in whiche, 22/2, 28/17, 31/16; through whiche, 32/3, 62/2.

3. It replaces a personal or demonstrative pronoun, in order to bring about a closer connection between the two *logically co-ordinate* sentences :—

I, wyllyam Caxton . . . presente this lytyl book unto the noble grace of my sayd lady: *whiche boke* I late receyued in frenshe from her sayd grace, etc., *Blanchardyn*, 1/7; I haue reduced this sayd boke out of frenshe into our englyshe: *whyche boke* specyfyeth of the noble actes and fayttes of warre . . . *ibid.* 1/25 (= and it); cf. 33/6; the noble mayden behelde hym moche humbly, *whyche* toke a ryght grete pleasure to see his gracyouse and assured behauyng, 77/7 (= and she); but this function is shared also by *the whiche* and *whom*. Cf. Of *whom* and of *their* behauynge I shal make mencion after, *Charles*, 38/22.

The whiche (answering to the French *liquels*) is used most of persons in the same function as *which*, *Blanchardyn*, 13/3, 18/16, 22/18, 26/10, 27/8, 29/7, 32/14, etc.

Whom, so far as I am aware, is used of persons, and in connection with prepositions. Of whom, 15/15; for whom, 25/18; to whom, 37/7. Cf. 82/12, 90/19, 94/22, 98/31, 99/3, 104/5, 105/11, etc.

Where, followed by *of* or *by*, refers to persons and things, and whole sentences, and is equivalent to *which* and *whom*.

The childe grewe and amended sore of the grete beaulte, *wherof* he was garnyssed, *Blanchardyn*, 13/6 (French *dont*); and (that) gaff hym a wylle for to be lyke unto those noble and worthy knyghtes, *wherof* he sawe the remembraunces, 15/19; thurgh the cite were herde the voyces, *wherby* they were soone aduertysed, 20/4; (he) wrapped his wounde, *wherof* he so sore sorowed, 23/11; and themne toke their swerdes, *wherof* they gaafe many a grete stroke, 28/11; cf. 28/16; he sholde vaunce hymself for to kysse suche a pryncesse that neuer he had seen before, and *wherof* thacquentaunce was so daungerous, 40/25; the rayson *wherby* I so saye I shall show it unto you, 53/9, etc.

Referring to sentences: but trowed all they that were present that they had be bothe ded, *wherof* the pyteous cryes, wepyng and lamentacyons began to be more grete . . . 20/2, 20/5.

As is used after *such* as in Modern English; cf. 1/20, 2/11, etc., but *such* is also often followed by *that*:—

It shall not be taken so lightly as men wene, for suche folke doo kepe it, *that* well and worthily shall deffende it, *Aymon*, 73/11; ye aske counseyll of *such that* cannot counseyll theymselfe, *ibid.* 208/14; I requyre and byseche alle *suche that* fynde faulte or error . . . Blades, *Caxton*, 170. Cf. Chaucer, *Boeth.* (ed. Morris): such a place that men clepen theatre. On the first forty pages of *Blanchardyn*, the share of these pronouns expressed in figures is:—

	Persons.	Things.		Persons.	Things.
That	39	51	Whom	3	—
Whiche	6	17	Where	2	7
The whiche	7	1	As	1	1

(II.) *Who* as a relative preceding the correlative is met with in Old English in connection with *swa*, and becomes in Middle English *whose*, later *whoso*.

Who that is declared by the grammarians not to appear before the second half of the 14th century; cf. Koch II.², p. 282. But there are instances of an earlier date :—

þenne ajaines kinde Gaƀ *hwa ƀat* swuche kinsemon ne luueƀ and leueƀ (then against nature goes each man who loveth such a kinsman and leaveth, *Morris*). *þe wohunge of ure Lauerd* (*O. E. Hom.* I. p. 275).

to *quat* contre sum *þat* þu wend, *Cursor Mundi*, 1149. Cf. 1151; qua þat, *ibid.* 1969.

huo þet yelpþ; he is aperteliche godes þyef, *Ayenbite*, 59; *huo þet* godeleƀ his eucristen, he is accorsed of god, *ibid.* 66; cf. 70, 75, 80, 81, 89, 93, 94, etc.

For Chaucer, see Koch, *loc. cit.*

Caxton has both *who* and *who that* equivalently: for *who that* was that tyme yrought of hym, his dayes were fynyshed, *Blanchardyn*, 169/4; *who* had seen hym at that tyme, he wold not haue trowed, that he had be a man mortal, *ibid.* 194/20; for *who that* believes ouer moche in dremes, he dooth againste the commaundemente of god, *Aymon*, 222/12; *who that* dooth you goode, he leseth wel hys tyme, *ibid.* 269/17; *who* had seen the grete mone that alarde . . . made for their cosyn, he wolde haue grete pyte for to see them, 363/3. Cf. 368/5 (who that), 420/28 (who), 453/3 (who that), 514/13 (who), 590/24 (who). Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 43/29, 45/23, 176/35, 264/23, 378/23, etc.

(*B.*) Relative pronouns in the sentence.[1]

The structure of the relative clauses in Caxton is far from being the same as in Modern English. There are three principal types of relative constructions :—

(I.) The antecedent or correlative is a noun in a complete sentence, which is followed by a many-worded adjective or relative clause :—

'She conceyued a ryght faire sone, whiche was named Blanchardyn.'—*Blanchardyn*, 12/12.

(*a*) If the relative pronoun is in the nominative case, the construction, as a rule, is the same as in Modern English. There are only a few exceptions :—

[1] For convenience' sake I prefer to discuss this important point in this place, instead of in the Syntax of the Sentence, as the system requires.

Ine þise zenʒeþ moche uolk : ine uele maneres . ase þise fole wyfmen . *þet* uor a lite wynnynge, *hy* yueþ ham to zenne, *Ayenbite*, 45.

A knight ther was and that a worthy man, *That* fro the time that he firste began To riden out, *he* louede chevalrie.—Chaucer, *Canterbury Tales* (quoted by Zupitza in a note to Koch II². p. 278).

I have not come across any such instance in Caxton, but have found two in Malory's *Morte Darthur*:—

Now tourne we unto sire Lamorak *that* upon a daye *he* took a lytel Barget and his wyf . . . 330/24 ; here is a worshipfull knyght sir Lamorak *that* for me *he* shal be lord of this countreye, 334/2 ; sir Trystram *that* by adventure *he* cam . . . *ibid.* 407/21.

(*b*) The relative is an oblique case. Then, as a rule, the relatives enumerated above are used in connection with the corresponding preposition : 'Of whom, to whom, whom or which,' etc. But there are exceptions in this case too. Instead of the simple relatives, there occur

In the genitive : relative + his (her), their.

In the dative and accusative } relative + him (her, it), them.

Old English. Hwæt se god wêre, þe þis *his* beâcen was, *Elene*, 162 ; se mon ne wât, þe *him* on foldan fægnost limpeð, *Cod. Ex.* 306/25 (quoted by Koch, p. 277).

Middle English. þe pope Gregorie þþat þe fende *him* hadde wel neiʒ icauʒt, *Greg.* ed. Schulz, 16 *a* ; a doughter þþat wiþ hire was hire moder ded, *ibid.* 32 *a* ; It was hire owhen child, *þat* in *his* armes aniʒt she went, *ibid.* 748 ; there were maydenes thretty, that for hys seruyse in the halle there there loue on hym can falle, *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Zupitza, l. 180, *see* note (Koch, p. 278, note by Zupitza).

There are a few instances in Caxton and Malory :—

Thenne answered Rubyon to Blanchardyn, that the daughter of the myghty kynge Alymodes, the euen before had gyuen unto hym her sleue, *the whiche* in presence of her father she had taken *it* from her ryght arme, *Blanchardyn*, 84/12, 13 ; he fonde hym, the terres at the eyes of hym, makynge his full pituouse complayntes, *the whiche* sadoyne had herde part *of hem*, 123/25 ; Syre, I say the same for the knyght, that is the most parfyt in all beaulte and condicyons *that*[1] *his* lyke can not be founde, 155/8 ; *the whiche* thenne, by old age and lyuynge many yeres, *his* blood was wexen colde, *Eneydos*, 14/21 ; *of whom* may not wel be recounted the valyaunce *of hym*, *Charles*, 38/20 ;

[1] Perhaps 'that' is here = so that?

for he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal woundes, *of whyche* the leste *of them* was suffysaunt for hym to haue deyed, *ibid.* 235/10; A, syr, ye are the same knyghte *that* I lodged ones in *your* castel, *Morte Darthur*, 266/15; so leue we sire Trystram in Bretayne, and speke we of sire Lamerak de galys, *that* as he sayled, *his* shyp felle on a rok, and perysshed all, 330/2; and that was she *that* Breunys saunce pyte took that shelde *from her*, 345/11, 12.

This use continued in the 16th century:—

I know no man lyuyng *that* I or my brother haue done *to hym* any dyspleasure, Berners, *Huon*, 19/24; *the whiche* treasure I gaaf part *therof* to the kynge, 263/9; I pray thee, show me what be yonder two prynces that goth up the stayres, and *that* so moch honour is done *to them*, 286/9.

Very rarely is a relative in the oblique case followed by a redundant personal pronoun:—

(they) were all murderers, *wherof* the pryncypall and the mayster *of them* all was named syluayne, *Blanchardyn*, 204/8; It is by cause ther is come in to thy court he that hath slayne my brother *whom* incontynente thou oughtest to haue slayne *hym* quyke, *Huon*, 141/24.

The edition of 1601 omits *hym*. There is perhaps a change of the construction in *Blanchardyn*, 192/29: 'they recountred a peynem, *which* they toke, and broughte *hym* before Blanchardyn.'

(II.) The correlative sentence is divided into two parts by the relative clause:—

'He that wyll be enhaunced in price, he oughte not to loke soo nyghe.'—*Aymon*, 354/23.

In Old and Middle English this type is nearly always a sort of anacoluthon to our modern eyes and ears, and perhaps it was such indeed. The essential point in which this construction differs from the modern use is, that *the correlative always appears in the nominative case*, without regard to its place in the sentence; it is only the redundant pronoun, personal or possessive, in the second part, which marks the subjective or objective case of the correlative, *e. g.*, in Modern English we might say:—'*To her who* was not skilled in receiving such guests, his acquaintance was hard to make,' but Caxton has:—'and *she* that was not lerned to receyue suche geestes, sore harde was his acquaintance *to her*.'—*Blanchardyn*, 67/29, 30.

Accordingly I distinguish two groups of type II.

(*a*) The correlative is the subject of the sentence. Then the redundant *personal* pronoun appears in the nominative case.

This pronoun is, as said above (*see* 'Personal Pronoun'), very frequent in Old English and Middle English. Perhaps we might say that this is the rule; at least the *Old English Homilies* seem to suggest such a supposition. There are in the Second Series twenty-three instances of the redundant pronoun, namely, p. 15, l. 4 from top; p. 15, l. 4 from foot; p. 19, l. 9 from top; p. 43, l. 3 from top; p. 45, l. 16 from foot, and on pages 69 (twice), 73, 75, 99, 115 (twice), 133 (twice), 143, 153 (three times), 155, 159, 201, 203, 207; while only six passages omit it, namely, on pages 11, 17, 19, 73, 111, 151.

In Caxton this is no longer the case. There is not one instance of the group (*a*) in *Blanchardyn;* and in *Aymon* they are not very numerous. *See* 'Personal Pronoun.'

(*b*) The correlative is the object (direct or indirect) of the sentence; then, as a rule, it is in the nominative case, and the redundant personal pronoun is either in the genitive (his, her, their) or dative (accusative) case:—

Alle synfulle men þe heued-synnes don habbeð, and nelleð þerof no shrift nimen he bihat *hem* eche fur on helle, *O. E. Hom.* II. 41; alle þo þe here synnen forleteð and beteð he heleð *here* synwunden mid fulenege, *ibid.;* þat (Harleian MS. þei þat) etys me ȝitt hungres thaym, and þey þat drinkes me ȝitt þristes *thaym.* Hampole, *Prose Treatises*, p. 3.

In Caxton, (*b*) is apparently the rule:—

The rayson wherby I so say, I shall show *it* unto you, *Blanchardyn*, 53/9, 67/30 (quoted above); but this that I haue tofore wryton, I haue taken *it* oute of an autentyke book, *Charles*, 38/24; he perceyued a right myghty nauye, wherof *they* that were come upon lande, he sawe *hem* in grete nombre, *ibid.* 162/3; that whiche I haue done in this behalue, I haue donn *it* for the beste, 185/19; *they* that were about hym rebell, he dompted and subdewed *them*, 196/15; very instructive instances, *ibid.* 215; *he* that deyeth in fleyinge, *his* soule shall neuer be saued, *Aymon*, 232/26; but the sorou that the kyng made for his quene, *that* myghte no man telle.—Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 274/34.

I found but a few instances of modern construction:—

And *them that* ben poure and caste doun, maketh she oftymes to ryse and mounte from certaynte to Incertaynte, *Curial*, 6/13; and *them that* were hurte, he lete the surgyens doo heale their woundes, Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 174/13.

There is one instance in Malory in which—if Caxton or his compositor did not introduce a first *gaf* not in the author's copy—both the old and modern uses are mixed in one: 'Thenne the kyng stablysshed all his knyghtes and [*gaf*] *them* that were of londes not ryche, *he gaf them* londes . . .' *Morte Darthur*, 118/13. Malory (if the first *gaf* was his) began with the modern construction: 'and gaf them that were of londes not ryche (londes),' but in the second half of the sentence he found it would be quite confusing and impossible to add 'londes' only to his long adjective 'that were of londes not ryche,' and he therefore repeated the words which governed 'londes,' the old use suggesting itself to his memory as a justification for his cumbrousness. This use occurs very often in Berners:—

The londe *that* they hold, gyue *it* to Charlot your sone, *Huon*, 5/13; with my sworde I so defendyd me, that *he* that thought to haue slayne me, I haue slayne *hym*, 27/5, 6; he that lieth there deed before you, I slew him in my defence, 34/11; *all the mete that* he could get in the towne, he shuld by *it*, 84/33.

(III.) *The relative sentence precedes its correlative.*

'*who* had seen hym at that tyme, *he* wold not haue trowed that he had be a man mortal,' *Blanchardyn*, 194/21. The use of the personal pronoun in the correlative is the same as in type II.

In the *Ayenbite* the pronoun is the rule, just as in the French Original (qui-il, quiconque-il); quite exceptionally it is omitted, *e. g.* 'huo þet wyle lede guod lif; zeche þet he habbe þet zoþe guod,' p. 94 (omitted also in the Original). In the *Gesta Romanorum*, too, it is always to be met with:—

who that euer comith thedir, *he* shall fare wele, p. 15; who so euer wold come to that feste, *he* sholde haue his doughter, p. 87; who so euer gote therby to the holy londe, *he* shall in pes go, p. 106; who so euer wolde rin with his dowter, *he* shulde wed her, p. 122; who so euer gothe with her to bedde, *he* shall anon falle in to a dede sleep, p. 160; who so euer bere it upon him, *he* shal haue loue of al men, p. 180; whosoeuer haue hit, *he* shall euermore joy, p. 286.

CAXTON. *Blanchardyn*, 194/21 (quoted above); whosoeuer rekeneth withoute his hoste, *he* rekeneth twys for ones, 202/6; who that was that day yrought of hym, *his* dayes were fynyshed, 169/4;—*Aymon*, 222/12, 269/18. *See* above, p. xl.

Malory, *Morte Darthur*. *Who that* holdeth against it, we wylle slee *him*, 43/29, 30; *who* saith nay, *he* shal be kyng, 45/23; whosomeuer is hurte with this blade, *he* shalle neuer be staunched, 176/35; who that may first mete ony of these two knyghtes, *they* sholde torne hem unto Morgan le fays castel, 378/23.

The same use occurs in the 16th century as well:—

Whosoeuer that hath not seene the noble citie of Venis, *he* hath not seene the bewyte and ryches of thys worlde, *Andrew Boorde*, p. 181; whosoeuer wil buylde a mancyon place or a house, *he* must cytuate . . . p. 233. Cf. pp. 236, 238, 242.

Shakspere has often *what—it*:—

What our contempt doth often hurl from us, We wish *it* ours again, *Antony*, I. ii. 127; *what* you have spoke, *it* may be so perchance, *Macbeth*, IV. iii. 11.

(*C.*) *Attraction* is to be observed in *that* = that which:—

Paynem, upon *that* thou me demaundest, I telle to thee . . . *Charles the Grete*, 54/17; Olyuer answered that he wold not, and *that* he sayd was folye, *ibid.* 56/35. Cf. *Blanchardyn*, 74/12, 91/7; *Morte Darthur*, 257/31.

Stronger attractions occur in *Blanchardyn*:—

Blanchardyn, sore angry and euyl apayde of *that* he sawe the untrewe knyghte to endure so longe . . . = 'of that which,' 28/13; and wyth theym was the kynge of fryse, that of new had cast doune to the grounde [him] *that* bare the chief standarde of kyng Alymodes, 195/8. *that* = him who.

(*D.*) Omission of the Relative.

The omission of the relative is very common in the 15th and 16th centuries, after *there is, there is not* (no):—

There is no man in the world can compare to him, *Charles*, 54/19; yet there were some of the grete lordes had indignation that Arthur shold be kynge, *Morte Darthur*, 43/14; there was none dyd so wel as he that day, *ibid.* 50/12; there was so fewe a felaushyp dyd suche dedes, 53/33; there was no man myghte passe them, 59/20. Cf. 59/28, 61/17, 68/24, 146/38, 212/4, 222/33, 238/28, etc.

There are many instances of this omission in Berners and in Elizabethan writers:—

Here be two of my nephese shall be pledge for me, *Huon*, 37/21; among them there was one was not content, *ibid.* 73/16; there is no man shal let me, 97/7. Cf. 113/25, 115/32, 122/17, 146/1, 238/30, 249/28, 296/16, 299/8, 440/16. For Shakspere, *see* Abbott, § 244; and *Anglia*, III., p. 115 ff.

Beside the omission after *there is*, several striking instances occur in *Blanchardyn* and *Morte Darthur*. It is impossible to account for this use without entering into a discussion of the whole matter; so I beg the reader to be satisfied for the time with a simple report of the facts:—

Whan blanchardyn understode [that] the knyght thus went thretenyng hym, and that [he] so moche inhumaynly entreated the gentyll pucelle, [he] sayde unto hym, 27/10. Cf. [he] sawe syr Alysander was assoted upon his lady,[1] *Morte Darthur*, 477/12; thou suffrest now thyn enmyes to sette thy land al on a fyre, and wymmen and children to be slayn of them, [that] are comen ferre wythin thy royaulme, *Blanchardyn*, 101/27; haue pyte and compassyon upon thys pore chylde, whiche is now al alone amonge wolves famyshed, [that] be redy to devour me, *ibid.* 180/22.

In a chirche they found one was fair and riche, *Morte Darthur*, 84/5; I shall sende hym a gyfte shalle please hym moche more, 101/2; where is the lady shold mete us here? 146/15; he mette with a man was lyke a foster, 184/29; and thenne was he ware of a faucon came fleynge ouer his hede, 208/11; but thou shalt see a syght shal make the torne ageyne, 219/35; ryght soone ther shal mete a knyght shal paye the alle thy wages, 228/11; by the feythe we owe unto god, 233/8; I wil wel with this he make her amendys of al the trespas he hath done ageynst her, 240/29; for the good lordship ye shewed me, 305/14; that is the grettest payne a prysoner may haue, 400/4.

§ 16. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

The modern English *one* = people = French *on*, German *man*, does not occur in Caxton. Its place is still occupied by *men*.

And that by his behauoure and contenaunce, *men* might well knowe that he was departed and come of noble extraction, *Blanchardyn*, 50/16; *men* see atte ey his beaulte, 54/33; (she) cam toward a wyndowe, out of whiche *men* sawe right ferre into the see, 55/32. Cf. 57/7, 68/24, 76/28, 80/7, 99/1, 116/11, 129/7.

From the passages 54/33, and 129/7, we see that 'men' was followed by a predicate in the plural. Cf. 'men make often a rodde for theym selfe,' *Aymon*, 97/11. There is one instance of 'man':—

[1] The omission of the relative here is still good English.

A man told me in the castel of four stones, that ye were delyuered, and that *man* had sene you in the court of kynge Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 83/4.

Everiche is equivalent to the modern 'everybody':—

Euerych (went) in to his owne countrey, *Aymon*, 186/16; to do *euerich* Iustice and reson, *Charles*, 30/15; there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of *everiche* that *were* aboute hym, *ibid.* 34/3; in a plural sense = all.

THE VERB.

§ 17. *Impersonal Verbs.*

(*A.*) The Impersonal Verbs denoting natural or else external events, as raining, thundering, freezing, etc., have remained the same, with regard to their syntactical use, from Old English down to modern times. We say still: it rains (O. E. hit rînð), it thunders (O. E. hit þunraþ), it freezes (O. E. hit freóseþ), it[1] happens that, &c. (O. E. hit gelimpeþ), etc.

But those Verbs which express states or actions of the human mind have undergone an important change. As stated above (*see* p. xi, 'Nominative Case'), many once Impersonal Verbs became personal, and we have now but a few instances of such verbs as 'it[1] seems to me, it[1] pleases me.'

In Caxton we see this tendency at work, but the change from impersonal to personal verbs is far from being complete. Here is an alphabetical list of the impersonal verbs in Caxton and Malory; those used personally, too, are marked with *:—

**ail*, Middle English *eilen*, impersonal, and so it is in Caxton. 'Ha broder, what yelleth you?' *Aymon*, 226/26; what eyleth you, fayr cosyns, that ye make so euyll chere? *ibid.* 322/1.

Once personal. And when the duchesse sawe him, she began to wepe full sore; and the duke knewe wel what *she eylede* (Original: yeelde), *Aymon*, 66/2.

**be better.* 'Me were better' is the rule, but there is an instance of the personal use. 'A, foole, said she, *thou* were better flee by tymes,' *Morte Darthur*, 228/33.

forthynke (cf. rewe, repent), to repent. Middle English only impersonal, *see* Stratmann, *s. v.* There are exceptions in the *Ayenbite* (pp. 5, 29), but there Dan Michel apparently copied too faithfully his French original.

[1] This *it* is a false subject, to throw the true subject after the verb.

Caxton does not use the word, which he replaces by 'rewe' and 'repent'; but there are several instances in *Morte Darthur*: '*Me forthynketh* of your displeasyr,' 97/32; 'that me forthynketh,' 82/2. Cf. 324/17.

**hap* = *happen*, generally impersonal as in Middle English. Once personal in *Morte Darthur*: 'And so *he* happed upon a daye he came to the herd men' . . . 369/20. Einenkel quotes an earlier instance from the Life of saynt Elisabeth, Wülcker's *Lesebuch*, II., p. 15: 'For who . . . In that holy iurne happe for to deye . . . he goth a siker weye To heuenwarde.'

**be leuer*, generally impersonal (Caxton, however, prefers 'have leuer.' Cf. *Aymon*, 37/17, 148/12); but there is apparently the beginning of the personal construction in the following mixed expression: 'Ha, false and renyed strompet, *I were me leuer ded*, than that I sholde byleue nor doo thi cursed counseyll,' *Blanchardyn*, 185/32. It is composed out of the two constructions struggling one with another in the author's mind. Similar absurdities occur in *Chaucer*: *Him hadde wel leever* . . . That she hadde a ship, II. 109; Him lever had himselfe to mordre and dye, V. 323. See *Einenkel*, p. 112; Zupitza, note to *Guy*, l. 5077.

Like is still impersonal. (Caxton prefers *please*.) 'Sir, like it you (may it like, that is, please you) that we have doon,' *Aymon*, 568/25; me lyketh better the swerd, sayd Arthur: Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 74/3; I assente, sayd the kynge, lyke as ye haue deuysed, and at crystmas there to be crowned, and to holde my round table with my knyghtes *as me lyketh*, ibid. 182/10. Cf. 222/10, 230/8. I don't notice any instance of personal use in Caxton; but there is one as early as 1440: 'Here me, and þou shalt like it for euer,' *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 281.

Like is used impersonally (and intransitively) in Elizabethan authors:

> 'Therefore 'tis best, if so *it like* you all,
> To send my thousand horse incontinent.'
> Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, l. 51.

'And I'll dispose them as *it likes* me best.' *ibid.* 3839.

Cf. Greene, *Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay*, p. 159, *a.*; Greene, *James IV.*, p. 202, *a.*; *George-a-Greene*, p. 260, *a.*

**list*, used both personally and impersonally.

Impersonal. Whan the kynge hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe *where hym lyste*,—*Charles the Grete*, 118/11; Breuse was so wel horsed, that *whan hym lyst* to flee, he myght wel flee, and also abyde whan *hym lyst*,—*Morte Darthur*, 398/8, 9. Cf. 245/8, 256/4.

Personal. Ye shall now here and understande from the hens-fourthon a terryble and a pyteous songe, yf *ye* therafter *liste* to herken, *Aymon*, 59/7; ye shall understonde, yf ye liste to herken, *ibid.* 90/21.

There are two instances of the personal use in *Chaucer*. For he to vertu listeth not entende, III. 1; As doon this fooles that hire sorw eche with sorowe . . . and listen nought to seche hem oother cure, IV. 136.

**ben loth*. *Impersonal.* I wold well kepe me, and *be loth* for to denounce thynge unto you that shulde tourne you to a displeasure, *Blanchardyn*, 76/17; that *is me loth*, said the knyght, *Morte Darthur*, 69/24.

Personal. I knowe thou arte a good knyghte, and loth I were to slee thee, *Morte Darthur*, 203/17; therfor ony of hem will be loth to haue adoo with other . . . *ibid.* 279/2; I am ful loth to haue adoo with that knyght, *ibid.* 383/22.

There is an instance of the personal use in *Chaucer*. 'My soverayn lady . . . Whom I most drede and love, as I best can, and lothest were of all this world displese,' 111/19. But perhaps this use may be traced back to as early as the *Cursor Mundi*. One line shows the state of transition between the impersonal and personal. 'Of chastite *has* lichour leth' (loath), l. 31, Cotton MS. The Fairfax MS. reads: 'of chastite *ys* licchour loþ.' Göttingen and Trinity MSS. read: 'of chastite has lecchour lite.'

In another line, *loth* seems to be used quite personally: (these names) *þat lath er* for to lie in rim, 9240, MSS. C. F. T.

**myster* = need, be in need of; avail.

Impersonal. lady moder, gramercy of so fayre a yefte as here is, For *it mystreth me* wel, *Aymon*, 129/14; borgons, thys worde mystre not to you for to saye, for ye must nedes defende yourselfe, *ibid.* 141/5; what mystreth hym (to Aeneas) to edifie cartage, and enhabyte emonge his enmies . . . *Eneydos*, 62/13.

Personal. Wherefore I mystered gretly of thayde and socours of you and of other, *Blanchardyn*, 77/33. (Of your helpe I had grete myster, *Morte Darthur*, 224/34. Cf. 59/5.)

need seems to be used only impersonally by Caxton and Malory. It needeth not to be doubted that he is come to his extremite of prowes and valyauntnes, *Blanchardyn*, 72/17; it nedeth not to be asked, yf he was therof gladde, *ibid.* 101/4; it nede not to you to make eny sorowe, *ibid.* 278/15. Cf. *Aymon*, 167/7, 490/6; *Morte Darthur*, 278/15. Often used so by Spenser:

Now needeth him no lenger labour spend, His foes have slain themselves.—*Faerie Queene*, I. i. 26; Him needed not long call, *ibid.* II. vi. 19; Me little needed from my right way to have strayed, II. vi. 22. Also by Shakspere, 3 *Henry VI.*, I. iv. 125; *Venus*, 250.

owe = behove. Alas, said sir Lamorak, ful wel *me ought* to knowe you, for ye are the man that most haue done for me, *Morte Darthur*, 337/24. Cf. *Chaucer*, II. 313: and ther she was honoured as hir oughte; *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 215: (she) mette him as hir owte to do.

please only impersonal. It playse me wel, *Aymon*, 75/8. Cf. 29/25, 159/28, 226/22, etc.; *Morte Darthur*, 198/3, etc.

**repent.*

Impersonal. Yf ye abide here ony lenger, it shall repente you full sore, *Aymon*, 472/30; Me sore repenteth it, said sir gauayn, *Morte Darthur*, 107/27; that me repenteth, sayd syr Turquyne, *ibid.* 185/25.

Personal. Wherof I me repente sore, *Aymon*, 38/21; I truste in god myn eure is not suche but some neuer of them may sore repente thys, *Morte Darthur*, 59/7; I repente me, *ibid.* 469/23.

rew, impersonal. That rewyth me, sayd the provost, *Blanchardyn*, 156/10.

**seem* not only means 'appear,' but also 'think, believe,' as in Old English, when used personally. There are two passages in *Blanchardyn* which can be interpreted in this way: '*To my seming* ye sholde forclose and take awaye out of your herte all inutyle sorowfulnesse,' 53/5; 'I am sure that he hath in his house a rote that, as to my semyng shal gyf me help,' 70/17; *Me semeth* him a servaunt nothing able, *Courtesye*, l. 455.

There are two passages in the *E. E. Wills* which sanction this interpretation: 'like as mine executours seme best,' 79/21; and still more indisputable: 'as *they seme* that gode ys,' 111/26.

shame, only impersonal.

'Me shamed at that tyme to haue more adoo wyth you,' *Morte Darthur*, 332/5; 'for me shameth of that I haue done,' 324/6.

In Middle English it is impersonal and personal; cf. Trevisa's translation of Higden's *Polychronicon*: '*I* knewe myn own pouert, and *schamede* and dradde,' I., p. 11. Cf. I., p. 9: '*me schamed* and dradde to fynde so grete and so gostliche a bone to graunte.'

thynken = seem, always impersonal. *Charles*, 55/11; *Aymon*, 410/30; *Morte Darthur*, 65/9, etc.

(*B.*) There is another sort of Impersonal Verbs, which denote neither external events nor actions of the mind. These are the verbs *reherce*, *show*, *tell*, occurring in Malory, as in Middle English, without any subject. The context proves that we have to supply 'the author,' 'the book,' though sometimes we find 'in the booke':—

After they were wedded, as it telleth in the booke, *Morte Darthur*, 63/18; as it telleth after, 63/35; as it telleth in the book of aventures folowynge, 64/31; as *it reherceth* after in the book of Balyn le saueage, that foloweth next after, 75/17; as it telleth after in the sangraylle, 91/27; as it reherceth afore, 105/11. I found only one instance in Caxton. The heading of chapter xvii. of *Aymon* runs as follows:—*Here sheweth* how reynawde faught agenst rowland, the whiche he conquered by the wyll of God, etc., 389/12.

This is an old Middle English use:—

Ase *hit seiþ* þer = as is said there, *i. e.* in the salutations, *Ancren Riwle*, p. 34; hi scule habben þat brad *þe seiþ* iþe godspel (which is spoken of in the gospel), *O. E. Hom.*, I. 241; so it her telleþ, *Bestiary* (in *O. E. Miscellany*), l. 257. Cf. l. 630. (There is another explanation in Grimm, IV. 53.)

(*C.*) There is often a striking want of inflexion in the Impersonal Verbs, especially in *thynk* = seem:—

Bote ne *þinche* ham nawt ȝet þat he is ful pinet (but it seems to them that he is not yet fully tormented).—þe wohunge of ure Lauerd, *O. E. Hom.*, I. p. 283. In the *Cursor Mundi*, me *thinc* is the rule! Cf. 225, 248, 2224, 2941, 3030, 5192, 5863, 6670, etc.; otherwise as hem thenke, *E. E. Wills*, 124/10; as it *please* the seid Denys, *Bury Wills*, p. 46; as them best *seme* to doon, *E. E. Wills*, 86/4. In *Caxton*—Me thynke that ye ought to take that the erle profereth to you, *Aymon*, 410/30; It playse me well, sayd the kynge, *ibid.* 75/8; thys worde mystre not for you to saye, *ibid.* 141/5. *Lyst* is nearly always without *s*. *See* above.

I suppose that this want of inflection is due to the analogy of the frequent *me lyst*, which is the regular Old English form. Cf. fæst (inf. fæstan), grét (inf. grétan). Sievers, *A. S. Grammar*, § 359/3.

§ 18. *Intransitive, transitive, and reflexive verbs.*

It is an unparalleld freedom of the English language to use the same verb in an intransitive, transitive, or causative, and reflexive sense, *e. g.* change, mend. Many causes have concurred in bringing about this remarkable and most valuable peculiarity. There is a faint germ of it in Old English, *e. g. bídan*, to abide (dwell and wait for), intransitive and transitive; *féran*, go and carry; *gesamnian*, to gather, reflexive and causative. It grows in Modern English, e. g. *drive*, used intransitively, *O. E. Miscellany*, pp. 1, 15; *fill*(en), Intr. *O. E. Hom.*, II. 37; *sink*(en), causative, *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 1108; *leren* = to learn, *ibid.* 354, 1383, 3486; *O. E. Miscellany*, pp. 4, 11; *understand* = to teach, *ibid.* p. 52; *kelen* = to become cold.—Trevisa, *Polychr.* I. 177, etc.

It becomes ripe in the Elizabethan time, when nearly every verb is used in all the three senses.

Caxton exhibits several instances, which show that the development towards the Modern use was nearly complete:—

Cease, used as a causative. Soo pray I you that ye wyl *cesse* your grete sorowe, *Blanchardyn*, 44/2; (I beseche you) that ye wyll *ceasse* your sorowe, *ibid.* 53/27.

Learn = teach. She was not *lernyd* to receyue suche geestes, *Blanchardyn*, 67/29. Cf. 141/4.

Malory, too, has several instances of this use:—

I shalle be your rescowe, and *lerne* hym to be ruled as a knyghte, *Morte Darthur*, 197/10; who dyde lerne thee to dystresse ladyes and gentylwymmen, *ibid.* 197/17. Cf. 285/33, 333/23. Shakspere, *Othello*, I. iii. 183: My life and education both do *learn* me How to respect you.

Lose, causative = ruin. But through fortune chaungeable, my lande hath he wasted and *lost* by darius, *Blanchardyn*, 146/5; *Morte Darthur*, 82/21.

Possess, causative. When he had gyuen to me my lande, and *possessed* me in my contrey, I wold not accept it, *Charles*, 147/16.

Succombe, causative = subdue. In their folysshe pryde I shal *sucombe* and brynge a lowe their corage, *Blanchardyn*, 104/30. The original has: 'Et de la folle entre prinse qu ilz ont faicte pour l'orgueil et oultrage qui les ensuient contre vous vouldroy *abaissier* leur couraige follastre.'

Sit. There is a passage in *Aymon* where *sit* is used as a causative = set; but there seems to be only one instance of this use, and that makes me suspect a misprint. And he *sat* al his folk in a bushment within a grete wode, 136/18. I never came across this use of *sit* in older English, but several passages in *Melusine*, and the free modern *sit*, as a reflexive or causal, come very near to it. And she thanne wepynge *satte* herself by hym, *Melusine*, 157/2; [they] sate themself at dyner, *ibid.* 157/20; 'Whatever he did, he was constantly *sitting himself* down in his chair, and never stopping in it.'—Dickens, *Chimes*, 66; '*sitting himself* down on the very edge of the chair,' *Pickwick*, II. 356. *See* Storm, *English Philology, Colloquial English.*

Tarry is used as an intransitive, reflexive, and causative verb.

(*a*) but not long *hit taryed*, when tolde and recounted was . . . *Blanchardyn*, 19/17.

(*b*) the knyght there alone *taryed himself*,—*Blanchardyn*, 22/20. Cf. 88/3.

(*c*) other Infynyte thynges that are wont to *tarye* the corages of some enterpryses, *Blanchardyn*, 17/11; here we shal tarye tyl oure penne, *ibid.* 182/11.

Walop, causatively. But Blanchardyn wyth a glad chere *walloped* his courser as bruyauntly as he coude . . . = made to gallop, *Blanchardyn*, 42/5. Cf. *Morte Darthur*, 176/5: and anon he was ware of a man armed *walkynge* his horse easyly by a wodes syde. (Both as in Modern English.)

There are a few verbs used reflexively, which seem to be mere translations of the French.

The whiche, when he sawe Blanchardyn, anone *escryed hymself* hyghe . . . *Blanchardyn*, 32/15; I haue not *perceyued me* of this that ye telle me, *ibid.* 17/15 (Original: je ne me suis pas perceu de . . .); I *perceyue me* well, *Aymon*, 229/15; after this he *toke hym self* to syghe full sore = he began, *Blanchardyn*, 23/16; yet sholde I neuer *consent me* to noo peas, *Aymon*, 409/23; I *assente me*, said Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 71/13; I assente me therto, *ibid.* 340/6.

At last, it is worth noting that a passive construction is sometimes used with the meaning of a reflexive (or intransitive):—

Here we shal leue to speke of her, and shal retourne to speke of Blanchardyn, that in the provostis house *was sette* atte dyner, *Blanchardyn*, 82/22; they wysshe their handes, ant *were sette* at dyner, *Aymon*, 38/8; now *was set* Berthelot and the worthi reynawde for to playe at the ches, *ibid.* 61/21; I pray you that ye wyl telle me in what region and what marche it (*i. e.* the city) *is sette* = lies, *Blanchardyn*, 128/25. Cf. *Huon*, 117/32. This too seems to be due to the French.

§ 19. *Auxiliary Verbs.*

(*a*) The verbs *can*, *may*, *will* are still complete.

1. be able to: How shall I *conne* doo soo moche, that I maye avenge myselfe of Charlemagne, *Aymon*, 61/9; full fayne [she] wolde haue putte therunto a remedy yf by any meanes she *had conde*,—*Blanchardyn*, 97/4.

2. with the meaning = to learn: 'Syre monke, in the deuylles name, *conne* ye well your lesson,' *ibid.* 282/23.

3. The phrase 'I conne you thanke' (French: *savoir grê*): I conne you grete thanke of the offre that now ye haue doon to me, *Aymon*, 30/34, and 70/32.

The infinitive of *may* is *may*, or the more frequent and correct *mowe* (*Old English*, múgan). In *Blanchardyn* there is only 1 *may* against 12 *mowe*.

I pray you that ye wyl doo the beste that ye *shal may* toward the kynge, 91/10; As ye shall *mowe* here hereafter, 14/8; by what manere he sholde *mowe* passe it over, 32/7, 38/14, 43/14, 46/31, 54/28, 68/5, 73/25, 78/2, 101/34, 151/6, 173/33.

Mowe occurs twice as a past participle in *Blanchardyn*. And wherby ye *haue mowe* knowen by the relacion of your captayne . . .

53/13; by all the seruyces and pleasures that I *haue mowe* doon unto you, 53/23.

It is to be thought that he *shall wyl* giue hym one of his doughters in mariage, *Blanchardyn*, 64/25.

Will. I am at a loss how to explain *wold* = be willing,[1] in the following passage: 'from þe owr that ye shal *wold* gyue your loue unto kynge Alymodes, the right happy weal of peas shall be publysshed through alle cuntreye,' *Blanchardyn*, 69/19. Well he *had wold*[2] that they myght be met wythall, *ibid.* 121/17.

Perhaps the past participle has influenced the infinitive, as in the verbs of Latin origin, like 'mitigate, participate,' etc.

(*b*) *Have* often means = lead, take, bring. (The ladyes) toke her up anone, and *had* her to bedde, *Blanchardyn*, 96/20; (Subyon) toke her by the hande, and *had* her up fro the grounde, *ibid.* 177/32, 181/17, 183/2, 189/30; *Aymon*, 92/14, 525/9, 536/10, etc.; *Morte Darthur*, 486/17.

(*c*) *May* is equivalent to *can;* they are sometimes used together tautologically. 'The gretest honoure that man *can or may* do to a knyght.'—*Blanchardyn*, 66/10.

(*d*) *do* is used to give the verb which it precedes a causative meaning. I shal *doo passe* this same spyere throughe the myddes of thy body, *Blanchardyn*, 27/17; I shal *doo* folow hym = I shall cause him to be followed, *ibid.* 44/10 (Original: 'Ie le ferai Sieuir'), 112/7, 120/25, 126/28, 137/21, 148/3, 157/12, 186/4, 187/23, 190/3, 200/31. So in Malory. Compare 'make' in § 25 below.

(*e*) *do* used redundantly, as *can or gan* in Middle English. I tried in vain to find out a rule in Caxton for using or omitting this troublesome 'auxiliary.' There are 95 instances of this *do* in *Blanchardyn.*

(*f*) *Come* is once used as an auxiliary, as in French, and probably in obedience to it: 'She called hym nyghe her, and shewed hym the ryght myghty nauye that *cam* to arryue there' = which had just arrived (venoit d'arriver), *Blanchardyn*, 153/35.

(*g*) For *owe*, see 'Impersonal Verbs.'

(*h*) For the use of *shall* and *will*, in order to mark tense and mood, *see* 'Tense' and 'Mood.'

§ 20. *Voice.*

The peculiarity of forming the passive voice from intransitive verbs, which is characteristic of the English language, or rather the

[1] Dr. Furnivall says it is the past participle 'have been willing to,' 'have consented to.'

[2] Past part. wisht, been willing.

conversion of what is the object of a verb into the subject (he was given a book), is, so far as I am aware, not to be met with in Caxton, and I found only one instance in Malory. Cf. the following instances:—

As was tolde hym by the knyght, *Blanchardyn*, 43/1; all that was told hym, *ibid.* 196/20; and whan it was told the kynges that there were come messagers, *Morte Darthur*, 48/27; whan hit was told hym that she asked his hede, *ibid.* 79/25, 327/35;—he departed and came to his lord and told hym how *he was answerd* of sir Trystram, *ibid.* 463/5.

This rigid observation of the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs, with regard to the passive voice, is very strange at the end of the 15th century, as there are instances of the modern freedom as early as the beginning of the 13th century.

Koch quotes one instance from *Layamon:* 'þat *we* beon iquemed,' 1/40; and another from *Robert of Gloucester:* '*ycham* ytold,' 5514.

But I find the passive construction even with the direct and indirect object:—

'Nes among al moncun oni holi dole ifunden þet muhte beon ileten blod,' *Ancren Riwle*, 112; þet is scarcely the dative; nor is Ure Lauerd in 'Ure Lauerd beo iÞonked,' *ibid.* 8, where MS. C has: 'beo *hit* þonked,' for another passage, on p. 112, is indisputable: 'þe *he* was þus ileten blod.'[1]

Chaucer. I may you devyse how that *I* may be *holpe*, III. 11; I am commaundid, II. 294; ye schal be payd, III. 17; Thembassatours ben answerde for fynal, IV. 306.

Chaucer offers no example of the passive with a double object, but I find one in Hampole, *Prose Treatises*, p. 5: 'I fand Jesus bowndene, scourgede, *gyffene galle to drynke*.'

Perhaps we may see in Caxton's apparent dislike of this construction, a sort of negative influence of the French.

§ 21. There are verbal forms which, in Old English, were indifferent with regard to voice. These were the infinitive, the verbal noun (-ung, -ing), and sometimes the participle past, when used adjectively.

[1] *Einenkel* was somewhat rash in saying, with regard to this use, that in Chaucer's time this revolution had just began, and that we must look upon these instances as mere irregularities and licences, p. 110.

In Middle English there is a faint beginning of creating new passive constructions of the infinitive and gerund by means of the auxiliary *be;* but before the Elizabethan age the modern use of the passive infinitive and gerund is not complete.

In Caxton there is a distinct tendency towards the modern use, but still the active constructions prevail. The Infinitive, Gerund, and Participle will be dealt with in their proper place; here a few instances will suffice:—

He made *the toun sawte* ofte tymes ful sore = to be assaulted, *Blanchardyn*, 152/4; after that greuouse sorowe that she hath had of my *takynge*, *ibid.* 148/32; (he) was *remembred* of it always, *ibid.* 31/7; he was ryght sore merueylled, *ibid.* 139/16.

§ 22. *Tense.*

(*a*) Sometimes the Present Tense occurs instead of the Preterite (Præsens historicum):—

And then he *taketh* him bytwene his armes, and kisse*th* hym by grete loue; and whan he *had* doon thus, he say*d* . . . *Aymon*, 78/12; all they[m] of theyr companye arayed themselfe, and yssued oute of the castell . . . and soo *go* upon the oost of Charlemagne, *ibid.* 78/25; but Reynawde the worthy knyght *is* not abasshed, but he *taketh* all his folke, and setteth theym afore hym, and say*d* to his brother Alarde, *ibid.* 101/12.

(*b*) The Present used instead of the Future is very rare:—

'To morwe erly, whan we *see* houre and tyme goode, and alle redy, we shal do sowne oure trompetter,' *Blanchardyn*, 157/11.

(*c*) The Preterite is used in the narrative; but sometimes the Perfect alternates with it, often even in the same sentence:—

Charlemain is come to the frensshe men, and commaunded theym for to wythdrawe theym selfe, *Aymon*, 84/7, 8; Reynawde and his bredern are goon upon the walles, and loked about theym, and sawe that the bassecourte of the castell brenned there as their wytaylles were, *ibid.* 98/1, 2; Sir Bleoberis ouerthrewe hym, and sore hath wounded hym, *Morte Darthur*, 296/32.

This use crops up pretty often in Middle English epic poetry. Cf. *Story of Genesis and Exodus*:—

'Wiþ wines drinc he wenten is þhogt,
So þat he haueð þe dede wrogt. 1149, 1150;
Symeon and leui it bi-speken,
And hauen here sister þor i-wreken.' 1855, 1856, 2043, 2101, 2312, 2609, 2622, 3746, 3798, 3956.

(*d*) The Preterite instead of the Past Perfect Tense is still very common in Caxton :—

(We) shall shewe the sorowes and the complayntes of the proude pucelle in amours, and the manyere that she kept after the kysse that blanchardyn toke of her, *Blanchardyn*, 43/8. And (the city) hym semed the most fayre and most riche cyte that euer he sawe, *ibid.* 45/17. Cf. 47/33, 57/29, 59/26, 66/15, 116/8, 128/34, 129/26, 145/12, 162/6, 185/6. Malory, *Morte Darthur*, 37/13, 49/2, 99/31, 150/25, 271/19, 313/14, 325/18, 337/7, 348/3.

(*e*) If what a person thinks, hopes, or tries does not agree with the facts, the verb containing the object of the verbs *think*, *believe*, *trow*, *fear*, *hope*, *try*, etc., appears, as a rule, in a tense anterior to that of those verbs, *e. g.* :—

The prouost and the other of the towne entred ayen in to the cyte, wenyng to them that Blanchardyn had be wyth them, but he was not, *Blanchardyn*, 88/8.

1. for they were bothe fal in swone, so that no lyf coude be perceued in theire bodyes, but trowed all they that were present that they had be bothe deed, *Blanchardyn*, 20/2 ; as they sholde neuer haue seen eche other, they toke leue one of other, 94/5 ; for well he wend that he sholde neuyr haue seen ayen her, 95/30 ; but the prouost . . . trowed that he (Blanchardyn) had ben a sarrasyne as other were, 128/10 ; they were constreyned to enter into the brode see agayne, lest they sholde haue smytten hemself agrounde, 136/13. (She) was in a grete feer lest he had ben drowned in the grete tempest, 152/14 ; she was right glad, wenyng to her that it had be Sadoyne, 183/13 ; and thenne sir launcelot wold haue yeuen hym alle these fortresses and these brydges, *Morte Darthur*, 352/4. Cf. *ibid.* 368/35, 369/30, 392/29, etc.

2. The infinitive of the perfect, instead of the present tense, after such verbs is (with a very few exceptions) strictly observed :—

He wende to haue tourned the brydell of his horsse, *Blanchardyn*, 140/32 ; the cassydonyers had not syth the powere for to haue dressyd it (the standarde) vp ayen, 141/30 ; (the prouost) wend neuer to haue come tyme ynoughe there, 158/3 ; he wende to haue lost his wyttes, 186/33 ; he trowed certaynly to haue fynysshed hys dayes, 188/3. Cf. 107/11, 108/8, 113/22, 117/25, 136/22, 152/29, 166/8, 182/23, 184/2, 197/25, 203/9, 205/25, 205/31, 206/5 ; *Charles the Grete*, 133/1, 142/13, 143/15 ; *Aymon*, 60/2, 85/26, 101/28, 175/23, etc. ; *Morte Darthur*, 35/12, 37/15, 83/1, 83/6, etc.

Exceptions:—

(Alymodes) wythdrewe hym self in to his pauyllyon, commaundyng his folke that euery man shold loke to lodge hym self, trowyng to be in a sewrete that his enmyes as for that same day sholde not comen nomore out of their cyte (but they yssued out), *Blanchardyn*, 59/20; she shal neuer haue no parfytte Ioye at her herte, for loue of a knyght of whom she is enamored, whiche she weneth to be peryshed (but he was not), 155/3. Cf. 167/25, 185/14, 186/22, 186/27, 190/33; *Aymon*, 196/26, 231/11; *Morte Darthur*, 227/13, 248/3.

This use was continued in the 16th century:—

He fell to the erthe, wenyng he had been slayne, BERNERS, *Huon*, 29/25; (Huon) drew out his sword to defende hym selfe, thynkyng the beest wold haue assayled hym, 111/11; cf. 200/31, 291/2; with the infinitive, 11/17, 26/30, 27/3, 31/13, 40/9, 44/20, 62/15, 69/6, 90/5, 100/4, 108/4, 108/30, etc.; he was about in such familiar sort to have spoken to her, SIDNEY, *Arcadia*, p. 27; I was about to have told you my reason thereof, SPENSER, *Ireland*, p. 613; I hope to have kept, *ibid.* p. 620.

'Her scattered brood, soone as their Parent deare
They saw so rudely falling to the ground,
Groning full deadly, all with troublous feare,
Gathred themselves about her body round,
Weening their wonted entrance to have found
At her wide mouth.' SPENSER, *Faërie Queene*, I. i. 25.

'All cleane dismayd to see so uncouth sight,
And half enraged at her shamelesse guise,
He thought have slaine her in his fierce despight.' *ibid.* I. i. 50^3.
Cf. I. ii. 36^2; I. ii. 39; I. iii. 5; I. iii. 24; I. iii. 41; I. v. 13; I. vi. 3; I. vi. 40; I. vii. 14, etc.

(*f*) With regard to the agreement between the tenses in principal sentences and clauses, the strictness of our modern rules, adopted from the Latin grammar, is still unknown, and, in particular, the Preterite in the principal sentence is often followed by the Present in the clause. This is due to a sort of anacoluthon. There is, as it were, a sudden transition from indirect to direct speech, which is indeed very common in Middle English, as well as in Caxton and Malory:—

(Blanchardyn) prayed hym that he voussheſauff to helpe hym that he were doubed knyght, *Blanchardyn*, 24/2 (Original: 'quil le aidast a adouber de ses armes'); and whan she myght speke vnto her maystres that he that this Iniurye had doon to her what so euer he be, Yf he may come in her handes or in her power, noon shal

mowe saue hym, but he shal lese his hed for the same, 43/13; and *sayde* of a goode herte and a free wylle that he shal furnysshe Rubyon of his requeste, 83/3; Blanchardyn made grete sorowe and lamentacyon, wyshyng full often that he may yet see ones his lady, 97/17, 65/11, 69/19, 138/20, 185/7; (Charlemayne) sware god that he sholde neuer retorne in to fraunce but that Ryynawde were take; and that yf he maye haue hym, all the worlde shall not saue hym, *Aymon*, 73/16; (the kyng) badde hym be redy and stuffe hym and garnysshe hym, for within xl dayes he wold fetche hym oute of the byggest castell that he hath, *Morte Darthur*, 35/33; and there Dynadan told Palomydes all the tydynges that he herd and sawe of syre Tristram, and how he was gone with kynge Marke, and with hym he hath alle his wyll and desyre, *ibid.* 455/12.

§ 23. *Mood.*

Caxton's use of the Subjunctive is nearly modern; in the sentences, however, which express a wish, the *synthetic* use is remarkable. Instead of the modern '*may* god help me' there is 'so helpe me God'; instead of 'might it please God,' 'pleased God,' etc. This, however, is very common, and is continued in the poetry of even modern times. But there is another point worth noting. There are several instances of the Indicative instead of the Subjunctive Mood, which seem to suggest that the modern tendency of supplanting the Subjunctive may be traced back to Caxton's time, or still earlier.

1. Sentences expressing wish :—

I beseke and praye þe, in the worship of the goddes, that at tyme of nede, for the defense of my royalme, thou wylt uttir and shewe that which I see appiere with in þe, *Blanchardyn*, 104/22.

There are several instances of this use in *Huon*:—for I wyll thou knowy*st* she is the fairest mayde that is now lyuynge, 50/14; I wyll thou lay*est* unto me good hostages, 51/9; I wyll thou know*est* that ye shall all lose, 87/28; I doubte me *lest* he h*ath* slayne my sone Lohyer, *Aymon*, 30/17.

Please occurs in Elizabethan authors in the Indicative, when used in principal sentences expressing wish :—

Please*th* it you therefore to sit down to supper,—Lyly, *Euphues*, p. 28; please*th* you walk with me down to this house—Shakspere, *Errors*, IV. i. 12; please*th* you ponder your Supplicant's plaint—Spenser, *Sheph. Cal.*, February.

There seems to be one instance as early as 1360, *Sir Gawayne*

and the Green Knight, 2439: 'bot on I wolde yow pray, displeses yow neuer.'

2. Negative clauses:—

He began to ryde faste by the forest, in whiche he was bothe the daye and the nyght . . . wythout adventure to fynde that *doeth* to be recounted, *Blanchardyn*, 31/19 (original: qui a raconter *face*); wythout fyndyng of eny aduenture that *is* to be recounted, *ibid.* 127/7; it nedeth not to be doubted that he is comme to his extremite of prowes, wythout that amours *hath* ben the cause in the person of some hyghe a pryncesse, 72/19.

3. Conditional sentences:—

(*a*) The clause (introduced by *if*) appears sometimes in the Indicative:—

And yf thou wy*lt* not doo it . . . *Aymon*, 25/6; always yf he ha*th* trespassed ayenst you in ony manere, I am ryghte sory for hit, *ibid.* 30/28; now shall it be seen yf it *is* true or not, *ibid.* 325/3.

The Subjunctive appears in *Aymon*, 25/33, 26/1, etc.

(*b*) Sometimes the principal sentence following a conditional clause appears in the Indicative, though the latter expresses irreality:—

For a ryght gode knyght he *was*, yf he had been a crysten man, *Blanchardyn*, 86/13; for I *was* dysherited and undoon for euer, yf they had not been, *Aymon*, 159/6.

§ 24. *Imperative Mood.*

1. The Imperative is very often followed by the personal pronoun. Instances abound. Cf. p. xiii.

2. Here and there the imperative seems to be represented by the Indicative, as the arrangement of words suggests:—

But wel *ye knowe* that he was not hadde sore ferre from the kynge his fadre, *Blanchardyn*, 13/1 (original: sachiez); A, fayr damoysels, said Amand, *ye recommaunde* unto la Beale Isoude, *Morte Darthur*, 436/16.

This occurs very often in the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, as in the *Cursor Mundi* (frequent):—

'Almigtin louerd, hegest kinge,
ðu giue me seli timinge.'—*Story*, 31.

'Adam, *ðhu knowe* eue ðin wif,' *ibid.* 397. Cf. 737, 1492, 2072.

The Oriel Text of the *Book of Curtesye* has one instance:—

'As ye be commandyd, so *ye do* algate.' 120.

Hill and Caxton have: 'so do ye algate.'

The Infinitive.

§ 25. *Active and Passive.*

While, as mentioned above, the Infinitive in Old English—as well as in the other Teutonic languages—was indifferent with regard to voice, the later periods of Middle English develope the passive on the same principle as Latin, and are probably modelled on that. Whenever there is an action without a subject to do it, we find the passive construction in Latin—*infinitivus passivi* and *participium passivi* (or rather *gerundium*), *e. g.* militem occidi iussit; credendum est. So far as I am aware both these constructions are translated in Old English, as well as in Middle English of the first centuries, by the simple infinitive. Instances abound:—

þa hi þæt ne geþafodan, þa het he hi *beheafdian*,—Sweet, *Oldest English Texts*, p. 177 (Martyrology); þa heht se casere gesponnan fiower wildo hors to scride, *ibid.*; Eac is to geðencanne, *Cura pastoralis*, 53; denum eallum wæs . . . to geþolianne . . . oncyð, *Beowulf*, 1418; ne bið swylc cwénlic þeáw, idese to efnanne . . . þætte freoðu—webbe, *ibid.* 1941; we nu gehyraþ þis halige godspel beforan us rædan, *Blickling Hom.* 15/28. Cf. 55/25, 107/26; hit is lang to areccene, *Wulfstan*, 7/12; seo menniscness is wundorlic ymbe to smeagenne, *ibid.* 15/14, 25/6, 27/1, 158/16, etc., etc.

Middle English:—

Nu ne þerf na mon his sunne mid wite abuggen but toward crist ane mid scrifte swa him his preost lered al swa his festen, þe swiðe ouer Rimet þes flesces wlongnesse and chuc (chirc?) ȝong and god to donne þeruore monie and feole oðre godere werke þe nu were long eou *to telle*,—*O. E. Hom.* I. 9; heo wes wurse to þolien þenne efreni of alle þa oþre pine, *ibid.* I. 43; hwet is us *to donne*?—*ibid.* I. 91; þan alden his to warniene wið uuele iþohtas, *ibid.* I. 109; II. 117, 139; þatt (sc. flocc) tœleþþ þatt *to lofenn* iss, *Ormulum*, 77; þeos (þinges) beoð alle ine freo wille *to donne* or *to leten*, *Ancren Riwle*, 8; leteð *writen* on one scrowe hwat se ȝe ne kunneð nout, *ibid.* 42.

'Ghe knew it for hire owen sune;
And quane it sulde sundred ben,
Ghe bar it teremuth for *to sen*.'
Story of Genesis and Exodus, 2628;

'Še bi-leuen *brennen* he bead.' *ibid.* 3154.

'O spuse-brek womman
þat þe Iuus dempt *to stan*.' *Cursor Mundi*, 186;

'worþie for to neuen.' *ibid.* 4056, 4420, 5634, 5678, 6364, 6718.

'And syn he best *to love is* and most meke.' *Chaucer*, V. 77;

'foul artow *to embrace*.' *ibid.* III. 93.

'But ay thay wondren what sche mighte be,
That in so pover array was for *to se*.' *ibid.* II. 310.

'His brest was hole withouten for *to sene*.' *ibid.* III. 13; 'it (sc. þe oost) is to dispyse (orig. spernendum est).' *Boethius*, p. 12.

þis emperour is *to undirstand* our Lord ihesu crist, *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 22 (= by this emperour is understood, etc.); I wolle haue this childe, that thi wife has brought forthe this nyght, *to norisshe* in my palys, *ibid.* p. 208; sone the emperoure made letters *to send* to the empresse, *ibid.* p. 213; thenne she brought him out of þe prison, and *gerte bathe him*, *ibid.* p. 312.

The passive construction is rarely to be met with in the earliest Middle English texts. There are, however, numerous instances in the 14th century:—

Cursor Mundi (Cotton, Göttingen, and Trinity MSS.), 4856:

'þair siluer he tok and gaue þam corn
And to þair inne did it *be born*.'

Cf. 5004, 5080, 9098; worthy to be . . . *i-preysed* (= praeconiis attollendi), Trevisa, *Polychronicon*, I. 3; suche seruey and is good *to be knowe* of Cristen men, *ibid.* I. 17; that made hem gentil men *y-callid* be,—*Chaucer*, I. 240.

'And suffrith us . . .
ful ofte *to be bete* in sondry wise.' *ibid.* II. 314.

(Petrarch's Original, p. 170: et saepe nos multis ac gravibus flagellis *exerceri* sinit.)

In Caxton the old use is still very frequent, if it is not the prevailing one; and, to conclude from several instances, the passive construction was not quite familiar to him. The proportion between the instances of active and passive construction is in *Blanchardyn* 11 to 8.

(*a*) Governed by adjectives and answering to the Latin Supine.

Active.

The sore of loue is ryght anguyssous and heuy *forto bere*,—*Blanchardyn*, 68/23; lete vs not departe from hens for this is a goode place for *to deffende*, *Aymon*, 108/10; but the foure sones of Aymon were good *to knowe* by thother for they had on grete mauntelles of scarlet furred with ermynes, *ibid.* 224/8.

Passive.

(Subyon) tolde them . . . that he wold wedde the proude pucelle in amours, for many causes and raysons that were to long *to be reherced*,—*Blanchardyn*, 179/18; here shall you here of the hande hewyng, and of a thynge heuy *to be recounted*,—*Aymon*, 53/12; Reynawde and his bredern are suche knyghtes that they ben not *for to be* lightly *ouerthrowen*, *ibid.* 104/2; ye are gretly *to be blamed*, *ibid.* 234/6.

(*b*) Governed by verbs, especially by *do* and *make*, answering to the Latin *Infinitivus Passivi*. Caxton very often uses a redundant *do*, so that we find such awkward expressions as, 'he did do make.'

Active.

I shal doo *folow* hym (original: Ie le feray sieuir), *Blanchardyn*, 44/10; he made *to drawe vp* ancres, *ibid.* 111/13; they made *to take vp* the ancres and *to hale vp* their saylles, *ibid.* 127/2; he made the toun *sawte* ofte tymes, *ibid.* 152/4; Subyon domaged theym ryght sore, and their place, wyth their bombardes and other engynes of warre, that he had do *brynge* there, *ibid.* 200/31; but what so euer goode sporte and pleysure that blanchardyn sawe ther *make* for his sake nothyng coude playse hym, *ibid.* 110/11; very striking is *ibid.* 12/22: Blanchardyn was taken in to the handes of a right noble lady of the lande *for to norysshe* and *brynyen vp* (original: pour le nourir et esleuer). Cf. *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 208 (quoted above, p. lxii).

There is also both the active and passive construction governed by the same verb:—

Kyng Alymodes commaunded expressely to the mareshall of his ooste, that he shold doo make and to be sette vp a galhouse, *Blanchardyn*, 187/23; *Aymon*, 70/5, 73/30, 74/22, 78/14, 90/24, 96/21, 96/28, 129/4, 145/23, 147/21, etc.

Passive.

for he made *to be brought* vnto hym by his folke al suche armures and harneys as to hym behoued to haue, *Blanchardyn*, 47/19; (Blanchardyn) made hym *to be armed*,—*ibid.* 47/22; he made his trompetto *to be sowned*, *ibid.* 119/23; *Aymon*, 65/8, 66/14, 69/34, 73/23, 73/26, 74/13, 80/1, 80/21, 84/31, 87/1, 96/24, 101/22, 167/32, etc.; *Morte Darthur*, 37/1, 367/38, etc.

(*c*) Governed by the verb 'to be,' answering to the Latin Gerundium or Futurum Passivi:—

Active.

And where vpon is *to by-leue* that blanchardyn was neuere in hys lyff half so glad, *Blanchardyn*, 80/11; syr Emperour, this paynym

nameth hym self fyerabras, whiche is moche *to redoubte* and hath done moche harme to crysten men, *Charles the Grete*, 42/26; and yf thou mayst come vnto the hye secrets whyche ben strongly *for to doubte* and *drede* in the doubtous courteynes of the most hye prynces. Thenne shalt thou be most messhaunt, *The Curial*, 5/12; ye be to blame (still kept), *Aymon*, 83/7, 99/13.

Passive.

He began to ryde faste by the forest wythout aduenture to fynde that doeth *to be recounted* (original: qui a raconter face), *Blanchardyn*, 31/19; wythout fyndyng of eny aduenture that is *to be recounted*, *ibid.* 127/7; yf Blanchardyn was ryght glad of this adventure, it is not to be axed, 42/1, 12; it is not to be told but Blanchardyn mayntened hymself, 50/29.

Instead of the infinitive there occur two instances of the past participle:—

Thise ben the folke of themperour Charlemayn, that goeth to Ardeyn for to besege a castell that the foure sones of Aymon haue *do made* there, *Aymon*, 70/29; how the kyng Charlemayn wold have *doon hanged* Mawgys incontynent after that oliver had deliverde hym to hym, *ibid.* 365/5. Cf. Alle the werk . . . which I haue *do maad*,—*Bury Wills*, p. 39.

There are striking instances of group (*b*) in Berners's *Huon*:—

(Huon) toke the horne of Iuorey from his necke and toke it to his host *to kepe*, sayenge, 'host, I take you this *to kepe*,' 85/15. Cf. *ibid.* 233/16 (kepe, however, may be the substantive; Middle English, kep. *See* Stratmann s. v.); thyder his doughter was brought to hym *to se*, *ibid.* 313/31; how the duches Esclaramond deliueryd her doughter Clariet to Barnarde *to bere* to the abbot of Cluny, *ibid.* 401/26.

For the Tense of the Infinitive, *see* above, p. lvii.

§ 26. The Simple Infinitive is far from being so much restricted as in Modern English. Caxton's use of it is nearly as free as Chaucer's. A few instances will do:—

How after many dysputacyons Olyuer *ayded arme* fyerabras, *Charles the Grete*, 57/4; But the valiaunt erle of rames pursued hym so nygh that he suffred hym not *goo* at his wylle, *Aymon*, 517/9. Cf. Man schal not suffre his wyf *go* roule aboute, *Chaucer*, II. 226; That wol not suffre us *duellen* here, *ibid.* II. 279.

The Infinitive governed by 'do' is nearly always simple: for instances see the preceding paragraph.

After 'make' the simple Infinitive in a passive sense is very rare.

He *made* the toun *sawte* ofte tymes ful sore, *Blanchardyn*, 152/4; The good lady *made bryng* lynnen, *Aymon*, 129/7. Cf. Chaucer, *Boece*, p. 55, l. 1460: he lete brenne þe citee of Rome and *made slen* þe senatours.[1]

§ 27. *To* and *for to* preceding the Gerundial Infinitive.

As a rule, Caxton uses *for to*,

(*a*) In order to denote aim and purpose; (*b*) after substantives.

The first translates the French *pour*, the latter *de*. There are, however, exceptions. On the first sixty pages of *Blanchardyn*, *to* occurs eighty-six times, and of these only two are governed by nouns, viz., 16/6, 41/20. On the other hand, out of the eighty-six passages containing *for to*, there are but three governed by verbs, viz., 18/18, 29/25, 37/13. Here and there both *to* and *for to* occur in the same sentence:—

They alle sholde mounte on horsbacke *for* tenquyre and seke after his most dere and welbeloued sone, and *to* brynge hym ayen vnto hym, *Blanchardyn*, 20/21; ye myght well kepe your selfe that ye com not so often *to* see vs and *for to* doo vs harme, *Aymon*, 83/9.

§ 28. *Functions of the Infinitive*.

(*a*) Caxton sometimes uses the Infinitive—as in Old and Middle English—where we use the Gerund, especially after prepositions:—

Wythout aduenture *to* fynde, *Blanchardyn*, 31/18; *Wythout to* make ony noyse, *Aymon*, 78/24; yf I goo there wythoute myn armes, nor *wythout to* be as it apperteyneth, *ibid.* 219/31; *wythout to* be dyshonoured, *ibid.* 470/25. Infinitive with the Gerund, *Blanchardyn*, 37/15, 16; he salued hym prayng that *for to paye* well and largely content him, he wold vouchsauf to take hym for his hoste, *Blanchardyn*, 46/9; ye knowe well the offence that your broder halde doon to me, *for to haue* slayn soo cruelly Lohier, *Aymon*, 60/2; but none myght compare wyth Reynawde *for to do* well, *Aymon*, 82/3; yet ye be there and wel ferre *for to* be oute, *Charles*, 93/3; ye are gretely to blame *for to* displease kyng Arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 80/12.

Remnants of this use occur still in Spenser (? as conscious archaisms):—

[1] Dr. Furnivall suggests that this construction may explain Shakspere's puzzle in *All's Well*, III. iv.: 'I see that men make rope's (make us to be ensnared) in such a scarre (fright) that we'll forsake ourselves.'

'Or who shall let me know
On this vile body *for to* wreak my wrong.'
Faërie Queene, II. viii. 28/4.

'feare nought, then saide the Palmer well aviz'd,
for these same Monsters are not these in deed,
But are into these fearefull shapes disguiz'd
By that same wicked witch, to worke in dreed,
And draw *from* on this journey *to* proceed.'
Ibid. II. xii. 26/5.

(*b*) The Infinitive used instead of a whole clause (as a many-worded adverb):—

They kylled and slue and hurte sore many one, Deffendynge hem selfe soo strongely ayenste their enmyes, to theyr grete losse and damage, and *to* wythdrawe them self ayen = so that they withdrew themselves (original: 'maint en naurerent et occirent en eul deffendant, tellement que leurs ennemis, a leur grant perte et dommage, sen retournerent arrieve sans gaires prouffiter, car moult en yolt de mors et de naures'), *Blanchardyn*, 187/10; he lefte not *for to* be forthwith quartered . . . but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre, etc., *Charles the Grete*, 132/18; *for to* renne xxx leghes he wold not be wery, *ibid.* 150/13; Here is to hard a mocke for me, and ye wynne not moche by, *for to* gabbe me of this facyon, *Aymon*, 338/29 (conditional clause); and soo he lete conduyte the harper out of the countrey but *to* say that kyng Mark was wonderly wrothe he was (conditional clause), *Morte Darthur*, 465/12.

There are several instances of this use in Berners's *Huon*, and here and there in Elizabethan writers:—

Syr, quod they, *to* dye in the quarell we shall ayde and socoure you (edition of 1601: were we sure to dye, etc.), *Huon*, 22/2; I thanke the of thy grace to haue gyuen me the puyssaunce to sle such a creature (ed. of 1601: that thou hast gyuen me, etc.), *ibid.* 109/21; as long as I lyue I shal neuer forgete Huon, and shal alwayes, *to* dye in the payne, kepe me for the bodely company of ony man lyuinge (ed. of 1601: and shal alwayes be redy to dye in the payne and kepe me fro, etc.), *ibid.* 195/14; yf he had knowen it *to* haue dyed in the quarel he wolde neuer haue consented to that treason, *ibid.* 284/6; Comforte your men, who hathe great desyre to defende this citye for the sauegarde of their owne bodyes and lyues, thus *to* make sorow ye can wyn nothynge therby, *ibid.* 387/30.

§ 29. *The Infinitive Absolute.*

There is a peculiar use of the Infinitive which turns up first in the second half of the 14th century:—

'I say this, be ye redy with good herte
To al my lust, and that I frely may
As me best liste do yow laughe or smerte,
And never ye to gruch it.'—*Chaucer*, II. 289 (Grisilda).

'Let hym fynde a sarasyn
And y to fynde a knyght of myn.'—*Guy of Warwick*, 3531/2.

I have tried in vain to find any trace of this use in earlier days, and can only account for it in the following way. There is an outspoken tendency in the English of the 14th century to supplant adverbial clauses of time, and express a condition by absolute constructions:—

þe same Plato lyvyng, hys maistre socrates deservede victorie of unri;tful deeþ in my presence, Chaucer's *Boece*, 184 (original: 'eodemque superstite praeceptor ejus Socrates injustae victoriam mortis me adstante promeruit'); but I withstod þat ordinaunce and overcom it, *knowyng al þis þe kyng hym self*,—*ibid.* 308; *The service doon*, they soupen al by day, *Chaucer*, II. 364; *This wordes seyde*, she on hire armes two fil gruf, *ibid.* IV. 337; *The cause iknowe, and of his harm the roote*, Anon he yaf the syke man his boote, *ibid.* II. 14.

As appears by the preceding examples, both participles serve to represent clauses in the present and past tenses. But how about the future? Why should there be no absolute construction for a clause with a future tense? The want of a proper participle did not prevent the language from completing the use of absolute constructions. *It resorted to the Infinitive.* Wycliffe tried to introduce a future participle. 'He was *to dyinge*,'—*Lucas*, I. 2 (erat moriturus); '*to doynge*,' *ibid.* 22, 23 (facturus). But this innovation was not accepted. There is, however, a similar formation in Caxton: 'Guy, hir loue and *tocoming* husband,' *Charles the Grete*, 134/27, *i. e.* that was to be; 'Our *tocomyng* souerayne lorde,' *Blades*, 139/140; it occurs also in *Piers Plowman*. Cf. Skeat, Notes, p. 371, and Trevisa, *Polychr.* I. 267. This probably gave birth to that peculiar use which, in the course of its development, became more and more free, so that in the 15th century the Infinitive Absolute often serves to alternate with any principal sentence and clause:—

'I dar the better ask of you a space
Of audience, to schewen oure request
And ye, my lord, to doon right as yow lest.'—*Chaucer*, II. 281.

'Ne (he) in his desire none other fantasye bredde,
But argumentes to this conclusioun,
That sche of him wolde han compassioun
And he to ben hire man whil he may dure.'—*Chaucer*, IV. 127.

'(I mene that ye wolde) agreen that I may ben he
In trowth alway to don yow my servyse,
As to my lady right, and chief resorte
With al my wit and al my diligence,
And I to han right as yow list conforte . . . .
And that ye deigne me so muchel honoure
Me to comaunden aught in any houre,
And I to ben youre veray humble trewe.'—*Chaucer*, IV. 230.

'Men schold him brenne in a fuyr so reed
If he were founde, or if men myght him spye,
And we also to bere him companye.'—*Chaucer*, III. 38.

Item, I geue and quethe to Willm Husher III s. IV d. *and he to haue* his indentour of his prentished. *Bury Wills*, p. 16 (A.D.); Item, I wyll that Maist. Thomas Harlowe sey the sermon at my interment, if he vouchsafr, *and he to haue* VI s. and VIII d. to prey for me, *ibid.* p. 17; *ibid.* p. 18. A striking instance occurs on p. 21: I will that the seid preest ne his successours shal not lete to ferme the seid place to no man nor woman, but *he and his successours to logge;* Also y will þat Iohn Edmund (haue) al þe led . . . *he to pay* þer for as it ys worthy, *Earliest English Wills*, 2/13 (A.D. 1387); I yeue hem halli unto Maude my wyf, *scho for to doo* with them hir owne fre wylle, *ibid.* 95/16 (A.D. 1433); *ibid.* 123/18 ff (A.D. 1439); If all thre sonnes die withoute heires of their bodies, theire moder than lyuyng, then *she for to haue* all the same maners, *ibid.* 124/25, 127/14, 15 (A.D. 1439):—

'frollo þat worthy knyght
Proferyd wyth arthour for to fyght
Vnder þis wyse and condicioun,—
Ho hadde þe Maystrie haue þe crown;
And no mo men but þey twa.'
Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 76.

Caxton seems to have disliked this use; the following passages are the only instances I have found of an Infinitive Absolute occurring in his works:—

And with the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and *to sette* them in good poynte, *Charles the Grete*, 126/3; yf I retorne wythoute to auenge my barons, I shall do pourely, sythe they haue susteyned and borne up the crowne Imperial and my wylle, and I now *to retorne* wythoute to auenge them. He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but lytel, I se wel, *ibid.* 16/14.

But Malory's *Morte Darthur* makes a very large use of it; instances abound; and it is probably due to the influence of this great favourite of the 16th century that the absolute infinitive is very frequent in Berners, and occurs even in Elizabethan times:—

This is my counceill . . . that we lete purvey X knyghtes, men of good fame and *they to kepe* this swerd, *Morte Darthur*, 40/37; for hym thought no worship to haue a knyght at suche auaille *he to be* on horsbak and he on foot, *ibid.* 71/23; hit was neuer the custome of no place of worship that euer I came in whan a knyghte and a lady asked herborugh and *they to receyue* hem and after *to destroye* them, *ibid.* 310/23; and soo they rode vnto the keepers of beestes and alle *to bete* them, *ibid.* 367/38; The custom was suche amonge them, that none of the kynges wold helpe other, but alle the felauship of euery standard *to helpe* other, *ibid.* 533/18. Cf. 461/27, 590/35.

In the following instances the Infinitive Absolute is used without a subject:—

I wylle that ye gyue vnto your broder alle the hole manoir with the appertenaunce, vnder thys forme, that sir Ontzelake hold the manoir of yow, and yerely *to gyue* yow a palfrey, *Morte Darthur*, 134/18; I wyl foryeue the the dethe of my broder, and for euer *to become* thy man, *ibid.* 224/19; thou shalt neuer escape this castel, but euer here *to be* prysoner, *ibid.* 244/14; I will do to yow homage and feaute, with an C knyghtes with me, and alle the dayes of my lyf *to doo* you seruyse, *ibid.* 266/31; he shold fyghte body for body, or els *to fynde* another knyght for hym, *ibid.* 303/14; there is non other waye but thou must yelde the to me, outher els *to dye*, *ibid.* 314/3. Cf. 324/14, 408/8, 496/9, 527/25, 633/14, 646/32.

Berners goes a step beyond Malory in his free use of the Infinitive Absolute:—

Yf it fortunyd that the vanquisser sle his enemye in the feld, or he confesse the treason for the deth of his sonne, that than the vanquyssher *to lese* all his londys, *Huon*, 40/26; it shall be sayde that you who hath lyuyd in so grete tryumphe all the dayes of your lyfe, and now in your latter dayes *to become* a chylde, *ibid.* 47/6; whan thou seest hym sytte at the table, than *thou to be armyde* wyth thy sworde, *ibid.* 50/7; And also thou *to brynge* me thy handfull of the hereof hys herde, *ibid.* 50/20. Cf. 107/5, 116/32, 169/14, 169/20, 185/11, 256/21, 287/20, 303/26, 304/15, etc.

In all these instances the Infinitive Absolute is more or less governed by, or at least in connection with, the finite verb of the

principal sentence; but there are some instances where the Infinitive is used entirely apart from the preceding sentence:—

By God, quod he, I hope alway byhynde! And *she to laugh*, *Chaucer*, IV. 198. Cf. IV. 185, V. 295.

> 'Most sencelesse man he, that himselfe doth hate,
> To love another; Lo! then, for thine ayd,
> Here take thy lovers token on thy pate.
> *So they to fight.*'—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. vi. 47/8.

Mr. Kitchin, in his Clarendon Press edition, explains this expression by 'and they go to fight'; but I am rather inclined to see in it a remnant of the Infinitive Absolute, if not an imitation of the older French use. *See* Littré, *Dictionnaire*, s. v. *de*, 20°.

§ 30. The Infinitive in connection with the Accusative (or Nominative) case, where we now put *for* or *for . . to*.[1] As in Chaucer, the Infinitive with the Accusative occurs governed by substantives, adjectives, and impersonal verbs:—

No wondur is a lewid man *to ruste*,—*Chaucer*, II. 16; now were it tyme a lady *to gette* henne, *ibid.* IV. 250; but it is good a man *be* at his large, *ibid.* II. 71; (his folke) putte hem self vpon their enmyes, so that it was force the polonyens *to recule* abak, *Blanchardyn*, 107/18; it is better a man wysely to be stille than folyssly to speke, *Charles the Grete*, 93/5; for it is gods wyll youre body *to be punysshed* for your fowle dedes, *Morte Darthur*, 67/10; for it semeth not yow *to spede* there as other haue failled, *ibid.* 77/34.

In Malory, and even in Shakspere, we sometimes find the Infinitive in connection with the nominative case instead of the expected accusative, after substantives, adjectives, and impersonal verbs:—

Thow *to lye* by our moder is to muche shame for vs to suffre, *Morte Darthur*, 453/4; hit was neuer the custome of no place of worship that euer I came in, whan a knyghte and a lady asked herberough, *and they to receyue hem*, and after to destroye them, *ibid.* 310/23; a heauier task could not haue been imposed than *I to speak* my griefs unspeakable,—Shakspere, *Err.* I. i. 33; what he is indeed, more suits you to conceive than *I to speak of*,—*As You Like It*, I. ii. 279; *thou* this *to hazard* needs must intimate skill infinite or monstrous desperate,—*All's Well*, II. i. 186; *I to bear* this . . . is some burden,—*Timon*, IV. iii. 266.

[1] John Fisher has the modern construction: 'It is better *for* a synner to suffre trybulacyon.'—*English Works of John Fisher*, ed. Mayor (E. E. T. S.), p. 41, l. 9.

§ 31. Sometimes the Infinitive is omitted, and its function is included in the preceding auxiliary verb. This is especially the case where we now use verbs like 'go,' 'move,' etc.

This omission is rather frequent in Old English :—

Swa swa oferdruncan man wat þæt he sceolde to his huse and his reste, *Boethius*, 132 ; ðat hie forgieten hwider hie scylen, *Cura Pastoralis*, 387/14 ; for oft ðonne hy witodlice geseoþ þæt hy sceolon to reste, *Beda*, 283 ; þæt he nyste, hwær ut sceolde, *Orosius*, 286/20 ; Ic him æfter sceal, *Beowulf*, 2817 ; þonne he forð scile, *ibid.* 3178 ; þonne ðu forð scyle metod-sceaft seon ! *ibid.* 1179 ; Ac hie to helle sculon on þone sweartan sið, *Genesis*, 732 ; Min sceal of lice sawul on sið fæt, *Iuliana*, 699 ; Heo wæs on ofste, wolde ut þanon feore beorgan, þa heo onfunden wæs, *Beowulf*, 1293 ; ær he in wille, *ibid.* 1371 ; Ic to sæ wille, *ibid.* 318 ; nu wille ic eft þam lige near, *Genesis*, 760 ; ða he him from wolde ða gefeng he hine, *Cura Pastoralis*, 35/19 ; þa mid þæm þæ hi hie getrymed hæfdon and togædere woldon, þa wearð eorþbeofung, *Orosius*, 160/28 ; ac þa hie togædere woldon þa com swa ungemetlic ren, *ibid.* 194/17.

Middle English :—

> 'Bot I wyl to þe chapel, for chaunce þat may falle.'
> *Sir Gawayne*, 2132.
> 'I frayned hym . . . whider þat he þouȝte.'
> Langland, *Piers Plowman* (B), 16/174.

I could not find this use in Caxton, but there are instances in Malory :—

But the brachet wold not from hym, *Morte Darthur*, 37/24 ; I wylle to morowe to the courte of kyng Arthur, *ibid.* 446/1 ; whether wylt thow ? *ibid.* 560/32 ; that wold the none harme, *ibid.* 390/4.

§ 32. *The Present Participle* ending in -yng, -ynge (scarcely in -ing), has the same functions as in Modern English ; for *tocoming*, *see* above, § 29, p. lxvii.

With regard to voice, there are but few exceptions to its active meaning. *Desplesaunt* = displeasing occurs in *Blanchardyn*, 27/19 ; 'thy lyffe is to me so gretly *displeasaunte*.' But several times it has the passive sense = displeased :—

Byfore whiche cyte was yet Kyng Alymodes at siege wyth his oost, wherof the fayr the proude pucell in amours was sore *displaysaunt*, *Blanchardyn*, 127/11 ; but on thys day . . . so *displaysaunt* ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for the, *Charles the Grete*, 62/3 ; the noble flory pes was moche *dysplaysaunte* for the

necessyte of the frensshe men, *ibid.* 124/26; wher fore thadmyral was so *dysplaysaunt* and angry that he wende to haue dyed, *ibid.* 143/14. The verb *displease* occurs also several times in the phrase: *dysplayse* you not, *ibid.* 113/20, 146/34; and in the past participle *dysplayseed*, *Aymon*, 464/19, 510/8.

Malory has *beholdyng* = beholden:—

Ye are the man in the world that I am most *beholdyng* to, *Morte Darthur*, 42/24; I am moche *beholdyng* vnto hym, *ibid.* 86/22; me semeth ye ar moche *beholdynge* to this mayden, *ibid.* 476/32; therfor ye are the more *beholdyng* vnto god than any other man to loue hym and drede hym, *ibid.* 640/11; *beholden* occurs, *ibid.* 86/11, 89/5. Cf. Skeat, *Notes to Langland*, p. 161. Instead of *holden* [B, A], we find in [C] the form *holdinge*.

This represents a common corruption, which appears also in *beholding*, as used for *beholden* by Shakspere and others, see *Richard III.*, II. i. 129; *Julius Cæsar*, III. ii. 70; and Abbott, *Shakspere Grammar*, 3rd ed., sect. 372.

§ 33. *The Past Participle* exhibits far more irregularities with regard to voice. Past Participles of transitive verbs used in an active sense, or at least indifferent as to voice, turn up in all the periods of the language.

Old English. Ond ic bebiode on godes naman, þæt nán mon þone æstel from þære béc ne dó, ne þá bóc from þæm mynstre: *uncúþ* hú longe þær swá gelærede biscepas síen, *Cura Pastoralis*, Preface.

Uncúþ may very likely be an absolute participle = 'it being unknown,' but I am rather inclined to take it in an active sense = 'not knowing,' referring to *ic*. The Middle English use of the word seems to justify this interpretation:—

His muð is get wel *uncuð* with pater noster and crede, *O. E. Miscellany*, p. 4, 112; of his swike he arn *uncuð*, *ibid.* p. 16, 512;

> 'Here dede is al uncuð
> Wið ðat speked here muð.' *O. E. Miscellany*, p. 19, 594.

Eftsone we þe beð *uncuðe* þe heuenliche kinge, for þat ure li flode him swiðe mislikeð, alse he wile noht cnowe bute þat þe him beð queme (we that do not know the heavenly king . . . he also will not acknowledge us), *O. E. Homilies*, II. p. 45. Cf. *unwiste*.

There is a parallel to this use in Old Norse. Kunnr = Old English cúð, is used in an active sense:—

Atli sendi
ár til Gunnars
kunnan segg . . . (Attila sent once to Gunther, a knowing, *i. e.* clever man), Edda, *Atlakviða*, 1/3; *Geðrówod* under ðám pontiscan Pilate,—Ælfric, *Homilies*, II. 596/14; hwæt getácnode sé gebrædda fisc, búton ðone *geðrówodan* crist? *ibid.* II. 292/13; and his bróðer sunu Irtacus, yfele *geworht* man, féng tó his ríce, *ibid.* II. 476/17; ond hie þa wurdan hraþe *gelyfde* Crist him sealde gesihþe, *Blickling Homilies*, p. 155/5; *gelyfed* = believing, also Ælfric, *Homilies*, II. 26/32; *Lives of Saints*, II. 302; and æt nyhstan þæt folc ða weard swa wið god *forworht*, þæt he let faran hæþenne here and forhergjan eall þæt land, *Wulfstan*, 14/2. Cf. *ibid.* 155/11; niniuéte wæron forsyngode swyðe, ac hy dydan, swa heam þearf wæs, *ibid.* 170/11.

Middle English. The *Old English Homilies* exhibit the same participles as those quoted above:—

And þa welle bi-wisten XII. meister deoflen swilc ha weren kinges to pinen þer wiðinnen þa earming saulen þe *for-gult* weren, *O. E. Homilies*, p. 41; nu leofe breðre ȝe habbeð iherð hwa erest biwon reste þam *forgulte* saule, *ibid.* p. 45; he demað stiðne dom þam *forsunegede* on his efter to-come þet is on domes deie, *ibid.* 95; on hwan mei þe mon modegian þen he beo wel *iþoȝen* and *iþungen*, for he mei findan fele þe beoð bet *iþoȝen* and *istoȝen* þene he, *ibid.* 107; heo setten heore honden ofer *ilefde* men, and heo underfengen þene halian gast, *ibid.* p. 91. Cf. *unbilefde* men, *ibid.* II. p. 81, 171, 195; he scal beon swa *iweorht* þet him mon mote wið speken and his neode menan, *ibid.* II. 111.

There are very numerous instances of participles of compound verbs, the first part of which is *for*:—

All folle wass *forrgillt*,—*Ormulum*, 25, 26; ȝiff þatt tu *forrlanged* arrt, Tu cumen upp till Criste, *ibid.* 1280; hwet sculen norlinges do, þe swikere, þe *forsworene*,—*Poema Morale*, 103. Cf. Alle he weeron *forsworen* and here treothes forloren,—*Chronicle*, ab anno 1137. *O. E. Homilies*, I. 143.

> 'And it sal ben ðe laste tid,
> Quan al man-kinde, on werlde wid,
> Sal ben fro dede to liue brogt,
> And seli sad fro ðe *forwrogt*.'

(And the righteous separated from the wicked.) *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 266; *forswonken*,—*Cursor Mundi*, 2017; *forliuen* (Cotton, Göttingen, Trinity), *forliued* (Fairfax), *ibid.* 5315; *forwalked* = tired out with walking,—Skeat, *Notes to Langland*, p. 312; *forwandred* = tired out with wandering, *ibid.*

Chaucer, too, has several instances of this use:—

Now hadde Calkas left, in this mischaunce, Alle *unwiste* of this fals and wikked dede, His doughter, IV. 111, 112. (*Unwiste* = not knowing, ignorant;) þou and god . . . ben *known wiþ me* þat no þing brouȝt me to maistrie or dignite; but þe comune studie of al goodenes, *ibid.*; Boece, *Consolation*, 14 (original: 'tu mihi et . . . deus *conscii* nullum *me* ad magistratum nisi commune bonnorum omnium studium detulisse').

'O olde, unholsom, and *myslyved* man!' *ibid.* IV. 313 = man of ill living. Cf. Modern English, *long-lived*, though that is probably an adj. in *-ed* from the compound noun *long-life:* its *i* is long.

Caxton's use of the past participle is pretty regular; there are, however, several instances at variance with modern use. In his reprint of Chaucer's *Boece* or *Consolation*, Caxton alters the 'known' of the passage quoted above, into *knowing*:—

(Blanchardyn) was *remembred* of it alleways, *Blanchardyn*, 31/6; and the prouost aseed hym yf he was *counseylled* for to fulfylle the construction of that texte, *ibid.* 47/12, 178/2; the lady . . . is well *trusted* wyth me, *ibid.* 79/1; wherof he was right sore *merueylled*,—*ibid.* 139/16, 162/7. Cf. I was *wondyrde* (Harleian MS., I wondered), Hampole, *Prose Treatises*, p. 6; ha false and *renyed* strompet = renegate, *Blanchardyn*, 185/31; I meruaylle me moche how thou, that art prudent and wyse of goodes art so *ouerseen* and fro thy self, for to dar expose thy self to so many perillis = mistaken (Furnivall, *Glossary*), *Curial*, 3/13; whan charlemagne sawe hym *seased* of mawgys, he called rowlande, *Aymon*, 365/26. Cf. *Huon*, 94/8; whan Huon sawe that he was *sessyd* of his horne (ed. of 1601: possessed).

Malory is, in this respect as in many others, nearer the Middle English use:—

They are wery and *forfoughten*,—*Morte Darthur*, 87/25, 105/35; I pray you in no wyse be ye *aknowen* where I am, *ibid.* 254/21; thenne he told the kyng alle that batail, And how sir Palomydes was more weyker and more hurte and more *lost* of his blood, *ibid.* 447/13.

§ 34. *The Verbal Noun.*

The verbal noun in Caxton, with its functions of noun and verb, may be traced back to two different sources.

(*A.*) When used as a noun, it derives from the Old English verbal noun in *-ung*, *-ing*. Instances of it are very common in Caxton, as

in modern times. It is only worth noting when it forms part of a compound:—

Muste I nedes deye thus shamefully, wythoute *deffence makynge? Blanchardyn*, 188/31; the barons and knyghtes thenne of a right gode wyll, wythout answer nor *replye makyng*, in grete haste . . . went and armed hem self, *ibid.* 189/32; in thes *wordes talkyng*[1] togyder, dyd arryue there foure of their men, *ibid.* 192/25: Reynawde toke therof vengeaunce vpon Berthelot by good rayson and that more is, it was his *body deffendynge,—Aymon*, 207/29, 566/26; and for that *honour doyng* to Sir Tristram he was at that tyme more preysed, *Morte Darthur*, 394/19.

These compounds are common in Old and Middle English:—

Sige forgeaf Constantino cyning ælmihtig, *dómweorðunga,—Elene*, 144; sincweorðung, *ibid.* 1218; dægweorðung, *ibid.* 1233; dustsceawung, *Blickling Hom.*, 113/29; unriht gitsung, *ibid.* 53/21; bi his cloðes wrixlunge, *O. E. Hom.*, I. 207; by his side openunge, *ibid.*; in his blod swetunge, *ibid.*; þere is . . . fallyng in blode shedynge, *Piers Plowman* (Text C), 12/282; in housing, in haterynge and in to hiegh clergye shewynge, *ibid.* 15/76; late usage be ȝowre solace of seyntes lyues redynge, *ibid.* 7/87; þorugh 'ibeatus virres' techynge, *ibid.* 10/321; þorw bedes byddynge, *ibid.* 19/373; with herte or syȝte shewynge, *ibid.* 13/279; without any money payenge, *E. E. Wills*, 107/20 (A.D. 1436).

The more modern phrase 'the house is building'[2] is not met with in Caxton; he has still *a* (or *in*) preceding the verbal noun:—

(He) herde the feste and the noyse that was *adoynge* in the pronostis house, *Blanchardyn*, 67/5; she wyst not what she sholde saye or thynke therof, whether she was *a* wakyng or a slepe, *ibid.* 152/34; and as the feste was *a* doynge, there came a messager . . . *Aymon*, 163/7; he founde the chirche of saynte peter *a* makynge, *ibid.* 576/8; atte the same oure that this Ioye and feste was *in making* (original: 'se faisoit'), *Blanchardyn*, 67/1; *Morte Darthur*, 84/12, 389/7.

(*B.*) The verbal noun is used as a verb: then it derives from the present participle.

1. Governed by the preposition *in*.

We now use *in* in connection with the verbal noun, where, in Old English, the simple participle was preferred, *e. g.* 'ealo drincende oðer sædon' = others said *in* drinking ale, *Beowulf*, 1946. I

[1] ? pres. part. absolute 'they talking.'—F. J. F.

[2] It is a pity that 'is being built,' &c., tend to displace this construction.

suppose that *in*, imitated from the French, was grafted upon the old participle, so that it kept its verbal function. Therefore it was not followed by *of*, even in the earliest periods of its use:—

And thei seye, that we synne dedly, *in schavynge oure Berdes*,—*Maundeville*, p. 19; he was a dedly Creature, suche as God hadde formed, and duelled in the Desertes, *in purchasynge his Sustynance*, *ibid.* p. 47; and *in bryngynge hire Servyse*, thei syngen a Song, *ibid.* p. 310.

Caxton very often drops *in*, as in *Blanchardyn*, 14/20, 16/8, 18/8, 33/12, etc. But even when it precedes the verbal noun, it is not followed by *of*:—

I am come to serue her *in kepyng my worship*,—*Blanchardyn*, 76/11; and *in tornynge hemself* ayen, [they] layde hande on their swerdes, *ibid.* 84/27; euery man cam forth to doo his deuoyre, eche of hem in his rowme *in defendynge the place*,—*ibid.* 113/4, 123/17; *Charles the Grete*, 26/34, 52/11, 66/34, 85/23, 163/19, etc.

2. There are a few passages in Caxton, which, in my opinion, throw a most interesting light on the use of the verbal noun, both in Middle English and in modern times. 'Most humblie beseekynge my . . . lord to pardon *me* so presumyng,' *Blades*, 140; 'take no displaysir on *me* so presuming,' *ibid.* 148. Cf. 165. I see in this construction a mode of expression which was the only one used in old times, and which still remains in vulgar English: 'don't mind *me* sitting down.'

In Old English, as well as in Latin, Greek, and the old Teutonic languages, it is not the action or state as an abstract, but the person or thing acting, which is the subject of perception, feeling, or thought. 'hac *literae recitatae* magnum luctum fecerunt' = the reading of this letter, *Livius*, 27, 29; 'poena violatae religionis iustam recusationem non habet' = for the violation of religion,—Cicero, *De Leg.*, 2, 15.

To this principle are due many of the so-called absolute constructions in the Old Teutonic dialects. See *Grimm*, IV. 873, ff.

It appears also in the noun-clauses in Old and Middle English. Instead of the modern abstract sentence, *e. g.* 'you see that he's going away,' the old construction is, 'you see *him* that he goes away.' So *Old English Hom.*, I. 17; 'ȝif þu *hine* iseȝe þet he wulle assottie to

þes deofles.' *See* below, 'Noun Clauses.' The same principle appears also in the following instances illustrating the older use :—

Be þe lifigendum (during thy life time), *Beówulf*, 2666 ; be þæm lifigendum, *Beda*, 2, 5 ; To-janes þo sunne risindde = at the time of sunrise, *Old English Miscellany*, 26.

'Alle waters als þai sall rynne
And þat sal last *fra þe son rysyng*
Til þe tyme *of þe son doungangyng*.'
Pricke of Conscience, 4777 f.

'After the sunne goyng down.'—*Genesis*, 28, 11.

In later times this use began to decay, as indeed in every respect abstraction supplanted intuition, and the verbal noun took the place of the old present participle. Thus *Purvey* alters the instance quoted above to 'aftir the goyng down of the sunne.' Cf. *Exod.* xxii. 26, *Deuteronomy* xi. 30. Perhaps we may see the state of transition in the following passages of the *Ayenbite*. The old participle is kept in its outward form, but the new use, *i. e.* the verbal noun, throws its shade on the construction. Thus we have : 'ȝef he zuereþ fals *be his wytinde*,' p. 6. 'Be *him* wytinde' would answer to the Old English 'lifigendum' ; 'be his wyt*inge*' would be quite modern (as it really occurs, *see* below) ; the connection of both gives 'be *his* wyt*inde*.' Cf. pp. 8, 28, 37, 40, 47, 94, etc. The French has : 'à son (leur) escient.'

Both the mixed and the modern construction occur on p. 73, *Ayenb.* : 'guo into helle ine þine libb*inde* : þet þou ne guo ine þine steru*inge*' (original : 'en ton vivant, en ton morant').

The extremely free use of the verbal noun as an adjective to substantives, which is characteristic of Elizabethan English ('undeserving praise,' 'unrecalling crime' in Shakspere) is not met with in Caxton. Perhaps these are worth noting : 'fallyng sekeness,' *Charles the Grete*, 37/28 ; 'weepyng teerys,' *Morte Darthur*, 338/9. Cf. *Huon*, 219/25 ; *Lucrece*, 1375 ; *Complaint*, 304.

§ 35. *The Adverb.*

I. Derived from Nouns.

(*a*) In the Genitive Case.

Alonge = of longe = fully, at length. As *alonge* by the grace of god it shall be shewed in thistorye of this present book, *Blanch-*

ardyn, 2/6; (Blanchardyn) entred in to a chambre, hanged wyth right fayre and riche tapysserye of the destruction of Troye, well and *alonge* fygured, *ibid.* 15/2; his mayster . . . . well and *alonge* dide aduertyse the chylde, *ibid.* 15/22; he dyde reherce unto blanchardyn al *alonge*, how the royalme of tourmaday was come to a doughter full fayre, *ibid.* 128/29.

Of lighte = lightly. A man that is well garnysshed is not *of lighte* overthrowe, *Aymon*, 106/6.

Of a freshe (*a* apparently mistaken for the article) = anew. After . . . began the batayll *of a freshe*, sore harde and fell, *Aymon*, 110/23.

(*b*) Old Instrumental, now the Accusative case.

Other while (Old English hwilum) = sometimes. It is as requesyte *other whyle* to rede in Auncyent hystoryes, *Blanchardyn*, 1/13.

Wonder grete (Old English wundrum). Syr Sadok . . . gaf hym a *wonder grete* falle, *Morte Darthur*, 532/19; soo they hurtled togyders *wonder sore*,—*Morte Darthur*, 433/15; he merueylled *wonder* gretely, *ibid.* 459/35.

Caxton has *wonderfull*. Wherof the good lady Margerye was *wounderfull* wroth and sory, *Aymon*, 36/23. Cf. þat felht was *wunder strong*,—*Layamon*, 1744; it fresethe *wonder faste*,—*Maundeville*, 11; singe *wondir swetly*,—*Gesta Romanorum*, 334; *wondyr hevy*,—*ibid.*

The old instrumental case is contained also in the following adverbial phrases:—

She rydeth *the lytyl paas* (orig.: a petit pas), *Blanchardyn*, 38/22 (Blanchardyn bygan to ryde on *a good paas*,—*ibid.* 40/10); accordyng to my promyse, I haue holpen you *the beste* that I coude, *ibid.* 149/25; but *the beste* that to hym was possyble he dyde recomforte her, *ibid.* 172/21; whiche came rennynge *all his myght* towarde Subyon, *ibid.* 201/20.

Perhaps the following phrases are formed after the same principle, if not in analogy to the cognate accusative:—

Dynadas was ouerthrowen hors and man *a grete falle*,—*Morte Darthur*, 401/22; there was Kyng Arthur wounded in the lyfte syde *a grete wounde* and a perylous, *ibid.* 412/25; the spere wente in to his syde *a grete wounde* and a perylous, *ibid.* 442/20.

II. Derived from Adjectives.

Though the final *e* was scarcely more than a mere 'monumentum scriptionis,' yet there are very numerous instances of adjectives used as adverbs by means of (or without) the old *-e*.

1. Before adjectives.

Clene.
Ye cam lyke a madde man *clene* oute of your wytte, *Morte Darthur*, 599/16.

Close.
He lyght ful quykly the shylde alonge the breast and the helmet wel *clos* laced, *Blanchardyn*, 24/16.

Exceeding.
Whan the admirall saw her so *exceeding* fayre he was taken in loue, *Huon*, 162/8.

Hard.
Sire Lamorak was *hard* byge for hym, *Morte Darthur*, 358/2.

Marvellous.
Thys is a man *meruayllous* ryche, *Charles the Grete*, 42/15.

New.
Now be the thre brethern *newe* horsed, *Aymon*, 63/29; there was a chylde *newe* dede, *Charles the Grete*, 37/18; but they knewe hym not for he was *newe* desguysed, *Morthe Darthur*, 636/24; when he sawe that he was *new* horsed agayne he was ioyfull, *Huon*, 291/24.

Wonderful.
The dukes Beues had slayne Lohier, the sone of the kynge Charlemayn, wherof the goode lady Margerye was *wounderfull* wroth and sory, *Aymon*, 36/23.

Wood wrothe.
Whan he sawe a knyght with his lady he was *wood wrothe*,—*Morte Arthur*, 407/12; thenne was kynge Marke *wode wrothe* oute of mesure, *ibid.* 470/15, 487/7, 488/19, 610/13, 647/26; (Launcelot) ranne *wylde wod* from place to place, *ibid.* 593/4.

2. Attached to verbs.

Clene.
They made hym to be wasshed *clene*,—*Blanchardyn*, 148/18; all the estates were set and Iuges armed *clene*,—*Morte Darthur*, 491/33; thenne was sir Palamydes *clene* forgeten, *ibid.* 553/25; I counceyle yow said the kynge to be confessid *clene*,—*ibid.* 577/28, 601/8, 611/10, 638/35, 647/9, 672/11; he saw within the shyppe but one man *clene* aruyd, *Huon*, 447/3.

Clere.
(An hand) helde within the fyst a grete candel whiche brenned ryght *clere*,—*Morte Darthur*, 666/24.

Dear.

Neuer deth was so sore solde ne so *dere* boughte as this shall be, *Aymon*, 38/26.

Fayre.

Nature had *fayre* appareylled the gardyne, *Blanchardyne*, 122/28; (Reynawd) wente *fayr* vpon the folke of charlemagne, *Aymon*, 449/12; soo they did saufly and *fayre*,—*Morte Darthur*, 370/17; he salewed hym not *fayre*,—*ibid.* 659/18, 666/35. Cf. *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 3, and *passim*; and *fayre* endyd his lyfe.

Foul.

Gerarde of Roussyllon weneth for to fare *fowll* wyth vs, *Aymon*, 42/2; thou hast borne the *foule* this day ageynst me, *Charles the Grete*, 69/31; my fader is kyng Bagdemagus that was *foule* rebuked at the last turnement, *Morte Darthur*, 188/8; *foule* haue ye mocked me, *ibid.* 511/31; haue done *foule* to yow, *ibid.* 599/35.

Incontynent.

She called to her them that were in her chambre to whiche *incontynent* she commaunded that they sholde goo, *Blanchardyn*, 56/16; he shold late hym haue it *in-contynuent*,—*ibid.* 60/4; the maystres dyd perceyue *incontynent* by her wordes . . . . *ibid.* 64/30, 187/1, 194/7, etc.; than duke Naymes departyd, and *incontenent* he incounteryd Charlot, *Huon*, 32/14; but Huon releuyd hym *incontynent*,—*ibid.* 56/24, etc. Cf. Marlowe, *Tamburlain*, 52; Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. vi. 8/5; *ibid.* II. ix. 1/7; Peele, *Alphonsus*, 229 *a*.

Late.

Now haste you thi rewarde, for my lorde Lohyers deeth that thou *late* slew, *Aymon*, 56/18; he was but *late* made knyghte, *Morte Darthur*, 471/15; cf. *Blades*, p. 172. Cf. That likewise *late* had lost her dearest love,—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, IV. viii. 3/4; *ibid.* I. ii. 11/2.

Loude.

He smote his hors wyth the spore . . . . escryeng as *loude* as he myght, *Blanchardyn*, 170/13.

Nere.

I am myself *nere* goon, *Aymon*, 565/23; the knyghtes name was called Accolor that after had *nere* slayne kyng arthur, *Morte Darthur*, 89/15.

New.

Thou *newe* made knyght thow hast shamed thy knyghthode, *Morte Darthur*, 108/7; there was a fayre medowe that semed *newe* mowen, *ibid.* 228/17; A. M. horses let to be *new* shode, *Huon*, 113/10; let her be bayngned and wesshyde and *new* arayed, *ibid.* 536/25.

Cf. And streems of purple blood *new* die the verdant fields,—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. ii. 17.

Nyghe.
How *nyghe* was I lost, *Morte Darthur*, 654/27.

Passyng.
Sir Palamydes dyd passynge wel and myghtely, *Morte Darthur*, 557/21 (there is also *passyngly*,—*ibid.* 543/13, 544/33). Cf. And all the wyles of wemens wits (she) knew *passing* well,—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, III. viii. 8/9.
Kyd, *Spanish Tragedy*, 107.

Playne.
I ware yow *playne*,—*Morte Darthur*, 621/34. Cf. By which he saw the ugly Monster *playne*, Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. i. 14/6.

Scarce.
For they be not vytaylled *scars* for foure dayes, *Charles the Grete*, 122/3. Cf. *Scarce* them bad arise,—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. iv. 14/14, 22/8.

Softe.
He salued hym full *softe*,—*Aymon*, 33/27.

Stronge.
Soo *stronge* he spored his horse, that he wente ayenste Reynawde, *Aymon*, 86/23.

The common *adverb of negation* is not used as in Modern English.

Ne = not (preceding the verb) occurs but quite exceptionally: in *Blanchardyn* only *nys* = ne is:—

There *nys* no tonge humayn that coude to yow recounte ne saye the grete sorow, *Blanchardyn*, 19/22; ther *nys* so grete sorowe, but that it may be forgoten at the laste, *ibid.* 133/4; ther *nys* no tonge of no creature mortall, that vnto you coude telle . . . the grete Ioye, *ibid.* 148/2; there *nys* noo man so oolde but he sholde soone gete hete there, *Aymon*, 452/12.

Here and there *ne* turns up also before other verbs:—

Charlemagn *ne* shall see the beste torne of the worlde, *Aymon*, 168/18; I *ne* entende but onely to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose, *Charles the Grete*, 39/6; he *ne* preysett kyng ne erle, *ibid.* 42/17; *ne* doubte ye not for I shal rendre you anone al hole, *ibid.* 95/11.

Ne = nor.
I holde nother castelle *ne* fortresse of hym, *Aymon*, 25/22.

Double negatives are very common :—

He *neuere* had borne *noon* armes, nor herde speke therof, *Blanchardyn*, 13/24 ; *nor* also had *not* seen the manere and thusage of Ioustynge, *ibid.* 14/1 ; (Blanchardyn) *neuere* had taken theratte *noo* hede, *ibid.* 15/2, etc. etc. There is an instance of four negatives in one and the same sentence. For *neuer* daye *nor* owre the childe Blanchardyn toke *noo* fode of *none* others brestis, *ibid.* 13/3.

§ 36. *Prepositions.*

A = in or on.
(He) herde the feste and the noyse that was *a*doynge in the prouostis house, *Blanchardyn*, 67/5. For other instances of this kind, *see* Gerund. The prouoste descended *a lande* (= on land), *Blanchardyn*, 198/30, 199/25 ; *Aymon*, 145/30, 525/7, 529/4. They lepte *a horsbak* (= on horsbak), *ibid.* 180/27, 183/16 ; *Aymon*, 26/28 ; the kynge ascryed hym self *a* hyghe (= on high), *ibid.* 20/12 ; he descended from his hors *a* foote, *Aymon*, 35/10, 186/5, 232/29, 490/20 ; they wende that the cyte had be sette a fyre (= on fire), *ibid.* 511/30, 583/9 ; he thus founde hymselfe *a* grounde (on grounde), *ibid.* 45/1, 232/10, 564/14.

A is often = of.
(He) cut his helmet and the coyffe of stele in suche manere *a*wyse (= of wyse) that the goode swerde entred in to the brayne, *Blanchardyn*, 28/20. Cf. above, Genitive.

Against = upon, towards.
Hym happend *ageynst* a nyghte to come to a fayr courtelage, *Morte Darthur*, 200/3 ; (Launcelot) *ageynst* nygyt rode vnto that castel, *ibid.* 574/6.

At = to.
He myght not brynge his entrepryse *at* an ende, *Blanchardyn*, 41/14 ; the bloode ran vp *at* her face, *ibid.* 64/16, 84/36, 176/26, 177/7, 177/21, 188/1. (He) wente wyth all hys oost *at* Mountlyon, *Aymon*, 69/14, 66/27, 79/21, 349/5, 408/1, 430/9, 496/8.

At = on.
Reynawde toke the kynge and drewe hym a lityll *atte* oo side, *Aymon*, 146/7, 453/7.

By = from, out of.
(He) laughe at them *by* grete love, *Aymon*, 230/25, 298/3, 303/30.

By = in.

(He) smote a knyghte *by* suche a wyse, that he putte his spere thorughe the body of hym, *Aymon*, 42/15, 61/24, 304/5, 453/1.

By = on.

They dyd soo moche *by* their iourneys that they cam to saynt Iames, *Aymon*, 156/19, 235/20, 239/32.

By = with.

(He) smote a knyghte *by* suche a strengthe that he ouerthrewe hym, *Aymon*, 43/12.

By is used alternately with *of* and *with* in passive constructions; but *of* prevails. Cf. *Blanchardyn*, 1/15, 2/12, 11/11, 18/10, 19/3, 42/13, 66/8, 97/35, 98/27, 101/27, 109/32, 113/34; by, 1/26, 124/16, 169/21; with, 91/19, 124/14; *Aymon*, 52/34, 53/1.

For = in spite of, is rare in Caxton, but occurs several times in Malory:—

This child wylle not laboure for me *for* ony thyng that my wyf or I may do, *Morte Darthur*, 102/22; I wyll accomplysshe my message *for* al your ferdful wordes, *ibid.* 167/31, etc. This use is very common in Elizabethan writers. Marlowe, *Massacre*, 2114; Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, 1, 3, 24/5; Peele, *Old Wives' Tale*, 453, b; Kyd, *Spanish Tragedy*, 17; Shakspere; *see* Schmidt, *s. v.*

For = from.

After she asked whi they were departed *for*[1] the kynges courte, *Aymon*, 36/19.

In = into, is still very frequent.

Yf he may come *in* her handes or *in* her power, noon shal mowe saue hym, *Blanchardyn*, 43/14; the prouost came ayen *in* the sayd place, *ibid.* 81/16, 96/29, 105/5, 109/14, 109/24, 116/24, etc.; *Aymon*, 63/1, 159/20, 210/20; *Morte Darthur*, 252/13.

Here and there also in the 16th century:—

By rise of virtue, vice shall grow *in* hate, *Gorboduc*, 180; how canst thow *in* this condition; Bunyan, *Pilgrim's Progress*, p. 35.

In = on, is rare.

That . . . *in* the crosse suffred deth and rassyon, *Aymon*, 24/20; ye ascended in to heuen and lefte for your liyeutenant saynt Peter thappostle *in* erthe, *Charles the Grete*, 71/27; Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 760.

'I think the pleasure they enjoy in heaven
Cannot compare with kingly joys *in* earth.'

[1] Misprint for *fro*.

Cf. Lord's Prayer: Thy will be done *in* earth. And *in* the honour of a kyng he sweares,—Marlowe, *Edward II.*, 1216. He is *in* England's ground, *ibid.* 1705; Shakspere, *Venus*, 118; *Midsummer Night's Dream*, II. i. 185; *Troilus*, V. ii. 169.

Maugre = in spite of.

(They) ledde the lady by force to castel forde, *maulgre* Subyon, *Blanchardyn*, 8/25, 9/1, 179/24, 180/29, 180/34, 189/9; *Aymon*, 86/14, 229/1; very often in Malory, and still in Shakspere.

Maugre occurs also as a substantive:—

They myghte no lenger endure the grete *magre* that Reynawde bare to theym (original: 'dommaige'), *Aymon*, 86/16; I haue herd moche of your *maugre* ageynst me, *Morte Darthur*, 405/28. So twice in Spenser:—

> 'Ne deeme thy force by fortunes doome unjust,
> That hath (*maugre*[1] her spight) thus low me laid in dust.'
> *Faërie Queene*, II. v. 12/9; III. iv. 39/8.

(= a curse upon? Morris, Glossary to Spenser's Works, Globe edition).

Of differs in its functions from the modern use in several essential points.

1. It denotes reference, *as to*:—

Pardoune me *of* the rude and comyn englyshe, *Blanchardyn*, 2/9; the childe grewe and amended sore *of* the grete beaulte, *ibid.* 13/6; *of* the tables and ches playinge and *of* gracyous and honeste talkynge, he passed them that were his elder in age, *ibid.* 13/19, 20; demaundynge *of* the bataylles of Troye (= about), *ibid.* 14/13; the same, 15/8; wel shapen *of* alle membres, *ibid.* 37/21; sore troubled *of* wyttis, *ibid.* 45/8, 48/31, 65/21, 97/10, 99/14, 145/30, etc.; *Aymon*, 54/25, 64/5, 290/32, etc.

2. It denotes cause, *in consequence of*:—

(They) iudged hem self right happy *of* a successoure legytyme, *Blanchardyne*, 12/17; sory *of*, *ibid.* 21/4; euyl apayde *of* (original: maltalentif), *ibid.* 28/13; *of* a custume (= in consequence, according), *ibid.* 112/32, 130/8; he ought *of* rayson to be well rewarded, *ibid.* 126/6, 133/10.

3. *Of* = by in passive constructions. See *by*.

4. It seems to be mistaken for *on*, *upon*:—

(Kyng Charles) beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng *of* the syde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the psaulter, *Charles the Grete*, 33/32.

[1] ? by the ill will of.—F.

This mistake, probably brought about by *a* being equivalent to *of* and *on*, is common in the 16th century :—

They began to slee alle suche as wolde not beleue *of* Ihesu Cryst (ed. of 1601 *on*), *Huon*, 152/24 ; the same, *ibid.* 417/30, 462/12, 464/28 ; I wyll send thee *of* my errand, *Sir Clyomon and Sir Clamydes*, 494 a ; my master riding behind my mistress ; both *of* one horse, *Taming Shrew*, IV. i. 71 ; as when thou shouldst be prancing *of* thy steed, Greene, *Alphonsus*, 235 b.

On mistaken for *of* :—

On hym is no care, *Aymon*, 62/27 ; she began to thynke *on* that poure man, *Charles the Grete*, 13/33. Probably also the phrase : *on* lyue = alyue, *Aymon*, 64/18. *See* Genitive : he seith not ryght *on* me, *Morte Darthur*, 138/25—16th century :—

> 'I tell you true, my heart is swoln with wrath
> *On* this same thievish villain Tamburlaine.'
> Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 520.

> 'And tyme may yield us an occasion
> Which *on* the sudden cannot serve the turn.'
> Marlowe, *Jew of Malta*, 473, 1078, 2338, 4690.

The middle *on*'s face, *Lear*, IV. v. 20 ; my profit *on*'t, *Tempest*, I. ii. 365, 456 ; I'm glad *on* 't, *Jul. Cæs.*, I. iii. 137.

Ouer = of :—

Kynge alymodes knyghtes had grete enuye *ouer* hym, *Blanchardyn*, 65/22 ; right enamored they were *ouer* hym, *ibid.* 66/25 ; to thende he myght be auenged *ouer* hym, *ibid.* 86/30 ; Blanchardyn, that grete slawghter dyde make *ouer* his men, *ibid.* 107/27.

To = up to, equal to :—

Suche a worship apparteyneth not to be doon to me, for I am not *to* the value therof, *Blanchardyn*, 109/20.

Tofore = before :—

(He) presented hym selfe *to-fore* the kynge, *Aymon*, 186/24.

It is a remarkable custom in Caxton and other writers of the 15th century to use, for variety's sake, two different prepositions for the same purpose :—

O thou free knyght, replenysshed *wyth* prowesse and *of* grete wordynesse, *Blanchardyn*, 49/15 ; she cam and brought wyth her a fayre whyte coueryng of damaske clothe, wher*of* she made the hors of blanchardyn to be couered *wyth*,—*ibid.* 61/7, 8 ; loue serued her *wyth* a messe sharp and sowre ynoughe tyl her tast that is to wyte *of* a louely care, *ibid.* 67/17, 18 ; (Blanchardyn) cam ridyng through the toun accompaned *wyth* the prouoste and *of* many other knyghtes,

ibid. 83/23; the knyght *of* whom my sayde lady is so sore enamoured *vpon*, hath to his name blanchardyn, *ibid.* 130/17; Sadoyne sawe their shyppes redy and well stored *wyth* vytaylles and *of* other thynges, *ibid.* 150/28; they all were eten *wyth* bores and *of* lions, *Aymon*, 52/34, 53/1; Charlemayne apoynted not *wyth* the foure sones of Aymon, nor *to* Mawgys, *ibid.* 58/24, 25; I shall shew you whether I can do any thyng *wyth* the spere and *of* the swerde, *ibid.* 83/28; I am not a chyld wher*of* men oughte to mocke wyth, *ibid.* 360/12. (He) toke it and robbed wythall the nose, the mouth, and the eyen *of* rowlande, and in like wyse *to* all thother xii peres of fraunce, *ibid.* 371/21, 22; wysdom desyreth you *to* be hys wyf, and *for to* be quene, *Charles the Grete*, 14/8,9; it is the same *of* whyche your god was enbawmed *wyth*,—*ibid.* 56/29, 30; O fayre Quene of Orkeney, Kynge Lot's wyf and moder *of* sir Gawayne and *to* sire Gaheris, and modir *to* many other, for thy loue I am in grete paynes, *Morte Darthur*, 425/12; and the begynnynge of the kynges letters spak wonderly short vnto Kynge Arthur, and badde hym entermate *with* hym self and *with* his wyf and *of* his knyghtes, *ibid.* 456/32, 33; thenne *by* his aduys and *of* sire Sadoks he lete stuffe alle the townes and castels, *ibid.* 495/19.

§ 37. *Conjunctions.*

And used redundantly (compared with the Old English and the present use), turns up pretty often in Caxton, as in other writers of the 15th century, and is not unfrequent in Elizabethan times:—

And the thyrd tyme with a full grete herte she revyled hym, *and* sayyng to hym that he was lyke an hounde, *Trivet*, p. 233; yf thow wolt telle me, *and* I shalle gete the on fallyng to thin estate, *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 173; the vertu of the broche is this, that who so euere ber hit vpon his brest late him thinke what he wolle, *and* he shalle mete þerwith at his likinge, *ibid.* p. 181; forsothe, sir, quod he, *and* I shall tell you, *ibid.* 202; sir, quoþ he, *and* I shall tell you not, *ibid.* 322; whiche boke I late receyued in frenshe . . . for to reduce and translate it in to our maternal *and* englysh tonge, *Blanchardyn*, 1/9; by my feyth, sayd Reynawde, *and* we shall deffende ourselfe also to our power, *Aymon*, 235/11; O, brother Reynawd, *and* what doo you here, *ibid.* 244/26; cosin Reynawd, sayd Ogyer, *and* we shall kepe vs fro you, *ibid.* 263/11; alas, *and* that I dyde grete harme, *ibid.* 283/4; for the more that ye praye him, *and* the worse shall he doo, *ibid.* 330/27; syre, sayd Richarde, *and* ye shall see me anone, *ibid.* 343/22; sir, sayd mawgis, *and* I yelde me to you, *ibid.* 357/5; I praye you lete hym come here *and* that he awake myn vncle Charlemagne oute of his slepe, *ibid.* 405/12; whan he herde the duke naymes speke so, *and* it moved his blade full sore, *ibid.* 419/6; I neuer put man to the erthe *and* thys hors present, *Charles the Grete*,

70/10; I requyre the that it may playse the to take the payne for to rescowe and socoure my loue guye, *and* ellis I am a loste woman, *ibid.* 135/3; alle the barons cam thyder *and* to assay to take the swerd, *Morte Darthur*, 42/35: syre knyght, sayd the other, whoos name was Hontzlake of wentland, *and* this lady I gat by my prowesse of armes this day, *ibid.* 114/23; wylle ye, sayd syre Gawayne, promyse me to doo alle that ye maye . . . to gete me the loue of my lady. Ye syre, sayd she, *and* that I promyse you, *ibid.* 150/11; whanne Elyzabeth, Kyng Melyodas, myst her lord, *and* she was nyghe out of her wytte, *ibid.* 273/27; a mercy my lord, sayd she, *and* I shalle telle you alle, *ibid.* 275/33; wel, said the Kyng Melyodas, *and* therfor shal ye haue the lawe, *ibid.* 275/35; but their horses he wold not suffre his squyers to medle with, *and* by cause they were knyghtes erraunt, *ibid.* 442/29; telle me, said palomydes, *and* in what manere was youre lord slayne, *ibid.* 518/31; and therfore ye may be sory, said sire Tristram, of your vnkyndely dedes to so noble a kynge. *And* a thynge that is done may not be vndone, sayd Palomydes, *ibid.* 542/29; sir knyghte, said she, and ye wille ensure me by the feyth that ye owe vnto knyghthode that ye shalle doo my wylle . . . *and* I shalle brynge yow vnto that knyght, *ibid.* 652/12; syr *and* I wille doo hit, sayd sir launcelot, *ibid.* 658/9; thenne had the kynge grete joye, and dressyng hym to sytte up, *and* toke the swerde by the pomel, *Melusine*, 153/16; and þenne gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makyng his wounde opend, *and* out of it ranne blood, *ibid.* 153/22; by my feyth, said thenne Anthony, *and* I accorde therunto, *ibid.* 217/10; sens he was aduertesyd, that with kepyng his tonge fro spekynge he myght abrege hys iorney, *and* he sayde that surely he wolde that way, *Huon*, 64/24 (ed. of 1601 omits *and*); syr, quod themperour, *and* he shal derely abye it, *ibid.* 305/27.

Gorboduc. 'Loe, this is all; now tell me your aduise.
Arostus. *And* this is much, and asketh great aduise.' *Gorboduc*, 146;

'Warre would he haue? *and* he shall haue it so.' *ibid.* 680;

Barabas. 'Haply (the Turks) come for neither, but to pass along
Towards Venice by the Adriatic sea;
With whom they have attempted many times,
But never could effect their stratagem.
Jew. *And* very wisely said. It may be so.'
Marlowe, *Jew of Malta*, 205;

'Is she so fair?
And matchless beautiful.' *ibid.* 617.

'O earth-mettled villains, and no Hebrews born!
And will you basely thus submit yourselves
To leave your goods to their arbitrament?' *ibid.* 310;

'Well, yet the old proverbe to disprove I purpose to begin,
Which always saith that cowardly hearts fair ladies never win:
Shall I not Julia win, *and* who hath a cowardlier heart?'
Sir Clyamon and Sir Clamydes, 507, *a*;

Kendal. 'Thou, how art thou a gentleman?
Jenkin. *And* such is my master.' Greene, *George-a-Greene*, 259, *a*;

Hamlet. 'Will the king hear this piece of work?
Pol. *And* the queen too.' *Hamlet*, III. ii. 53;

Cass. 'This rudeness is a sauce to his good wit.
Brut. *And* so it is.' *Julius Cæsar*, I. ii. 307.

Also = as:—

Also nighe as I can, *Blades*, 132.

As = as if, is very common:—

Lepyng alwaye here and there, *as* hors and man had fowgthen in thayer, *Blanchardyn*, 42/7; her gowne that she had on was therof changed *as* grete shoure of rayne had come doune from the heuens, *ibid.* 43/17; after thys fortune I haue ben syn, as force compellyd me therto, seruaunt vnto a kynge sarasyn, *as* I had ben one of theym, *ibid.* 133/31; he smote vpon his enmyes *as* it had be the thonder, *ibid.* 169/2; he hewe the sarasins *as* they had ben wythoute harneys, *Aymon*, 137/20; (he) kept hymself styll like *as* he had ben doed, *ibid.* 179/11.

Still frequent in Elizabethan authors:—

'And lickt her lilly hands with fawning tong,
As he her wronged innocence did weet.'
Spenser, *Fuërie Queene*, I. iii. 6/3. Cf. *ibid.* I. v. 20/9; III. i. 6/5;

'I hope our credit in the custom house
Will serve as well, *as* I were present there.'
Marlowe, *Jew of Malta*, 94. For Shakspere, see Schmidt, *s. v.*

As is used redundantly before other conjunctions and adverbs in Malory:—

I wist it were soth that ye say I shold do suche peryllous dede *as* that I wold slee my self to make the a lyar, *Morte Darthur*, 84/38; awaite vpon me *as* to morn secretely, *ibid.* 287/22; I wille be-redy *as* to morne, *ibid.* 311/4; for *as* that same day this lady of the lake knewe wel that kynge arthur shold be slayne, *ibid.* 361/25; he charged the lady of the lake not to discouer his name *as* at that tyme, *ibid.* 362/22; nay, said sire Palomydes, *as* att this tyme I wille not Iuste with that knyght, *ibid.* 382/23; for *as* to morne the grete turnement shalle be, *ibid.* 383/23; that shalle ye not wete *as* at this tyme, *ibid.* 408/22; ye shalle not wete *as* at this time, *ibid.* 412/10.

Both (postponed) = as well, also occurs in *Morte Darthur*, not only in order to connect two, but more persons and things:—

I am sore hurte and he *bothe*,—*ibid.* 134/10; he smote syr galahantyne on the helme that his nose braste out on blood, and

eerys and mouthe *bothe*,—*ibid.* 192/5; for my hors and I ben fresshe *bothe*,—*ibid.* 323/20; now I wil say vnto you and to hym *both*,—*ibid.* 349/3; fals treason hast thou wrouȝt and he *both*,—*ibid.* 403/31.

Eke (Old English *eác*) = also:—

eke harneys, *Blanchardyn*, 60/21; I shall delyuere you hors, and wherof his son and *eke* Blanchardyn came, *ibid.* 126/13.

Ne = nor, *see* 'Adverbs,' p. lxxvii.

Nor—also = nor—either:—

For not a peny he wolde take of it, *nor* his brethern *also*,—*Aymon*, 145/7.

So = if:—

Yf nedes I shal dey, I were of it all well content, soo that it were in the absence of her, *Blanchardyn*, 188/23; I shall now quyte you and relesse vnto you all the servyse that ye owe me, to you and to your eyres for evermore, *soo* that ye will take Richard, the sone of Aymon, and see that he be hanged, *Aymon*, 324/7; I will not take your yeldyng vnto me, But *so* that ye wylle yelde you vnto syr Kay the Seneschal, *Morte Darthur*, 200/32; I wille ryde with you *so* that ye wille not rebuke this knyght, *ibid.* 348/32.

This use is also frequent in Elizabethan authors:—

> '*So* now the mighty emperor hears of you,
> Your highness needs not doubt but in short time
> He will . . . redeem you from this deadly servitude.'
> Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 1011; *ibid.* 3839; *Faustus*, 1364; *Jew of Malta*, 189; *ibid.* 190.

Than = then = when (Old English *ðonne*):—

Thenne Brastias saw his felawe ferd so with al, he smote the duke with a spere that hors and man fell doune, *Morte Darthur*, 54/2, than Syre Tor was redy he mounted vpon his horsbak and rode after the knyght, *ibid.* 109/20; thenne the duke sawe he myghte not escape the deth, he cryed to his sones and charged them to yelde them, *ibid.* 155/4; and *thenne* Beaumayns sawe hym soo well horsed and armed, thenne he alyghte doune and armed hym, *ibid.* 222/26.

Than = than that, than if:—

For I had leuer that ye were confused and dysmembred *than* I shold take armes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say, *Charles the Grete*, 43/17; and yf thou haue broughte Arthurs wyf, damd Gweneuer, he shall be gladder *than* thow haddest guyen to him half fraunce, *Morte Darthur*, 167/24; now am I better pleasyd, saye

Pryamus, *than* thou haddest gyuen to me all the prouynce and parys the ryche, *ibid.* 178/2; I had leuer to haue ben torn with wylde horses *than* ony varlet had wonne such loos, *ibid.* 178/4.

That, like the Greek ὅτι, is often used to introduce a direct speech (oratio recta), so that it is equal in value to the modern colon :—

He sayd full angerly to the styward, *that* 'to an euyll owre hath your lady ben so madde as to mary her self to a ladde, a straunger,' *Blanchardyn*, 184/9; (Merlyn) late wryte balyns name on the tombe with letters of gold, *that* here lyeth balyn le Sauuage, *Morte Darthur*, 98/35; [*how* in the same function occurs, *ibid.* 84/7; (the kynge) wrote the names of them bothe on the tombe, *How* here lyeth launceor the kynges sone of Irlond, that at his owne requeste was slayne by the handes of balyn.]

That often replaces other conjunctions in compound clauses, especially *when;* this is a literal translation of the French 'que' in the same function :—

When they of the cyte had seen the manere and the rewle of their enmyes, and *that* all wyth leyser they had seen their puyssance and their manere of doynge, The Captayne and the prouoste of the towne dyde ordeyne a stronge and a bygge worde, *Blanchardyn*, 58/17; *when* he knewe and *that* he was aduertysed by his sone . . . he was al ynough content, *ibid.* 126/10; and *whan* she sawe that by no manere of meanes she myght not tourne ne chaunge the corage of her cruel fader, And *that* she herde hym saye blame of her god . . . she by grete wrath sayd, *ibid.* 186/9; and *whan* the nyght was passed, and *that* reynawd was vp he went here and there, *Aymon*, 434/23; and *whan* the tables were take vp and *that* everi man had eten at his ease, they wente to their warde, *ibid.* 463/27; and *whan* the morowe came and *that* mawgys had his newe sloppe and his hode he toke his palster, *ibid.* 467/9.—And *after* that the worke was ended, and *that* all their enmyes were taken or slayn, they brought hym and entred wythin the cyte, *Blanchardyn*, 195/26; *after* that Sadoyne was crowned to be kynge, and *that* he had archyeued and made all his ordonnaunces . . . Blanchardyn, his felawe, dysposed him self for to retourne ayen toward Tormaday, *ibid.* 196/22.—So began he to be ful of thoughte and all annoyed of hym self *by cause* he was not armed tyl his plesure, and *that* he myght not yssue out, *ibid.* 59/30; they sholde make theim gode chere of suche goodes as god had lent hem : *by cause* they semed to be knyghtes, and *that* it was sore late to ryde eny ferther, and *that* noo housyng nor no retrayt was nyghe, *ibid.* 204/27, 28; thother laborers had so grete enoy *by cause* he dide better his devour than thei, and *that* he was better loved than thei, *Aymon*, 575/16.

That is used tautologically :—

None can telle it you, bycause *that* it (the beaulte) was so grete, that god and nature had nothyng forgoten there, *Blanchardyn*, 13/7 ; it is bycause *that* he is a straunger, *ibid.* 91/20 ; I shall now quyte you and relesse vnto you all the servyse that ye owe me . . . for evermore, soo *that* ye wyll take Richard . . . and see that he be hanged, *Aymon*, 324/7 ; ye knowe how longe *that* he hath dammaged vs, *ibid.* 402/14 ; me thynketh that we oughte to avenge vs vpon hym, sith *that* we have hym, *ibid.* 402/16 ; ye wote well that I left him by cause *that* peas shold be made, *ibid.* 407/26 ; I am wel admeruaylled fro whens *that* cometh to the suche presumpcion *Charles the Grete*, 53/13 ; for it is longe sythe *that* they haue ony thynge holpen vs, *ibid.* 140/30.

II. SYNTAX OF THE SENTENCE.

§ 38. *Concord.*

The first rule of every syntax, namely, that a finite verb agrees with its subject *in number*, is very often sinned against in the early periods of the English language.

(*A.*) The slightest violation of grammar is the construction of *collective nouns with predicates in the plural* (*κατὰ σύνεσιν*). Of this concession made by grammar to logic, there are instances from Old English down to our own day :—

Old English : þæt folc sæt . . . and arison, *Exodus*, xxxii. 6 ; se here swór þæt hie woldon, *Chronicle*, 921 ; þin ofspring sceal ágan *heóra* feónda gata, *Genesis*, xxii. 17. (March, *Comparative Gram.*, § 402.)

Middle English : þat israelisshe *folc* was walkende toward ierusalem on swinche, and on drede, and on wanrede, and þo wile *was* hersum godes hese. Ac efter þan þe *hie weren* wuniende in ierusalem . . . þo *hie* forleten godes lore, *O. E. Homilies*, II. 51. Ðis wird of engeles metten him, *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 1790.

'And *euerilc on* ðat helde*n* wiþ him,
ðo wurðe*n* mirc, and swart, and dim.'—*ibid.* 285.

'And als *ilkan* for sere resun
Com for to mak *þair* orisun.'—*Cursor Mundi*, 10,222.

'That all the folk schuln laughen in this place.'—*Chaucer*, II. 231.

'And saugh wel that hire folk weren al aweye.'—*ibid.* IV. 201.

'The remenaunt were anhanged, more and lesse.'—*ibid.* III. 84.

This use is rare in Caxton. 'People, folk,' are followed by a singular verb, e. g. *Aymon*, 38/12, 100/19; the plural is an exception, e. g. *Aymon*, 70/26: 'what *are* this folke?'

(*B.*) Plural nouns, or several nouns joined together by a copulative conjunction, take a singular predicate. This striking irregularity crops up very early, and is very frequent in the 15th century, and in the time of Shakspere:—

Moren and wilde (h)uni *was* his mete, *O. E. Homilies*, II. 139;

'In firme begining, of nogt
Was heuene and erðe samen wrogt.'—*Story of Gen. and Exod.*, 40;

'For *was* sundri speches risen.'—*ibid.* 668;

'Ðor was laid adam and eua.'—*ibid.* 817;

'Alle his wundres þat he doþ, *is* þurch þene vend.'—*The Passion of Our Lord*, l. 60 (*Old English Miscellany*, 39).

'Alle his wundres þat he doþ, *is* þurch þene quede.'—*ibid.* l. 250.

(he) steaȝ into heuene þet is aboue alle ssepþe þet *ys* ine heuene, *Ayenbite*, p. 11; þe neȝende article and þe þri laste belongeþ to þe holi gost and *is* þellich, p. 13.

Siþen þe sege and þe assaut *watz* sesed at Troye, *Sir Gawayne*, l. 1; out tak the forsayd matyns bokys that is bequethe to Thomas my sone, 5/14; *Early English Wills*, 5/14;—the hole goodis that is my owne, 92/12; þis *es* the dettis þat *es* [h]owynge to me, 39/34 (*Essex*, ab. 1417); the 80 mark þe whiche *is* in Thomas Harwodes hand, 44/12; forto dispende the goudis that es therin, 71/2; On the finger *was* wretyn word*is*: 'percate hic,' *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 7. Cf. Zupitza, note to *Guy of Warwick*, l. 298.

Caxton. The kyng Alymodes and alle his oost *was* right sore affrayed, *Blanchardyn*, 119/29; here *is* xx li of money, *Aymon*, 332/7; here is grete merveylles, *ibid.* 444/31; Such II. brethren as *is* kyng Ban and kyng bors, *Morte Darthur*, 57/38; there ben but fewe now lyuynge that *is* so myghty as he is, *ibid.* 241/22; he arryued up in Irland euen fast by a castel where the kynge and the quene *was*,—*ibid.* 285/9; there *was* slain that morowe tyde x M good mennys bodyes, *ibid.* 53/12.

There are many instances of this freedom in the literature of the 16th century:—

There *is* more nobler portes in England, *Andrew Boorde*, p. 120; there is at Bath certain waters, *ibid.*; the olde noble the Aungels and the halfe aungels, *is* fine golde, p. 121; in Cornwall *is* two speches, p. 123; in Wales *is* used these two stalticious matters, p. 127; yet in Ireland *is* stupendous thinges, p. 133; XVIII Scotish pens *is*

worthe an Englysshe grote, p. 137; the mountains *is* very baryn, p. 160; the greater *is* the flods, p. 161; there is many great mountains, p. 165. Cf. 171, 172, 185, 191, 195, 208, 245.

There *was* many Dukes, Erles, and barons, *Huon*, I. 2/22 (ed. of 1601: were assembled); there *was* lenynge in wyndowes ladys and damesels, *ibid.* 38/28 (ed. 1601: were); there was present in the feld lordes and knyghtes, 43/4. Cf. 90/19, 115/19, 126/30, 156/6, 157/9, 167/3, 210/24, 313/25, 325/25, 371/13, 388/29, 390/6, 394/21, 413/15, 414/23, 422/11, 423/4, 471/22, 472/19, 473/31, 555/23, 29, 589/24, 605/28.

'What shooting is, how many kindes there *is* of it—is tolde.'—Ascham, *Toxoph.* 31.

'Both the mastur and rular of the sterne *ys* wyse and experte.'—Starkey, *England*, etc., p. 57, l. 1071.

'See, Diccon, 't was not so well washed this seven year, as ich neeen.'—*Gammer Gurton*, 193.

'There *is* five trumps besides the queen.'—*ibid.* 199.

'What need*s* these plaints?'—*Mucedorus*, 232.

'What need*s* these words?'—*ibid.* 232.

'Here *is* four angels for you.'—Greene, *Looking-Glass*, 125, a.

'Here *is* twenty angels.'—*ibid.*

'Each others equall puissaunce envies,
And throug their iron sides with cruell spies
Does seke to perce.'—Spenser, *Faërie Queene*, I. ii. 17, 4/6.

'He had yet lived, whose twelve labours display*s*
His endless fame, and yet his honour spreads.'—*Tancred*, I. iii.

'Here'*s* your thirty shillings.'

'Our neighbour*s*, that were woont to quake
And tremble at the Persean Monarkes name,
Now sit*s* and laugh*s* our regiment to skorne.'—Marlowe, *Tamburlaine*, 115.

'. . . . . about their necks
Hang*s* massie chaines of golde . . .'—*ibid.* 314.

'Whose fiery cycles beare encompassed
A heaven of heavenly bodies in their Spheares
That guide*s* his steps and actions to the throne.'—*ibid.* 464.

'*Was* there such *brethren*, sweet Meander, say?'—*ibid.* 567.

'What sai*es* my other friends?'—*ibid.* 768.

'Upon his browes was pourtraid vgly death,
And in his eies the furie of his hart,
That shi*ne* as Comets, menacing reueng,
And cast*s* a pale complexion on his cheeks.'—*ibid.* 1054/55.

'for Wil and Shall best fitteth Tamburlain,
Whose smiling stars giue*s* him assured hope.'—*ibid.* 1136.

'What is beauty, sai*th* my sufferings, then?'—*ibid.* 1941.

'Now shame and duty, loue and feare present*s*
A thousand sorrowes to my martyred soule.'—*ibid.* 2166.

'My lord, such speeches to our princely sonnes
Dismaies their mindes before they come to proone
The wounding troubles angry war affoords.'—*ibid.* 2646.

'from Trebizon in Asia the lesse
Naturalized Turks and stout Bythinians
Came to my hands full fifty thousand more,
That, fighting, knowes not what retreat doth meane.'—*ibid.* 3538.

'See now, ye slaues, my children stoops your pride
And leads your glories sheep-like to the sword!'—*ibid.* 3748/49.

'Distrest Olympia, whose weeping eies
Since thy arriuall here beheld no Sun,
But closde within the compasse of a tent,
Hath stain'd thy cheekes, and made thee look like death.'—
ibid. 3883.

'The Humidum and Calor, which some holde
Is not a parcell of the Elements.'—*ibid.* 4477.

'Sometimes like women, so unwedded maides,
Shadowing more beautie in their ayrie brows,
Then has the white breasts of the queene of Loue.'—
Marlowe, *Faustus*, ed. Breymann, 149 (B).

For Shakspere, see *Abbott*, § 335.

The instances with *-s*, and *-th*, however, may be also explained as remnants of Northern and Southern endings.

§ 39. *Co-ordination instead of Subordination.*

It is a well-known characteristic feature of poetical style to use sentences as co-ordinate ones, which, logically, stand in the relation of subordination. But Caxton's prose also exhibits several striking instances of this use. Two principal sentences are asyndetically joined together, where we should expect a principal sentence and a subordinate clause:—

Whan he see Blanchardyn, that all prest was to furnyshe hys enterpryse, gaffe to hymselfe grete meruaylle, and praised hym but litell, *he asked hym of whens he was. Blanchardyn answerd*, that for no drede nor fere that he had of hym he shuld kepe his name from hym, *Blanchardyn*, 84/3; whan the sarrasyns saw the kynge of the gyauntes dede they were sore frayed and gretly abâshed, for in hym was alle their hope. *they fled toward their tentes as faste as they myght. Blanchardyn and* they of Tormaday pursued them, *ibid.* 87/14, 15; Sadoyne behelde the pucell beatryx that so gentyl was and so odly fayr, *he enbraced and kyssed her*, sayeng, *ibid.* 143/21. Cf. 33/2, 39/16, 141/25, 168/24.

In the prose of the sixteenth century I noticed this use only in Berners:—

So he went to hys lodgyng sorowfull and in grete dyspleasure, and than he imagyned and studyed on the mater, and howe to brynge about his interpryse; than he departed fro hys lodgyng, and went to Charlot the kynges sone, with whome he was ryght pryuey; he founde hym syttyng on a ryche couche with a yonge knyght, *Huon*, 13/3—9; thus they 2 bretherne departyd and kyssyd theyr mother, sore wepynge. Thus they toke theyr horses and theyr companys, *ibid.* 14/3, 4; Charlot came agaynst the 2 brethern; the Abbot of Cluny saw Charlot commynge al armyde, *ibid.* 19/13, 14; as they lokyd in to the see they spyed a shyppe charged with xxx paynemes, and grete ryches; then Gerames saw how the shipp was commynge to that porte, then he sayd to his company, syrs, lett vs go, *ibid.* 129/11, 12. (But, perhaps in this case *then—then* answers to Old English ðonne—ðonne = when, then.) Cf. 134/20, 149/6—9, 152/16, 185/3, 4, 203/1, 273/8, 297/4, 313/25, 381/24, 388/2.

§ 40. *Noun Clauses.*

(*A.*) The Subject Clause, which, in Modern English, is introduced by *that*, turns up very frequently in the shape of an Accusative in connection with an Infinitive. 'It is better a man wysely to be stille, than folysshly to speke,' *Charles the Grete*, 93/5. *See* § 30.

(*B.*) Much more interesting is the difference in the construction of the Object Clause. Compare the following two sentences: 'And God saw the light that it was good' (*Genesis*, i. 4); 'You see that I am composed' (Dickens, *Dombey and Son*, iii. 9).

Logically speaking, the two constructions are equivalent; but psychologically, how different is the idea which they represent! In the first case the sentence expresses an abstract result; in the second, the verb *see* has a concrete object, in which a certain attribute is perceived.

The former way of expression is the older as well as the more intuitive, and it crops up very often in Early English, though the more modern one seems to have crept in at a very early period:—

Old English: Ic þæt gehýre, þæt þis is hold wëorod, *Beowulf*, 290; We þæt gehýrdon þurh hálige héc, þæt éow dryhten geaf dóm unscyndne, *Elene*, 364. Cf. 853.

Middle English: Gif þu *hine* iseȝe þet *he* wulle asottie to þes deofles hond send to his werkes. þet þu hine lęttest, *Old English Homilies*, l. 17; he scal soðfeste men setten him to irefen. and for godes eie libban his lif rightliche and beon on erfeðnesse anred and edmod on stilnesse. and his *ofspringe ne iþauie* þet *hi beon unright-*

wise (and shall not suffer his offspring to be unrighteous), *ibid.* I. 115;

'ful wel þu *me* iseie þauh þu stille were.
Hwar ich was and *hwat i dude* þauh þu me uorbere.'—
On God Ureisun of ure Lefdi, 105/106;

'He wayned me vpon þis wyse to your wynne halle,
for to assay *þe surquidre*, *if hit soth were*,
þat rennes of þe grete renoun of þe Rounde Table.'—
Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, 2457;

'(They) louen more here folye avowis to
fulfille *hem* þan to fulfille goddis hestis.'—
Wyclif, *Unprinted Engl. Works*, ed. Matthew, p. 103;

'When the emperowre harde telle
All þat case, *how hyt felle*,
That Saddok was so slayne,
Therof was he nothyng fayne.'—
Guy of Warwick, ed. Zupitza, 1498;

'When he sawe dewke Raynere
And the constabull Waldynere,
How þer men were broght to grownde
Wyth grete yre yn a stownde,
Gye beganne to crye in hye.'—*ibid.* 1967.

For other instances in the same work, see Zupitza's note to l. 1497.

I aske *þe ien* of alle the men . . . *þat þei be pikid oute*,—*Gesta Romanorum*, p. 154; knowist thow not *me*, *what I am?*—*ibid.* 208; he weht to the sheldes where they lay, *ibid.* 235; and he had grete envie of þis childe þat þe emperour loved him so moche, *ibid.* 322.

Caxton and Malory are well acquainted with the old use. The following instances are equivalent in their structure to those quoted above:—

Syre, I knowe not *your persone*, *what ye be*, nor to whom I speke, *Blanchardyn*, 183/26; whan sadoyne, that was the same tyme lokyng out at a wyndowe wythin his castell of Cassydonye, and his wyf the fayr Beatryx by hym sawe *the two oostes that they wold Ioyne togyder* to batayl, he gaf hymselfe gret meruayl, *ibid.* 193/29; the lady, that was shette wythin, was full sore and wroth *for her frende blanchardyn*, *that he was soo ferre* from her, *ibid.* 197/30; (he) went to the ryuage of the water, and byhelde *it that it ranne* lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe, *Charles the Grete*, 157/26; byholde *me how I am* obedyent to the commaundements of the chyrche, *ibid.* 238/25; (he) came to the bataille and sawe *his knyghtes how they had* vaynquysshed the bataylle, *Morte Darthur*, 171/35; and we here knowe *the* wel that thou arte syre Launcelot du laake, *ibid.* 186/

38; and therfor alle the myssayenge that ye myssayed me fordered me in my bataill, and caused me to thynke to shewe and preue *my self* at the ende *what I was,—ibid.* 229/35; that shalle cause *me that I shall not* be knowen, *ibid.* 258/1; he knewe *sir Blamor de ganys that he* was a noble knyght, *ibid.* 303/17; syr Danadan knewe *the knyght* wel *that he* was a noble Knyght, *ibid.* 429/4; but euer sir Dynadan thought he shold knowe *hym* by his shelde *that* it shold be sir Tor, *ibid.* 429/18; he euermore desyred *her to wedde her,—ibid.* 575/34; anon the good man knewe *hym that* he was one of the kny3tes erraunt, *ibid.* 671/33.

But the real meaning of this old construction seems already drawing to decay in Malory and Caxton; for in many instances *that* is no longer understood as a conjunction, but as a relative pronoun; consequently the personal pronoun is dropped, and the noun clause becomes an adjective one:—

Whan the kynge herde *the prouoste, that* soo grete offre made for to haue ageyne blanchardyn, He gaff hym self grete merueylle, *Blanchardyn*, 91/29; but ouer moche dysplaysed her to see her feyth-full *frende Blanchardyn that* wolde goo ayen out of the lande, *Blanchardyn*, 172/14; of that other part, he sawe *his only doughter, that* denyed and defended hym his comynge in to his cyte, *ibid.* 184/7; (Alymodes) sawe hym self bannyshed and chassed out of his towne and royalme, and also *his doughter that* was wedded to his mortayll enmye, *ibid.* 191/30; the kynge Alymodes, seeng *his folke that* fled . . . cam and yelded hym self in to the handes of blanchardyn, *ibid.* 195/16; he sawe his cheff banner ouer thrawen, and hym self enclosed of al sydes, *his men that* fled, and awayte non other but after the stroke of deth, *ibid.* 203/17; theune whan Charlemagne saw *his peres that* were soo sore moved wyth angre agenste hym, he sayd to theym, *Aymon*, 485/21; and whan reynawd saw *mawgis that* dyde so well, he was glad, *ibid.* 516/19; neuertheles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, and byhelde *the hoost* of the paynyms came ageynst hym with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat his hert was, *ibid.* 150/29; feragus, beyng euyl contente *for hys hors that* was dede, took hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, *ibid.* 222/28.

(*C.*) Whenever the object noun-clause is at the same time an adjectival one, Caxton uses the old construction. Take for instance this sentence, 'He saw a shield that he knew to be his brother's.' Instead of using our accusative with the infinitive, Caxton says (as we also often do now): 'He saw a shield that he knew was his brother's':—

She commaunded that they sholde goo and arme them self for to resiste ayenst her enmyes at their commyng on lande, *whiche she sawe approched* alredy right nyghe, *Blanchardyn*, 56/19; and also for of the grete dysplesure that he had of the quene his wyffe, that suche a sorowe made for her entyerli beloued sone blanchardin *whiche she wyste not where he was becom . . . ibid.* 112/1; the fayr pucelle and proude in amours myght not seasse nor leue her sorowe ther fore, that she contynually made for her right dere frende blanchardyn; *that* for the loue of her *she trowed that he had other be lost or ded*,—*ibid.* 120/11; the pouere folke of prusse, that is to wyte, the barons and knyghtes that Sadoyne had brought wyth hym were sore dyscomfyted and full of sorowe for thabsence of their maystre, *that they sawe was brought prysonner* of the paynems, *ibid.* 171/30; I am he *that thou knowe that dyd doo destroye* rome your cyte, and slewe the Pope and many other, and bare awaye the relyques that I there founde, *Charles the Grete*, 52/30; fals creature that thou arte (whome I byseche god confounde), thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes, *ibid.* 119/8; and amonge them he sawe his broders sheld syr Lyonel, and many moo *that he knewe that were his felawes*,—*Morte Darthur*, 185/7; and so shull ye haue wel rewarded me of all *that ye say that* my brother and I haue doo for you and for your realme, *Melusine*, 153/1; and thanne all they that were there byan to sorowe and wepe for the pyte they had of the kyng, And also of the sorow that they sawe the virgyne, his daughter, made so pitously, *ibid.* 154/22.

§ 41. *Change of direct and indirect speech.*

It is a frequent anacoluthon in Old French, Middle High German, and Middle English writers to pass abruptly from indirect to direct speech. This occurs several times in Caxton, but Malory makes a most extravagant use of it:—

'Wex derke, ðis coren is gon,
Iacob eft bit hem faren agon,
Oc he ne duren ðe weie cumen in,
"but go wið us senden beniamin;"
ðo quað he, "quan it is ned."'—*Genesis and Exodus*, 2240;

'The dewke clepyd Gye there,
And bad, yf hys wylle were,
That Harrawde schulde haue wyth hym eche dell
Fyve hundurde knyghtys armed well,
And wende forthe, wythowte fayle,
Boldely them for to assayle,
"And ye, syr Gye, a thousande
Bolde men and wele bydande."'
Guy of Warwick, ed. Zupitza, 1785;

'He clepyd hys hunte to hym there
And seyde, he wolde chace þe dere

Erly in the morowtyde
In the forest, þat was so wyde,
Bothe at hartys and at hyndys,
And wylde bestys of odur kyndys,
"Preuely that hyt be wroght,
That þe dewke wytt hyt noght."'—*ibid.* 2328/29;

'The emperowre asked then,
What were all tho armed men.
Oon seyde, hyt was syr Gyowne,
"All in wrath goyth fro þe towne
In odur stedde to do hys beste
Wyth schelde and spere to fyght preste."'—*ibid.* 3162/70.

Cf. Zupitza, note to l. 1785.

Than the messanger sayde to her that the kyng made to hym so harde and heuy countenaunce, that he wold nat heere speke worde, neyther of yow hys lady, neyther of youre chylde, in any maner that myght be, *Trivet*, p. 239 (Chaucer Society's *Originals & Analogues*); and syth whan she was come ayen to her self, that she had the myght to speke, she sayde to the prouost that soone and incontynent he shold go toward the kyng Alymodes for to wyte, yf for golde or syluer he wolde take to raenson þe knyght. And yf his playsure was to sende hym ayen to her, 'I shal gyue him for his raenson seuen dromadaryes al laden with fyn gold,' *Blanchardyn*, 90/2; he right reuerently salued hym, sayeng vnto hym, that he was come there for to beye ayen þe straunge knyght . . . thus right gladly she wolde haue hym ayen, yf your plesure were for to putte hym to raenson, *ibid.* 91/23; Alymodes ansuerd to hym, and sayd that it was more than a monthe ago that they neuer made noo yssue . . . and that they were made full symple, syth that the yonge knyght was taken, whiche I betok you for to be brought vnto the kynge of salamandrye, *ibid.* 116/14; Sadoyne departed and com to fore the kynge his fader, to whome in the best wyse that he myght or coude dyde shewe vnto him his wyll, and . . . that a lawfull and Iuste cause he had to do soo, for to gyue socoure and helpe the yonge knyght straunger, 'that thourgh his prouesse and grete worthynes hathe socoured you,' *ibid.* 126/1; the prouoste tolde to hym . . . that neuer syth that she receyued the letter that he dyde sende to her by hym, she had no Ioye at her herte, nor shal neuer haue vnto the tyme that she see you ayen, *ibid.* 156/33; thenne they auysed the kynge to send for the duke and his wyf by a grete charge, And yf he wille not come at your somons thenne may ye do your best, *Morte Darthur*, 35/25; the kynge commaunded II. knyghtes and II. ladyes to take the child bound in a cloth of gold, and that ye delyuer hym to what poure man ye mete, *ibid.* 59/6; (A squyer) told hym how ther was a knyght in the forest had rered vp a pauelione by a well, and hath slayne my mayster a good knyght, *ibid.* 68/25; Balyn told his broder of his aduenture of the swerd, and of the deth of the lady of the lake, and

how kyng arthur was displeaysyd with hym, wherfor he sente this knyȝt after me, *ibid.* 83/8, 9; (Pellinore) charged the heremyte with the corps that seruyse shold be done for the soule, and take his harneys for your payne, *ibid.* 117/15. Cf. *ibid.* 119/5, 129/26, 136/3, 146/34, 149/28, 169/13, 170/32, 178/22, 183/22, 203/5, 208/4, 227/17, 231/17, 239/10, 240/9, 242/37, 247/8, 271/20, 281/6, 282/2, 315/21 and *passim;* for yf they had not be, the paynemys had dystroyed them all, or had constrayned to be conuerted to theire fals lawe, whiche had be to vs wers and heuyer than ony deth corporall, *Melusine*, 152/5, 6.

This freedom is very frequent in Berners, and occurs as late as the second half of the 17th century:—

(Huon) embrassyd hym and sayde how often tymys he had sene Guyer, his brother the prouost, wepe for you, and whan I departyd fro Burdeux I delyueryd to hym all my londes to gouerne, *Huon*, 62/31, 32; than the admyrall answeryd, and sayd how he wolde pardon hym on the condycyon that he shulde neuer after trespas hym, nor no man in his countre, and be syde that, to become my man, and to do me homage, *ibid.* 150/1; he founde Iuoryn, to whom he shewed . . . howe he and his company founde the sayd knyght and your nece the fayre Esclaramonde, *ibid.* 163/18; than he called all his couent, and chargyd them, in the vertue of obedyence, to reuest them selues with crosse and myter and copes, to reseyue Huon, the ryghtfull enherytour to the countre of Burdeux though the kynges of fraunce be our founders, *ibid.* 219/11, 12; they alyghted and kneled downe before Huon, and requyred hym to haue mercy, and pyte of theym as to saue theyr lyues and put vs in pryson, *ibid.* 336/17; (Huon) commaunded him that incontynent he sholde go to the emperour, and say vnto hym that yf it be his pleasure to here spekynge of any peace, I shall condyscende therto, *ibid.* 342/10; then he sayd to kynge Arthur, 'syr, I wyll ye holde your peas, for if ye speke one worde more agaynst Huon the souerayne kynge of the fayry, that he wold condemyne hym parpetually to be a warwolfe in the se,' *ibid.* 602/21; they told him that they were poor pilgrims going to Zion, but were led out of their way by a black man, clothed in white, who bid us, said they, follow him,—Bunyan, *The Pilgrim's Progress*, 133/1.

§ 42. *Adjective Clauses.*

(*A.*) For the construction of adjective clauses, *see* 'Relative Pronoun,' § 15, B, p. xxxvii above.

(*B.*) Adjective clauses are sometimes used with a conditional sense (who would speak = if somebody would speak):—

Certes, who someuer brought her this sorowfull and pyteuose tydynge I doubte not but that she shold slee her self for grete displaysir, *Blanchardyn*, 155/30; and I promyse you, that who shall hange Richarde, I shall goo to Reynawde, and shall put myself in hys pryson, *Aymon*, 326/23; who that sholde speke of the bredern of reynaude and of theyr dedes, it were to longe to be recounted, *ibid.* 536/3; for who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of them shuld neuer retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy, *Melusine*, 169/32; 'By my hed,' said Anthony, 'who that shuld punysshe you . . . ye were not puyssaunt to make amendes suffysaunt therof,' *ibid.* 209/26; 'but, fayre Cousyn, it is wel trouth, that who myght goodly tary the day of your weddyng it were your honour,' *ibid.* 238/1; and who that shuld enquire of me what folke they were, I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon bretheren that camme toward his brother at his mandement, *ibid.* 249/5.

For the so-called figures of syntax, like anacoluthon, pleonasm, *see* the Appendix below, on Caxton's style, p. cix, &c.

III. ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

§ 43. *Subject and Predicate* (*Inversion*).

Compared with Early English, the inversion of the present language ranges over a very limited space. Caxton, in this respect, is very near the Modern English; in two cases, however, he has kept the Middle English.

1. Inversion used in emphatic sentences:—

Sore troubled of wyttis, and gretly vexed wythin her mynde as ye here, *rode forthe the gentel pucelle*,—*Blanchardyn*, 45/10; so *smot they* hem self wythin callyng vp a hyghe crye in to þe thikkest of their enmyes, *ibid.* 59/4; and syth *made eche hem self* to be armed hastely whan *dressid and redy they were*, they made their coursers to be had forth out of the stable, *ibid.* 60/33; and after that announced *was there comyng*, men made them to entre in to the chambre of parement, *ibid.* 76/27; to the rescue of blanchardyn *cam also the gode prouost*,—*ibid.* 166/23.

2. Co-ordinate sentences introduced by *and* are often inverted. This use may be traced to the pre-historic time of the English language. It appears in the oldest Teutonic dialects, and is still kept in Modern German, though learned grammarians are untiring in ridiculing this time-honoured use:—

Old English: Her Aeþelheard cyning forþferde *and feng* Cuþræd to Westseaxna rice, *Chronicle*, a. 741; ac monige sindon me swiðe onlice on ungelærednesse, þeah þe hi næfre leorningcnihtas næren, wilniaþ ðeah lareowas to beonne, and ðynceþ him swiðe leoht sio byrðen pæs lareowdomes, *Cura Pastoralis*, p. 24.

Modern English: Syon was sum hwile iclepet þe hehe tur of Ierusalem. And *seiþ syon* ase muchel on englische leodene ase heh sihðe, and *bitacneþ þis tur* þe heh schipe of meidenhad, *Hali Meidenhad*, p. 5; and *was his* holie lichame leid in buriels in þe holie sepulcre, *Old English Hom.*, II. 21; alse hit bi þe wimman and bi sheawere. hie bihalt hire sheawere. *and cumeþ hire* shadewe þeronne, *ibid.* 29; and gif hit is swo. me ðingþ ne bringþ no synful man quemere loc þene teares sheding for his sinnen. *and wiste* seinte peter, and Seinte Marie Magdalene, *ibid.* 65. Cf. *ibid.* 83, 127, 165, 213; *Saules Warde*, 249 (*Old English Hom.* I.);

> 'And tanne comm he siþþen ut
> All dumb and butenn spæche,
> and toc to becnenn till þe folle,
> *and spacc he* nohht wiþþ tunge.'—*Orm.* 224;
>
> 'He made an aucter on godes name,
> *And sacred he* ðor-on, for sowles frame.'
> *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 626;
>
> 'ðo sente he after abram,
> *and bitagte he* him is leman.'—*ibid.* 782;
>
> 'It semet wel ðat ge spies ben,
> And into ðis lond cumen to sen,
> *And cume ge* for non oðer ðing
> But for to spien ur lord ðe king.'—*ibid.* 2171;
>
> 'And al ðis unweder ðor atwond,
> *And wurð ðis* weder sone all stille.'—*ibid.* 3059.

Caxton offers several instances of this use:—

Thenne dylygently he demanded his mayster of the subtylnes of the werke, of thystorye and of the personnages. *And* first *recounted vnto hym his mayster* the puyssaunce the right grete cyrcuyte, and the noblesse of the cyte of Troyes, *Blanchardyn*, 15/9; the wawes wexed so bygge and so grete, that they semed to be mountayns. *And was the tempeste so perelouse*, that they were constreyned to enter into the brode see agayne, *ibid.* 136/11; Kynge Alymodes made the towne to be assayled, *and was there made grete alarme and grete fray*,—*ibid.* 152/23; and within a whyle they cam to the heremytage and took lodgyng *and was there gras otys* and breed for their horses, soone it was sped *and full hard was their souper*,—*Morte Darthur*, 111/7; for moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym all the tydynges. *And dured* not long *the* scarmoushe, *Melusine*, 127/4; Uryan thanne made the standarde to passe fourth rydyng in batayll moche ordynatly *and was Vryan before*, hauyng a staf on hys fyste,

ibid. 131/22; anoone camme there Vryan, whiche alyghted, toke hys speere, and so dyde hys folke moche appertly, and made hys banere to be dysployed abrode, *and were the crosbowe men* on bothe sydes of hym vpon the bridge, *ibid.* 131/30; and so moche they dide that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them, but that they lost twyes asmoche more, *and was scarmusshing* moche fyers and peryllous, *ibid.* 137/20; and thanne Vryan smote hym vpon the helmet a grete stroke with all his might, *and was the sawdan so sore charged* with that stroke that he was so astonyed and amaysed that he neyther sawe nor herde, *ibid.* 145/28; and thene Vryan and his folke lodged them self in the paynems lodgys, *and was the sommage of the cristen sent fore,—ibid.* 146/18. Cf. 203/17, 214/7, 12, 215/13, 234/7, 240/6.

§ 44. The Predicative verb, especially the verb *be*, is, as a rule, placed at the end of adjective clauses, and exceptionally also in others:—

The knyght thenne beholdynge the Iouencell Blanchardyn, that right yong *was*, and sawe hym alone, Rose anone vpon his feet, *Blanchardyn*, 26/16; theire sperys (that sore bygge and stronge *were*) broke also all to pyces, *ibid.* 28/10; thenne her maystres, that sage and dyscrete *was* comforted her, *ibid.* 43/19; whan blanchardyn had wel loked and rede the verses that grauen *were* in the marbell vpon the gate, and well vnderstode theire sentence, a lytyl he bygan to smyle, *ibid.* 47/8; there beganne the trompettes, the hornes, the olyphauntes, and the busynes to blowe, that suche a noyse *made*, that the see and the erthe retentyssed wyth alle, *ibid.* 183/6. Cf. 41/29, 49/10, 51/18, 60/31, 62/20, 64/30, 88/27, 94/29, 97/6, 99/8, etc.

§ 45. *Place of the Object.*

(*A.*) The object, when a noun, precedes the verb: 1. in emphatic sentences; 2. in clauses, especially before past participles and infinitives:—

1. *Your loue and lady* I shal yelde vnto you this day, *Blanchardyn*, 25/2; so smot they hem self wythin callyng vp a hyghe crye in to þe thikkest of their enmyes, where they slew and detrenched many one, *And dyuerse tentes* and pauyllons they pulled doune, *ibid.* 59/6; for so helpe me god, as I loue you wyth all my veraye herte, and am so esprysed wyth your loue, that *reherce it to you* I can not, *ibid.* 9/34; he toke his way forth on, and *folke* he met ynoughe by the waye, *ibid.* 98/30; *to the rescue* of blanchardyn cam also the goode prouost, *ibid.* 166/22.

2. Thenne the proude pucelle in loue, after a lytyl musyng, vnderstode well by the wordes of the captayne, and by the cognyssaunce that he tolde her of his horse, that he was that self knyght that *the*

kysse had taken of her, *Blanchardyn*, 51/26 ; I shal suffre for this nyght hym that *so grete a dysplaysure* hath don to me this day, *ibid.* 51/31 ; Blanchardyn thanked the messager, and prayed hym curtaysly that he wold haue hym for humbly recomended to the goode grace of the noble pucelle, that *so fayre a present* had sent to hym, *ibid.* 82/6 ; the paynem knyght, that was full curteys, made a token to hym that *his request* he dyde graunte, *ibid.* 90/26 ; and for *thys werke* to conducte and brynge to an ende, I graunte you euen now, and chose you, for to be in oure behalue Conestable and hed captayne of oure present armye, *ibid.* 100/27 ; and none of them abode there, but that he was ded or taken excepte som that fled awaye, that *this tydynges* brought to Alymodes, *ibid.* 191/9 ; that god that created the firmamente, and made alle thynges of noughte for *the people* to susteyne . . . kepe and saue the, *Aymon*, 24/19 ; I complayne me to you of the foure sonnes of Aymon, that hathe *my londe* dystroyed and wasted, *ibid.* 89/13 ; they coude *no counceil* gyue, but said they were bygge ynough, *Morte Darthur*, 47/10.

(*B.*) The personal pronoun as an object is not bound by this rule. In Old English its place was generally before the finite verb, as may be seen from the *Blickling Homilies*, where more than 80 per cent. of the pronouns in the oblique case precede the verb. In Middle English prose the modern arrangement carries the day, and in Caxton there are but a small number of instances exhibiting the old use ; but even in these the French influence may have been of some effect :—

I *me* recommende ryght humbly vnto your good grace, *Blanchardyn*, 133/18 ; and to the surplus, to the playsure of oure lorde, and *hym* playsed ye shal vnderstande by mouthe ferthere of myn astate, *ibid.* 134/4 ; and yf I maye take hym, I shall not leue hym, for the duke Aymon that shamfully is goon from me, nor for his foure sones that I haue made knyghtes, wherof I *me* repente sore, *Aymon*, 38/21 ; the kyng gaaf hym ayen his salute, and *hym* demaunded what he was, *ibid.* 40/26 ; he called afore hym his barons, and *to theym* sayd, *ibid.* 104/18 ; ye knowe wel the grete dishonour thei have doon to me, wherof I *me* complayne vnto you, *ibid.* 183/15 ; I *you* supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre, *Charles the Grete*, 49/28 ; therof, madame, I *you* assure, *ibid.* 92/30. Cf. 127/1, 159/19, 160/15 ; God *me* spede, said Blamor de ganys; *Morte Darthur*, 306/26 ; the kyng rode euen to her, and salewed her, and said god *yow* saue, *ibid.* 541/5 ; I haue none other wylle than to endeuoyre me þerto, how be it certayn that I may not acomplysshe to the regarde of the grete honour that ye haue *me* shewed, *Melusine*, 152/13 ; but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I *you* commande that ye cesse of this heuynes, *ibid.* 155/8 ; but the

hauoir that is departed amonges my felawes I may not *it* rendre or yeld to you, *ibid.* 211/6.

§ 46. *Place of the Attribute.*

(*A.*) One attribute.

In Old and Middle English, adjectives (as a rule) precede the noun; this before-putting, though not unfrequent in poetry, occurs rarely in prose. In Caxton, adjectives—not only of French, but also of Teutonic origin, as well as present and past participles—follow the noun, and we may safely say that this is due to French influence.

(*B.*) Of two adjectives belonging to the same noun, the first precedes, the second follows it. This is nearly like the French use; but Caxton was far from copying his original, he simply kept a very old good English tradition:—

Old English: Gif ænig man hæbbe *módigne sunu and rancne*,—*Deuter.* xxi. 18; to gódum lande and wídgillum, *Exod.* iii. 8; wæron on þissum felda unríme gesomnunga hwíttra manna and fægerra, *Beda*, v. 13; he gefór . . . gód man and clæne and swiðe æðele, *Chronicle*, 1056; þat se anweald . . . becume tó *gódum men* and tó *wísum*,—*Boeth.* xvi. 1.

Middle English: heo wulle under fon *swa heȝ þing* and *swa hali* swa is cristes licome, *O. E. Hom.*, 25; þet *frumkenede childe* and þet *lefeste*,—*ibid.* 87; non þe ledeð *feir lif* and *clene*,—*ibid.* 137; *monie wundre* and *muchele*,—*ibid.* 139; þat *loðeliche ward*, and *ateliche*, and *grisliche*,—*ibid.* II. 5; lomb is *drih þing* and *milde*,—*ibid.* 49; þe olde men þe þo weren and lif holie, *ibid.* 51; after summ *apel man & good*,—*Orm.* 611; *Rihhtwise men* and *gode*,—*ibid.* 116; full *mehhtiȝ mann* and *mære*,—*ibid.* 806;

> 'Of hem woren ðe getenes boren,
> *Migti men*, and *figti*, [and] *for-loren*.'—
> *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, 564;
>
> 'A *michel fier* he sag, and an *brigt*.'—*ibid.* 951;
>
> 'Ghe bed him gold, and agte, and fe,
> To maken him *riche man* and *fre*.'—*ibid.* 2018;
>
> '*Long weige* and *costful* he ðor fond.'—*ibid.* 3880;

Troye, þat *god mon* was and *wys*,—*Robert of Glos.*, p. 10; a *lute bal* and *round*,—Wright, *Pop. Treat. on Science*, p. 137; Sire Emerde Valence, *gentil knyght* and *free*,—*Polit. Songs*, (Camden Soc.) p. 216; ful *modi man* and *proud*,—*Anecd.*, p. 2; He was *hardy mon* and *strong*,—*Alis.*, 4402; the *foulest contree*, and *the most cursed*, and *the porest*,—*Maundeville*, p. 129; a *heȝe ernde* and a *hasty*,—*Gawayne*, 1051; to *knawe god* and *lonye*,—*Ayenbite*, 88; *soþe blisse* and *ziker*,—*ibid.* 93; þa is *guod lyf* and yblyssed, *ibid.*; a *gode zone* and *trewe*,—*ibid.* 101;

and namely with a *yong wif* and a *fair*,—*Chaucer*, II. 327; an *old man* and a *pore* with hem mette, *ibid.* III. 98; of such a *parfyt God* and a *stable*,—*ibid.* III. 6; in a foul *stynkynge stable* and *cold*,—*Wyclif*, 17; in grete *fatte hors* and *nedeles*,—*ibid.* 60; *gaie houses* and *costy*,—*ibid.* 61; *open heretiks* and *stronge*,—*ibid.*; *new song* and *costy*,—*ibid.* 76; an *heuenly yiefte* and *gostly*,—*ibid.* 82; here *worldly lif* and *cursed*,—*ibid.* 99; *proude men* and *delicate*,—*ibid.* 120; *wide clo*þ*is* and *precious*,—*ibid.* 128. Cf. *ibid.* 129, 140, 145, 156, 181, 223. I am come of *gret blode* and *riall*,—*Gesta Romanorum*, 23; a *strong man* and a *mighty*,—*ibid.* 42; a *wise man* and a *redy*,—*ibid.* 148; a *noble man*, and a *worthi*,—*ibid.* 172; *riche yiftes* and *fair*,—*ibid.* 190; a *worthy kny*ȝ*t* and a *riche*,—*ibid.* 202. Cf. *ibid.* 251, 264.

Caxton: and so *grete a stroke* and so *heuy* he gaffe hym, *Blanchardyn*, 62/22; god hath well kept hym from so *moche an hap* and so *hyghe*,—*ibid.* 75/24; that knewe hym for a *trusty man* and *secret*,—*ibid.* 81/23; he lete fall vpon daryus suche a *stourdy strok*, and so *grete*,—*ibid.* 86/17; a *grete tempeste* roose in the see, and so *horryble*,—*ibid.* 97/20; that was a *fayr knyght* and *yonge*,—*ibid.* 110/2; ye shall doo as a *wyse woman* and *well counseylled*,—*ibid.* 178/1; the *best tyme* and *most entier*,—*ibid.* 179/5; the *grete strokes* and the *dangerous*,—*Aymon*, 392/9; that was a *worthy knyghte* and a *wyse*,—*ibid.* 504/20; a *myghty spere* and *sharpe*,—*Charles the Grete*, 48/27; O *ryche emperour* and *noble*,—*ibid.* 84/16; I had had fyue of the *valyauntest erles* of fraunce and of the *grettest*,—*ibid.* 88/3; she ledde them by an *olde gate* and *secrete*,—*ibid.* 94/1; in spayne he had XVI *grete townes* and *stronge*,—*ibid.* 205/6; she was called a *fair lady* and a *passynge wyse*,—*Morte Darthur*, 35/7; that is a *passyng true man* and a feythful, *ibid.* 38/29; that was a *passyng good man* and a *yonge*,—*ibid.* 52/8; thou art a *boystous man* and an *vnlykely*,—*ibid.* 84/20; he was a *likely man* and a *well made*,—*ibid.* 94/27; the *best knyght* and the *myghtyest*,—*ibid.* 192/35; many in this land of *hyghe estate* and *lowe*,—*ibid.* 198/1; this is an *horryble dede* and a *shameful*,—*ibid.* 211/13; this is a *fowle custome* and a *shameful*,—*ibid.* 310/31; they foughte vpon foote a *noble batail* togyders and a myghty, *ibid.* 346/21. Cf. 353/5, 408/16, 412/25, 425/31, 432/2, 435/7, 442/20, 509/2, and *passim*.

§ 47. *Place of the Adverb.*

There is an evident tendency in Caxton to place the adverb before the verb, and very often even before the subject:—

Thenne *dylygently* he demanded his mayster of the subtylnes of the werke, *Blanchardyn*, 15/7; Blanchardyn *toward the stables* tourned his waye, *ibid.* 17/20; right thus . . . cam the yomen & grommes of þe stable makynge grete noyse and crye for þe grete courser of þe kynge, whiche *that night* was stolen fro theim, *ibid.* 19/10; (Blanchardyn)

founde a knyght that lay there on the grounde, armed of all pieces, the whiche *full pyteously* complayned, *ibid.* 22/18; for hir sake I wyl fight with you in fauoure of þe good knight her true louer, þe whiche *falsly*, as an vntrewe knyght, ye haue be trayd, *ibid.* 26/11; they founde þe knyght, that awayted after theym, that *well and curtoysly* saluted Blanchardyn, *ibid.* 33/5; of the teerys that *from her eyen* fyll doune, her gowne that she had on was therof charged, *ibid.* 43/16; Blanchardyn herkned the prouost, to whom *boldly* he answered, *ibid.* 48/15. Cf. 72/31, 85/8, 86/21, 87/21, 99/4, 101/5, 131/26, 133/17, 140/9, 145/7, 147/25, 151/7, 164/31, 169/25, 186/11, 194/12.

This is especially striking in passive constructions, where the adverbial combination, stating by whom something is done precedes:—

So was he *by the two doughters* brought in to a chambre, *Blanchardyn*, 50/21; of what dethe mygt I do make hym to deye for to gyue vnto hym his payment of the grete oultrage *by hym* commytted in my persone, *ibid.* 52/30; and seen the battaylles and scarmysshynge that *by them of the towne and their enmyes* were made, So began he to be ful of thoughte, *ibid.* 59/27; syth he also perceyued the black sleue that *vpon his helmet* was sette fast, *ibid.* 63/27; many of the gretest of hem had ben slayn or taken, yf *by the vertue and strengthe* of blanchardyn they had not be socoured, *ibid.* 66/13; I doubte not that yf by aduenture she were out of his remembraunce, and *by hym* putte in oblyuyon, that god forbede but that sholde dey sodaynly, *ibid.* 74/1; he called blanchardyn his new Conestable and tolde hym how, *by hym and his barons*, was ordeyned to hym the charge and conduyte of his werre, *ibid.* 103/21; he sholde neuere haue Ioye at herte tyll that the deth of his brother, and the damage that he had receyued were *by hym* auenged, *ibid.* 107/24; he awoke out of his slepe thurghe the pyteouse crye that *of his men* was made, *ibid.* 113/16. Cf. *ibid.* 142/34, 143/31, 159/19, 161/11, 194/8, 9, 10, 199/4.

§ 48. *Apposition.*

A word in apposition to a possessive genitive is, in Middle English, and still in Caxton, put after the noun governing the genitive (Cf. Skeat, notes to *Piers Plowman*, pp. 42, 157, 307, 329; Zupitza, *Guy of Warwick*, l. 687). This arrangement is very old, though the modern one may be found exceptionally as early as the *Chronicle*, about the year 890:—

Old English: for his wed broðeres luuen Oswi, *Chronicle* 656 (Laud MS.); for Saxulfes luuen þes abbodes, *ibid.* (very frequent); on Torcvines dagum þæs ofermódan cyninges, *Boethius*, 16/1;

þe Cnútes dæge cinges,—Hickes, *Dissert.*, ep. p. 2. (Quoted by Mætzner, *Grammar*, III., p. 355.)

Middle English: þurh davi3es mu3 þe prophete, *Old English Hom.*, I. 139; in august time þe Imparour, *Cursor Mundi*, 11277; ion heued, þi prisun, *ibid.* 13167; in Kynges hous Arthor, *Gawayne*, 2275; þe duches do3ter of Tyntagelle, *ibid.* 2465; for marye loue of heuene, *Piers Plowman*, B I., 157; for the lordes loue of heuene, *ibid.*, B VI., 19; the kynges metynge Pharao, *Chaucer*, V. 163; that was the kynge Priamus sone of Troye, *ibid.* IV. 108; and byd him that on alle thynge That he take up Seys body, the kynge, *ibid.* V. 159; the faire yonge Ypsiphile the shene That whilom Thoas doughter was the kynge, *ibid.* V. 321; to praye for my lordes soule,—Sir Thomas West, *Early English Wills*, 7/4, 5; on þe maydenys halfe Blanchflowre,—Zupitza, *Guy of Warwick*, 687; the dewkys men Segwyne, *ibid.* 2427; my lordes sone þe emperowre, *ibid.* 2827; the erlys doghtur Rohawte, *ibid.* 4005; the erlys sone Awbrye, *ibid.* 4339, 5352, 6054, etc.; goddes sone of heuen,—Perry, *Religious Pieces*, p. 2.

Caxton: for syn that he was departed from *his fadres house, the kynge of fryse*, [he] had nothre eten nor dronken, *Blanchardyn*, 31/21; but wel he tolde hym that he sholde be well lodged in *the prouostys house of the towne*,—*ibid.* 46/3; here foloweth the ballade that was wryton vpon the gate of *the prouostis place of Tourmaday*,—*ibid.* 46/21; for right moche he desyred to shewe hymself, for *his ladyes loue, doughter to kyng Alymodes*,—*ibid.* 83/9; the *kynges sone of Irelond*,—*Morte Darthur*, 80/23; I loue Gweneuer, the *kynges doughter Lodegrean*,—*ibid.* 100/15; his name is syr gauayne *kyng Lots sone of Orkeney*,—*ibid.* 108/37; I am the *lordes doughter of this castel*,—*ibid.* 127/30; his name is Marhaus the *kynges sone of Irelond*,—*ibid.* 141/4; for the *kynges loue of heuen*,—*ibid.* 177/32; he sawe his *broders sheld syr Lyonel*,—*ibid.* 185/6, etc.; of the *kyngis deth of Armenye*,—*Melusine*, 178/14.

There are also two instances of the modern construction:—

(They) gaff eche other soo vnmesurable strokes that the *kynge of Polonye spere* brake al to peces, *Blanchardyn*, 108/1; they fonde three of þe *kynge of frysys seruauntes*,—*ibid.* 112/17.

§ 49. *Contraction.*

Instead of saying 'the father came, and the son came,' as primitive tribes still do, we use the contraction 'the father and the son came.' Caxton exhibits several interesting traces of that state of the language, which takes the middle course between the primitive repetition (anaphora), and the modern contraction.

1. Two adjectives and one noun:—

The grete strokes and the dangerous, *Aymon*, 392/2 (instead of 'the grete and dangerous strokes.' *See* above, § 46).

2. Two subjects and one predicate :—

(He answered) that he sholde putte peyne that his honoure sholde be kepte, and his body ayenst hym, *Blanchardyn*, 48/19; hym semed, yf he wold be baptysed and all his folk, and to byleue in our feith, that the tempeste shold breke, *ibid.* 137/18; wold subyon or not, and all his helpes, the noble lady, proude of loue, was taken oute of his power, *ibid.* 197/20.

3. One verb and two objects :—

They were in a grete daunger of Subyon, that damaged theym ryght sore, and their place, *Blanchardyn*, 200/29.

4. One object governed by two verbs :—

But the knyght, that was ryght curteys, guyded hym and conduyted a whyle, *Blanchardyn*, 39/30.

To sum up :—Caxton's syntax, on the whole, is nearer Chaucer than Shakspere; and there is a still greater kinship between his prose and that of the fourteenth century, than that of the Elizabethan age. In reading Caxton's books, the general impression resembles very much that received by reading *The Tale of Melibeus*, or even *Maundeville;* and the results of a minute analysis agrees with that impression. It is true, many peculiarities of Caxton's language turn up also in Shakspere and Spenser; but we must keep in mind, that there is always a sort of tradition in poetry, which links together the remotest periods, while in simple prose, as in daily life, the distance of times is of great influence. There is a wide gap between the language in Spenser's *Faërie Queene*, not to speak of the *Shepherd's Calendar*, and his *View of the State of Ireland.*

Thus, the plural of abstracts is very frequent in the poem, but very rare in the prose treatise; the article is extremely often omitted in the former, while it is used in the latter, etc.

There are several points, which draw a very marked line between Caxton's syntax and that of the sixteenth century :—

1. *Ye*, not *you*, is still, with a few exceptions, the nominative of the 2nd pers. plural personal pronoun. This is quite common in Berners. *See* p. xiii.

be Cnútes dæge cinges,—Hickes, *Dissert.*, ep. p. 2. (Quoted by Mætzner, *Grammar*, III., p. 355.)

Middle English: þurh davi3es mu3 þe prophete, *Old English Hom.*, I. 139; in august time þe Imparour, *Cursor Mundi*, 11277; ion heued, þi prisun, *ibid.* 13167; in Kynges hous Arthor, *Gawayne*, 2275; þe duches do3ter of Tyntagelle, *ibid.* 2465; for marye loue of heuene, *Piers Plowman*, B I., 157; for the lordes loue of heuene, *ibid.*, B VI., 19; the kynges metynge Pharao, *Chaucer*, V. 163; that was the kynge Priamus sone of Troye, *ibid.* IV. 108; and byd him that on alle thynge That he take up Seys body, the kynge, *ibid.* V. 159; the faire yonge Ypsiphile the shene That whilom Thoas doughter was the kynge, *ibid.* V. 321; to praye for my lordes soule,—Sir Thomas West, *Early English Wills*, 7/4, 5; on þe maydenys halfe Blanchflowre,—Zupitza, *Guy of Warwick*, 687; the dewkys men Segwyne, *ibid.* 2427; my lordes sone þe emperowre, *ibid.* 2827; the erlys doghtur Rohawte, *ibid.* 4005; the erlys sone Awbrye, *ibid.* 4339, 5352, 6054, etc.; goddes sone of heuen,—Perry, *Religious Pieces*, p. 2.

Caxton: for syn that he was departed from *his fadres house*, *the kynge of fryse*, [he] had nothre eten nor dronken, *Blanchardyn*, 31/21; but wel he tolde hym that he sholde be well lodged in *the prouostys house of the towne*,—*ibid.* 46/3; here foloweth the ballade that was wryton vpon the gate of *the prouostis place of Tourmaday*,—*ibid.* 46/21; for right moche he desyred to shewe hymself, for *his ladyes loue*, *doughter to kyng Alymodes*,—*ibid.* 83/9; the *kynges sone of Irelond*,—*Morte Darthur*, 80/23; I loue Gweneuer, the *kynges doughter Lodegrean*,—*ibid.* 100/15; his name is syr gauayne *kyng Lots sone of Orkeney*,—*ibid.* 108/37; I am the *lordes doughter of this castel*,—*ibid.* 127/30; his name is Marhaus the *kynges sone of Irelond*,—*ibid.* 141/4; for the *kynges loue of heuen*,—*ibid.* 177/32; he sawe his *broders sheld syr Lyonel*,—*ibid.* 185/6, etc.; of the *kyngis deth of Armenye*,—*Melusine*, 178/14.

There are also two instances of the modern construction:—

(They) gaff eche other soo vnmesurable strokes that the *kynge of Polonye spere* brake al to peces, *Blanchardyn*, 108/1; they fonde three of þe *kynge of frysys seruauntes*,—*ibid.* 112/17.

§ 49. *Contraction.*

Instead of saying 'the father came, and the son came,' as primitive tribes still do, we use the contraction 'the father and the son came.' Caxton exhibits several interesting traces of that stage of the language, which takes the middle course between the [illegible] repetition (anaphora), and the modern contraction.

1. Two adjectives and one noun:—

2. Adjectives referring to preceding nouns are not yet followed by *one*. *See* p. xxviii.

3. The personal pronoun, when a subject, is still very often omitted. *See* p. xxxiii.

4. *Self* is still considered an adjective, as seen by the 3rd person plural: *themselfe*, never *themselves*. The latter becomes the rule about the middle of the sixteenth century.

5. *Who* (in the nominative) as a relative pronoun is still unknown.

6. The indefinite pronoun *one* is not yet used; in its stead we find *men*. *See* p. xlvi, § 15.

7. Constructions like 'we are banished the court' are not yet in use; there seems to be still a rigid observance of the difference between transitive and intransitive verbs, with regard to the passive voice. *See* p. lv.

8. Agreement between tenses (*consecutia temporum*) is not yet strictly observed. *See* p. lviii.

9. The infinitive absolute is still in use. *See* p. lxvi.

10. The arrangement of words is much more free than in later times. *See* pp. ci—cix.

APPENDIX.

I. CAXTON AS A TRANSLATOR. HIS STYLE.

'In his translation of this work, Caxton shows himself piously literal. Words and phrases, both foreign and unusual, he transferred bodily to his text; nothing ever deterred him, simply because it was French; he wandered along every winding of the sentences he was rendering, and brought them over with all their sinuosities into English. In consequence, his translation is perhaps one of the most literal that has ever been produced in the English language; and though to some extent stilted and even awkward, yet it is impossible not to admire his faithfulness to his original; and the very quaintness of those peculiarities of language sometimes adds a charm to his composition.'—Octavia Richardson, in the Introduction to her edition of *The Four Sonnes of Aymon*, E. E. T. Soc., p. vii.

I don't think Caxton was such a pious slave. His translation of *Blanchardyn*, no doubt, is as 'quaint' and even as 'awkward' as that of *The Four Sonnes of Aymon;* but I cannot admit Miss Octavia Richardson's statement with regard to his 'piety.' On the other hand, I contend that he was as good and free a translator as any of the 15th century, and in his style certainly not inferior to Peacock, the greatest prosaist of his time.

What makes Caxton's style appear so awkward in the eyes of a modern reader, is his repetitions, tautologies, and anacolutha. But these irregularities are, for the most part, conscious sins, committed not only by him, but also by all the writers of his time. Read the following sentences from Malory, whose like never occurs in *Blanchardyn* or *Aymon*, and you will admit that Caxton was a very able translator, for his time:—

Well, saide Merlyn / I knowe whome thou sekest / for thou sekest Merlyn / therfore seke no ferther / for I am he, *Morte Darthur*, 36/16—18; and moche blood they bledde bothe / that al the place there as they faught was ouer bledde with blood, *ibid.* 71/26—28; but traueilynge men are ofte wery, and their horses to / but though my hors be wery / my hert is not wery, *ibid.* 96/21—23; for I haue sene many of their sheldes that I knowe on yonder tree / there is kayes shelde / & sir braundeles sheld / and syr Marhaus sheld, and syre Galyndes shelde, and syre Bryan de lystnoyse sheld, and syr Alydukes sheld with many mo, *ibid.* 195/36, 196/4; and toke his swerd redy in his hand, redy vnto bataylle / and they were al armed in black harneis redy with her sheldes, *ibid.* 206/18—20; but alweyes quene gweneuer preysed syr kay for his dedes / and sayd what lady that ye loue / and she loue yow not ageyne, she were gretely to blame, *ibid.* 122/15—17; thenne ther was a lady in that countrey that had loued kynge Melyodas longe / And by no meane she neuer coude gete his loue; therfore she lete ordeyne vpon a day as kynge Melyodas rode on huntynge / for he was a grete chacer / and there by an enchauntement she made hym chace an herte by hym self alone / til that he came to an old castel, *ibid.* 273/19—25; but as yet he may not yet sytt sure on horsbak / for he that shalle be a good horsman / hit must come of vsage and excercyse, *ibid.* 344/23—25; and as she wold haue ranne vpon the swerd, and to haue slayne herself / alle this aspyed kyng Marke / how she kneled doune and saide / swete lord Ihesu haue mercy vpon me, *ibid.* 368/34, 369/2; now maye ye saye, sayd syr launcelot vnto youre frendes, how & who hath delyuered you, *ibid.* 199/24—26; thenne syr, he sayd, my name is Garoth, and broder vnto syr Gawayn of fader and moder,

ibid. 218/21, 22; fy on you bothe, said sir Gahoryse, for a fals traitour / and fals treason hast thou wrou3t / and he both vnder the fayned chere that ye made vs, *ibid.* 403/29—31; but the Kynge of Irland whos name was Marhalt, and fader to the good knyghte sir Marhaus that sire Tristram slewe, had alle the speche that sir Tristram myghte here it, *ibid.* 529/19—22; he told he of whens he was / and sone vnto Launcelot, *ibid.* 622/3, 4.

Of course, Caxton followed the drift of the narrative in his original as closely as possible; but so far as I am aware, there is no ground whatever for supposing that he slavishly sacrificed the genius of his native language to Latin or French. It will be seen by the Introduction that Caxton's Syntax is essentially English, as much so as that of Chaucer and Gower; his arrangement of words is, in spite of his original, truly Saxon; and even in his introduction of foreign words, he only continued what the preceding centuries had begun.

There are a very few decided Frenchisms in *Blanchardyn;* but these are rather slips of the pen, than intended or conscious innovations. Such are *require, demand*, governing the dative case, see § 6, p. xxiii; *swear*, with the accusative, *see* § 7, p. xxiv, *A;* the article used in the vocative case, § 7, *a;* the *his*, § 7, *b*, p. xxvi. Cf. Dr. Furnivall, Introduction to *Eneydos*, p. xix.

As strong evidence against Miss Richardson's opinion, I quote the fact that there is not one instance of the French *moi* = *I* being translated by 'me'! *See* § 4, p. xi. With regard to Caxton's style, its main feature is the *tiresome tautology*, which is apparently produced by the translator's desire to make as much as he could of his work, to render it as showy as possible;[1] his whole age was affected by this fashion of intolerable verbosity: to convey an idea through the medium of as many words as possible was considered as a beauty of style.

This appears first in the choice of words. Generally, one French expression is rendered by two consecutive synonyms; sometimes the first of these is the word of the original, sometimes another; sometimes one is French, the other Saxon; sometimes one strange, the other familiar:—

[1] Compare the American girl who liked creaky shoes because they announced her coming and made folk look at her.

Regned in fryse a kynge of right *benewred* and *happy* fame (orig. de tres horeuse renomme), *Blanchardyn*, 11/10; but *priuated* and *voyde* he was of the right desyred felicite, 12/1; of *lignage* or *yssue* of his bodye (orig. lignie), 12/2; I leue to telle the *bewayllyngis* and *lamentaciouns* (orig. regretz), 12/4; *by her self al alone in solytary places* (orig. en lieux solitaires), 12/6; now it is soo that atte *his byrthe and comyng in to* this world (orig. a laduenement duquel), 12/12; *sourded* and *rose vp* (orig. sourdy), 12/14; *prest and redy* (orig. preste), 23/20; by his *behauoure and contenaunce*, men myght well knowe that he was departed and come of *noble extraction* and *hyghe parentage* (orig. haulte lignee), 50/16, 18; I holde hym so courtoys and *dyscret*, or *wyse*, 54/27; for bothe of hem *loued* sore blanchardyn, and right *enamored* they were ouer hym, 66/24; *Amoures* or *loue* serued her wyth a messe, 67/17; she sette neuere nought by *amours* and *loue*, 75/15; Blanchardyn *sawe* and *perceyued* the noble, 77/1; mouyd wyth *grete wrath* and *yre*, 92/7; she wolde not *putte in oblyuyon* nor *forgete* hym, 94/11; she myght *see* ne *chuse* the nauye, 135/28; she byganne to *chuse* and *perceyue* the saylles, 135/30; to gyue *socoure* and *helpe* vnto her, 150/16; the grete *malyuolence* or *euyll wylle*, 153/21; (the proude pucelle) mounted vp to a high toure for to *see* and *beholde* the batayl, 163/14; right grete was the *effucyon* or *shedyng* of blode, 165/22; wythout *answer* nor replye, 189/32.

It is, however, worth noting that the original too sometimes indulges in slight tautologies :—

Pourquay ne a quelle cause, 22/20; ne le sceut ne peult, 52/21, 66/10, 103/5, 122/20.

A second sort of tautology is Caxton's additions of his own, for which there is not the slightest necessity whatever. (But who of us doesn't like touching up other men's work?) Compare the following instances, to which many more can be added :—

Blanchardyn grewe in beawte, wytte, and goode maners *beyonde mesure, and passed all other of his age*, 13/10, 11; and recounted vnto him his mayster . . . the right grete valyaunce of Hector of Troylus, Parys and Deyphebus brederen, *and of Achilles*, 15/15; after, he demaunded of his mayster, the names *and blasure* of the armes, 15/23; wythout that ony body coude telle any tydynges *where he was becomen*, 18/13; thenne Blanchardyn, moued of pyte, *alyght from his courser, and* sette fote on erthe, 23/9; to thees wordes sayde Blanchardyn to the knyght, *and prayed hym* that he vousshesauff to helpe hym, 24/1; he sholde auenge hym of his enmye, *and that he shulde yelde ayen his lady vnto hym*, 24/5; and that he shulde therfore dye shamefully *in that place*, 27/2; and yf thou auaunce, *or haste* not thy self, I shal doo passe this same spyere

thrughe the myddes of thy body, 27/17 ; O thou proude *berdles* boye (orig. garchon), 27/24 ; (Blanchardyn) syn departed, sore troubled atte herte for the pyteouse dethe of the two *true* louers, 31/1 ; (he) had nothre eten nor dronken, but onely that whyche he fonde vpon the trees growynge in the grete forest, as crabbes and other wylde frutes *that are wonte to growe in wodes*, 31/24, 25 ; (a marener) brought hym a boote goode and sure that from the knyght *of the ffery* was sent vnto hym, 32/26 ; right well it were your fayt *and welthe* for to goo rendre your personne vnto her, 38/10 ; she rydeth the lytyl paas vpon her *swete and softe palfraye* (orig. sa haguenee), 38/23. Cf. 44/1, 4, 12, 46/18, 26, 50/10, 52/3, 55/13, 20, 56/21, 58/30, 59/11, 63/12, 64/6, 65/34, etc.

There are very few passages in which Caxton is less verbose than the original. Cf. 24/16, 44/6, 65/16.

There are also few instances in which Caxton seems to have misinterpreted the French :—

For syth that by fayre meanes thou wylt not yelde agen the pucelle, thou most nedes deffende the nowe, ayenst me, the right that thou pretendest vpon her (orig. Il te conuient contre moi deffendre le droit que tu y pretendez a auoir), 27/15, 16. Cf. 29/1.

The sudden transition from one construction to another is pretty frequent in Caxton, and seems, to a certain degree, to have been considered as a figure of speech. Compare the following passages :—

For I confesse me not lerned, ne knowynge the arte of rhetorik, ne of suche gaye termes as now be sayd in these dayes and vsed, *Blanchardyn*, 2/11 ; soo that by his dylygence taken wyth an ardaunt desyre, fonde hymself nyghe her and of her maystres wythin a short space of tyme, 41/24 ; O thou free knyght, replenysshed wyth prowesse and of grete wordynesse, haue mercy vpon our fadre, 49/15 ; (then sayd blanchardyn) that hym semed yf he wold be baptysed and all his folk, and to byleue in our feith, that the tempeste shold breke, 137/18 ; I gyue my self vnto you, prayeng that ye wol saue bothe me and my cyte, and to take vs in to your mercy, 142/14.

Against the first important principle of modern composition, the unity of sentence, Caxton often sins. Such strong *anacolutha* as the following would be impossible nowadays ; but Caxton and his contemporaries used them without any scruple.

1. A principal sentence co-ordinate with a participle clause ; a perfect tense being substituted for a participle, or having its conjunction and subject suppressed :—

The knyght thenne *beholdynge* the Iouencell Blanchardyn that right yong man was, and *sawe* hym alone, Rose anone vpon his feet, *Blanchardyn*, 26/16; and euyn at these wordes *cam* the prouost tyl his owne knowlege ageyne, and *vnderstandyng* that he had lost the felde for cause of the stourdy stroke that he had receyued of the spere of blanchardyn, And *sayde* in this maner, 49/22; Alimodes, *seeng* his enmyes cam a lande, and in so fayre ordonaunce *y-sette* of that one part, and of that other syde *he sawe* them of the cyte that cam wyth a grete puyssaunce vpon hym and his folke, It is well ynough to be byleued, that he was not well assured, 162/24; Alymodes *seeng* his folke lose grounde, and *were smytten* ded doun right by the hyghe prouesse and grete worthynes of blanchardyn, desyred sore wyth al his herte to joyne hym self wyth hym, 167/20; the kynge Alymodes, *seeng* his folke that fled, his cheff standarde ouer thrawen and layng vpon the grounde, His barons all to bet adoune, and also *sawe* that Impossyble it was to hym to escape hym self quyk from the bataylle, wherfore, assone as he mygt, or euer that a more grete myscheff sholde happe vnto hym, cam and yelded hym self, 195/16.

2. Direct speech interrupting an indirect one. *See* Noun Clauses, § 40, p. xcv.

3. A principal sentence co-ordinate with a relative clause:—

(She) douted leest he shuld sette his loue on one of the doughters of the prouoste, *whom* she hasteli sente for *and spake to hym* [= to whom she spoke] as it foloweth, *Blanchardyn*, 69/12; and of another part she sawe a grete noumbre of folke *that* retourned to the tentes, [and then she] *thoughte wel*, and also her hert Iudged and gaf it to her, that that was the worthy blanchardyn, 89/16; *how* sodayne toke leue of his fader the kyng, and [how] so *dyde* Blanchardyn, and [how both] toke the see wyth a grete naue, 125/16; he was cast in to an hauen of the see of the sayde lande, *where* he made grete wast, [where he] toke and slewe many men, and [whence] many *he dyde* brynge wyth hym prysoners, 145/15; certes, *who-someuer* brought her this sorowfull and pyteouse tydynge, I doubte not but that she shold slee her self, 155/30; he perceyued a right myghty nauey, *wherof* they that were comen vpon lande, *he sawe hem* in grete nombre, 162/3.

4. Other instances:—

(He) byganne for to desyre the goode grace of the same proude pucelle in amours, wythout *makynge* of eny semblaunt, *nor to dys-couere* [= or discovering] it to the knyght, *Blanchardyn*, 37/15; (she) commaunded hym to presente hit hastely from her behalue vnto blanchardyn prayng hym *that* for her sake and loue, *to dye* [= he would dye] the whyt coloure in to red, 168/21; whan the proude pucelle in amours sawe her frende blanchardyn departed from her

chambre, *where* she leued vpon a wyndowe that loked vpon the see, makyng full pyteouse rewthes for her loue that she sawe, nor neuer thens she wolde departe as longe as she myght see the shyppes, 174/28 [*where* she = she there].

II. THE MANUSCRIPTS AND PRINTS OF THE ROMANCE.

The story of Blanchardyn and Eglantyne, not being connected with the great epic subjects of the Middle Ages, viz., Arthur and Charlemagne, has hitherto been but very little dealt with in the literary history of England and France. We therefore seem still rather in the dark about the origin and development of the story. Up to now, the following versions are known :—

I. In French verse, all in MS. :

1. Bibl. Nationale, Fr. 375.
2. Bibl. Nationale, Fr. 19,152.
3. Turin, coté $\frac{44}{155}$ I K 35.
4. British Museum, Additional, 15, 212, ff. 197—266 *b*.
5. Fragments, communicated by Paul Meyer, *Romania*, 1889.
6. Fragments of a Middle High-German translation, or rather rehandling, communicated by Haupt, *Germania*, xiv, p. 68 ff.

II. In prose, 2 French in MS., 3 English in print :

1. Bibliothèque Nationale, Fr. 24,371.
2. Bibliothèque Royale, Brussels.[1]
3. Caxton, unique, 1489 (?) : here reprinted.
4. 1595, in two Parts, unique. At Britwell. For the full title, *see* p. 227.
5. 1597. Part I., unique : Public Library, Hamburgh.

In 1867, H. Michelant published at Paris an edition of the French Romance, *Blancandin et L'Orgueilleuse d'Amour*, from the MS. 375 in Paris, and the Addit. MS. British Museum. The Poem had before been analyzed by Emile Littré in the *Histoire littéraire*, tome xxii (1852), pp. 765—778, and Henry Ward has described the Museum MS. in his *Catalogue of Romances* in the B. Mus. (1883), i. 727-8. He says :—

[1] Michelant prints the chapter-headings of this in the Introduction to his *Blancandin*, pp. xiii—xviii.

Blanchandin et Orgueillose d'Amors. A poem of adventures, in about 4800 octosyllabic lines. *French.* 'Blanchandin is the son of a king of "Frise" (Phrygia?). He has been kept in ignorance of chivalry, till he sees some figures upon a tapestry. He steals away from home, and, after a few adventures, kisses Orgueillose d'Amors, the Princess of Tormadai (apparently in or near Syria), out of sheer bravado. Her indignation is before long changed into affection. She is besieged by another suitor. Blanchandin is taken prisoner. He is shipwrecked on the coast of India. In the end he returns to Tormadai with Indian allies under a Prince Sadoine, and they relieve Orgueillose d'Amors.'

M. Michelant thus sketches the contents of the earliest version of the story in the St. Germain MS. 1239, of the 13th century, which contains 4,826 lines (p. v—vii):—

'Blancandin has fled from his Father's court—where the practice of arms was forbidden him—to seek adventures abroad. On his road, a knight advises him to go and kiss, in the midst of her retinue, the beauteous *Orgueilleuse d'amour*, whose name denotes her character. This audacious deed stirs most highly the wrath of the young princess. She vows she will take astounding vengeance on the culprit, who has fled. She recognises him next day in the middle of a tourney where he carries off the prize; but the valour and good looks of the young knight make love supplant hatred in her heart; and the two lovers have just avowed their mutual feelings, when an old Saracen king (Alimodes) arrives, who besieges *l'Orgueilleuse d'amour*, to force her to marry him, in spite of her repeated refusals. Blancandin offers to defend her, and distinguishes himself in the fight; but, overpowered by numbers, is taken prisoner. In vain is the highest ransom offered to the Saracen king. He has sworn the death of his rival, and sends him captive to a King of the Indies, whose brother, Blancandin had slain in battle.

'During the voyage, a storm rises, which wrecks the vessel, and Blancandin alone escapes. He arrives safe and sound at the court of a certain King of Athens, who is besieged by a powerful enemy. Blancandin offers his services to the King, and frees him. The King, from gratitude, wishes to marry Blancandin [to his daughter?], but Blancandin, faithful to 'the Lady-proud-in-love,' refuses. He confides his secret to the King's son (Sadoine), with whom he is bound in firm friendship, and both embark to succour the still-besieged Princess. At sea, they meet some of her folk; and Blancandin, without making himself known, charges them to announce his speedy arrival, for the purpose of delivering her. But, in very sight of the harbour, a tempest drives them away, and Blancandin takes advantage of the terror of his companions, to convert and baptise them. He lands, with his friend Sadoine, in the very kingdom of the Prince

(Alimodes) who was besieging the Lady-proud-in-love, where his own Father was moaning in the direst captivity. Blancandin promises to give Sadoine in marriage the daughter of King Alimodes, a young and beautiful Saraceness who, in the customary way, at first sight falls in love with the Knight (Sadoine), whom she sees out hunting. Blancandin takes the city, kills the King's son Darie, gives his sister in marriage to his friend Sadoine, and sets his own father free. Then all retake the road to Tormaday, where the Lady-proud-in-love is besieged. She sends her Provost to know who the new-comers are, and to ask them for help. The Provost—who had formerly been Blancandin's host—recognises him, and announces his arrival to the Lady-proud. She wants to prepare a brilliant reception for him, while his foe Alimodes, on his side, makes ready for battle. In the middle of the fight, the Lady-proud, to encourage Blancandin, sends him her sleeve on the point of a spear; he redoubles his efforts, and puts his rival to flight. Alimodes re-embarks in all haste. And the two lovers, united at last, after so many thwartings, celebrate their marriage; and the wedding ended, every one, says the poet in concluding, goes home,

S'en vet en sa contrée.'

The end of the text is—*Michelant*, p. 208 :—

Et quant la messe fut chantée,
Tuit s'en vont en la tor quarrée.
Mult i ot harpes et vieles,
Et tantes melodies beles:
Tuit li baron del païs né,
Iiii jors i sont séjorné.
Au quint departent lor mesniée,
En lor terre l'ont envoiée.
Le roi de Frise s'en revet,
Et en sa contrée s'en vet.
Arriere s'en revet Sadoine,
A sa moiller en Cassidoine,
Des or a Blanchandins amie,
Sage et proz sans vilenie.
Blanchandins est sires et dus:
Li romans faut; je n'en sai plus.

Explicit de B. et de O.

This, says M. Michelant (p. vii) is the original story. But we have two other versions of it which run almost side by side, and differ from the original romance by an addition of about 1200 lines.

The second version is that in the Turin MS. coté $\frac{AA}{T\,5\,5}$, I K 35, a small quarto of the 13th century (copied A.D. 1331), of which the first Part may have been taken from the St. Germain MS. 1239, with a few copier's changes, while the second Part is singularly close to the 3rd version in MS. 375 (formerly 6987) in the National Library, Paris, which Michelant has printed. The Turin MS. (*Mich.* p. 210) ends thus :—

XIIII jors dura la cours.
Qant Blanchandins fu coronés,
Sadoines est arrier alés
O sa moillier de Carsidonie.
Ensi se departi Sadoine
De son compaignon Blanchandin.
Nostre chançons prant ici fin.

Explicit de Blanchandin.

The story of the later addition to the first version of the Romance is thus told by M. Michelant on pages viii, ix, of his edition :—

'In the fight which ended in raising the siege of Tormadai, Sadoine, who had slain the brother of Alimodes, was taken prisoner by the latter, and sent to Cassidonie [Chalcedony], to be there put to death. Blancandin sets out to succour his friend, and delivers him at the moment he was to be strung up on a gallows, notwithstanding the prayers of the daughter of Alimodes, who begged in vain for pardon for her spouse. Alimodes is conquered again. But, during the absence of Blancandin, his Seneschal—in whose guard he had left the Lady-proud-in-love—gets together the chief Lords of the country, and plots with them to carry off at once both the Crown and Love of Blancandin, that he, the Seneschal, may force her to marry him. Two vassals who remain faithful, conduct Orgueilleuse to a castle, where the treacherous Seneschal besieges them. They, however, find means to warn Blancandin, who hastens to return to Tormadai to revenge himself. The traitor flees,—pursued closely by Blancandin and his friend Sadoine,—and takes refuge at a neighbouring brigand's, where he hopes to get rid of the two knights who have isolated themselves in the ardour of their pursuit. They, though received with apparent good-will, suspect a snare; they persist in keeping their arms, in spite of the most pressing invitations to give them up; and, seizing on a favourable moment, they cut to pieces the band of robbers, and carry off their leader and the Seneschal, whom they punish with death. After this exploit, Blancandin returns to Tormadai, where he celebrates his nuptials and those of his friend Sadoine, with the greatest magnificence.'

Such, says M. Michelant, is the new ending of the poem in the MSS. of Turin and the French National Library, 375. The differences of it in these MSS. consist only in this, that in the Turin MS. the episode of the amours of Sadoine with the daughter of Alimodes, the first interview of the two lovers, and the combats which precede the taking of Cassidonie are treated at greater length, and with details which are not found in the other version.[1]

The chapter-headings do not agree, word for word, with Caxton's. They divide the Story into 3 Parts, and differ in expression, as the englishing of a few below will show :—

This present book contains 3 Treatises, of which the First speaks of the birth of Blanchendin; how he set out from the court (*ostel*) of his Father, and why; how he became a knight, and how he kissed *l'Orgueilleuse d'amours:* the which first Treatise is divided

[1] Does not this point to the Turin version being the later of the two?

into 10 Chapters, of which the First tells of the birth of Blanchendin, of the joy which sprang from it, and how he was put to study as soon as he was of fit age (*eut aage*), and how he got on (*profita*).

The 2nd Chapter tells how, on the information (*relacion*) of his Master, and also because of his own inclination, his departure is settled (l. 125 of the Verse-text). . . .

The 10th Chapter tells in what manner Blanchendin managed to kiss (*parvint au baisier de*) the Proud-Lady-of-Love, and of the displeasure that she took at it (ab. line 687 of the Verse-text).

The Second Treatise tells how Blanchendin came to Tourmaday, and how he fought his Host; how and by what means he recovered the good-will of the Proud-Lady-of-Love, and of the imprisonment of the above-named; and contains 16 Chapters, of which the First tells of the sharp grief that the Proud-Lady-of-Love made on account of the aforesaid kiss; of the arguments between her, and her mistress who comforted her (ab. line 710 of the Verse-text).

The 2nd Chapter speaks of the threats of the Lady-Proud-in-Love to Blanchendin, and how Blanchendin came to Tourmaday to lodge; of the Provost, and the verses which he found on the Provost's door (line 781 of the Verse-text). . . .

The 16th Chapter tells how Blanchendin slew the King of the Giants; how Blanchendin was captured; of the grief which the Lady-Proud-in-Love made thereat; how she sent the Provost to (*devers*) Allimodes for the ransom of Blanchendin; and of the refusal of Allimodes, and how he had Blanchendin shipt off (*fist enmener*) by sea (line 1903 of the Verse-text).

The Third Treatise tells how Blanchendin behaved himself (*se gouverna*) at Athens towards the King; of his return; of the conquest of Cassidonie; how he recognized his Father; of the victory that he won against Allimodes and against the traitor Subiien; and is divided into 22[1] Chapters, of which the First says that Allimodes had Blanchendin shipt off; and how, by chance, he (Blanchendin) was saved from the dangers of the sea, and pretended to be a Saracen (line 2119 of the Verse-text).

The 2nd Chapter tells how Blanchendin was retained by the King of Athens, and brought to good end (*lui acheva*) a war that he had in hand (*auoit*). (line 2285 of the Verse-text). . . .

The 22nd Chapter tells how Subien thought to save himself; and the way he was taken, and then hanged (line 5954 of the Verse-text).

We evidently want an edition of the Brussels MS., to show its full differences from Caxton's original.

As to Blanchardyn pretending to be a Saracen, the Verse-text says (p. 75) that after escaping to land from the shipwreck,

[1] Michelant prints xii., but gives headings of xxij.

Il est en .I. tertre montés :
Devant lui vëoit tors asses
Hautes, qui furent Rubien,
Un roi du lin Octevien.
Octeviens fu rois de Grece ;
Rubiens fu roi de Losgece.
Son barnage ot par grant poeste
Trestout ensanle à une feste ;
Paiens i ot et Sarrasins.
Lors se porpense Blancandins
Comment il pëust escaper,
C'arriere se puist retorner.
Diu reclama, le fil Marie,
Que il li puist sauver sa vie,
Sarrasin dist qu'il se fera,
Et lor langage parlera,
Car il set bien Sarrisonois,
Et bien Latin, et bien Grigois,
D'une herbe son visage frie,
Lors fu plus noirs que pois boulie.
A tant s'en torne le marois.
Devant sa tor sëoit li rois :
Il ot la barbe et les grenons
Dusqu'as orelles gros et lons . . .

To enable the reader to judge how Caxton's French-prose original expanded and altered the poem, the last 50 lines of M. Michelant's text are given below. The robbers arm to attack Blanchardyn and Sadoine :—

Lors sont li laron haubergié,
Puis issent de la cambre hors.
Selvains s'escrie, li plus fors :
" Signor, prendes ces .II. glotons.
Fremes les huis que les aions.
Si me faites cel pont lever,
Qu'il ne s'en puissent escaper."
Blancandins voit le traïson,
Et a dit à son compaignon :
" Companis, dist il, nos sons trahi.
Ce sont larron que je voi ci.
S'or ne deffent cascuns sa vie,
Jamais ne reverra s'amie.
Veïstes mais tele aventure ?
Mult par est fols li hom qui jure
De rien qui avenir li doie."
Lors recommence li harnoie.
Li larron les dansiaus requierent
Et cil as brans d'acier i fierent.
Au premier colp ocist Selvain,
Blancandin le fiert de sa main ;
Après a l'autre porfendu,
Et Sadoines i a feru
A une hace qu'il trova ;
.III. des ciés du bu sevra.
Que vous feroie plus lonc conte ?
Tous les ocient à grant honte ;
N'en escapa viex ne kennus.
Subiiens i fu reconnus ;
Nel vaurent pas illuac ocire,
Ains l'enmenront à lor empire.
Le matinet, à l'esclairier,
Joste le fu le vont loier.
Asses li font et duel et paine ;
Puis donent lor cevaus avaine,
Et de la vitaille au larron
Se courrerent li baron.
Asses orent, et un et el,
Et el demain wident l'ostel.
Si enmainent lor prisonier ;
Tant penserent de chevaucier,
Que repairié sont à lor gent
Qui d'aus estoient mult dolent ;
Mais deseur tot fait grant dolor
Ma dame Orgilleuse d'amor.
Mais quant son dru voit revenir,
A ses .II. bras le va saisir,
Et cil le baise, et ele lui.
Là s'entrespusent ambedui ;
S'es espousa .I. archevesques.
Ases i ot abes et vesques,
Et menestreus et ionglëurs.
.VIII. jors entiers dura la cours,
Et Blancandins fu coronés,
Et Sadoines s'en est r'alés
O sa moillier en Cassidoine.
Blancandins se part de Sadoine.

CHI FINE DE BLANCANDINS.

As another sample, take the incident of the kiss, and note how the prose writer has suppprest much of the Maid-of-Honours' talk, and has made Blanchardyn kiss Eglantine only once, instead of three

times. Orgilleuse's barons are talking of the uselessness of suitors courting their mistress (p. 22, l. 633):—

Blancandins n'ot soing de lor feste,
Ains chevauce, pas ne s'areste
Desor les mules Sarrasines :
Là chevauchierent les mescines,
Et si vont .II. et .II. ensanle.
Li damoisiaus mult biaus lor sanle
Et mult lor plaist à esgarder.
L'une commença à parler,
Cele estoit fille au roi d'Espagne ;
Si le mostra à sa compaigne :
" Ves quel dansel sor cel destrier !
Com a gent cors per embracier !
Ki'n porroit faire ses soulas
A son plaisir, entre ses bras,
Tos tans auroit joie d'amor ;
Jamais n'aroit nule paor.
Car plëust-ore au fil Marie,
Qu'il fesist de moi s'amie !
L'autre dist : " Ce seroit damage :
Trop estes de legier corage.
Si ne vous ameroit por rien ;
Mais en-droit moi seroit il bien,
Car il est biax, et je sui bele,
Virge de cors, gente pucele.
Si ameroit miex mon deduit
Que le vostre, si cum je cuit."
L'autre pucele s'en aïre,
Par mautalent li prist à dire :
" Damoisele, trop estes baude,
Et de vostre corage caude.
Se or le voloit commencier,
Ancui le porroit assaier
Laquels feroit mix à plaisir
U jou, u vous, à lui servir."
Tant se sont entreamprosnées
Que andeus se fuissent mellées,
Mais eles n'osent ; si se tienent,
Car Orgilleuse d'amor criement
Cascure forment le redoute,
Et ele vient après sa route,
Desor son palefroi Norois
Dont li resne furent d'orfrois.
La testiere fu bien ouvrée,
.I. fevre i mist mainte jornée.
Les clokes furent, et les serres,
Aportées d'estranges terres.
Li poitraus fu de mult ciere œvre,
Mainte escalete d'or le cœvre.
Toute la sele o le ceval
Fu covers d'un vermel cendal.
De jouste li fu sa maitresse,
Ki n'a perdue mainte messe
Et mainte voie de moustier
Por li et duire et castoier.
Blancandins chevauce par force
Tot .I. cencin, lés une roce,
Et vit Orgilleuse d'amors.
De li baisier fu angoissous,
Et dist qu'il nel lairra por voir
Que il n'en face son pooir,
Coique soit ore del falir ;
Miex en vorroit après morir !
Lors point son ceval, et eslesse
Entre la dame et la maistresse,
Jà nel tenra on por malvais.
Cele part vint de plain eslais,
Entre les .II. dames se mist,
Et de l'autre tant s'entremist,
Ains qu'ele fust bien acointie,
L'ot Blancandins .III. fois baisie ;
Puis s'en torna grant alëure,
Plus que galos ne amblëure,
Mais tant comme cevax puet rendre,
Car il n'a soing de plus atendre,
Mais de l'escaper, se il pot.
Ains se porra tenir por sot,
Se Diex n'en pense, qui tout fist,
Car Orgilleuse-d'-amor dist
Qu'ele jamais ne sera lie
Desi qu'ele ne sera vengie :
" Car il m'a faite trop grant honte.
S'il est fix à rois u à conte,
Si perdra il demain la teste ;
Jà n'en ert de si grant poeste.
A tant est këue pasmée
Del ceval, sor l'erbe enversée.
Mult en fu triste et courecie
Sa maistresse, plus ne detrie,
De pasmison le releva.
Oies comment le conforta . . .

Caxton's copy of his French original, which he sold to the Duchess of Somerset, and from which he made the present translation, was the same prose version which I have collated in Paris. In

the table of contents, in the headings of the chapters, and in the whole drift of the narrative, both texts agree; there are but very slight differences, pointed out in the footnotes, which may be either due to the MS. which Caxton had before him, or, what is much more probable, to the translator's system of touching-up his original.

The only known existing copy of Caxton's work, in the Library of Earl Spenser, is imperfect. All the text after sig. M.iiij., and one leaf after B.i., are wanting; they are now supplied from the French original. *See* pp. 34 and 211 ff. Blades thus describes Lord Spencer's copy:—

No. 78.—The History of Blanchardin and Eglantine. *Folio. Sine ullâ notâ* (1489 ?).

Collation.—Imperfectly known. The introductory matter makes a 3^{n} [ternion], signed **i, ii, iii**, the 6th leaf being blank. **A B C D E F G H I K L M** are 4^{ms} [quaternions], and there were probably several other additional signatures.

Typographical Particulars.—Without title. The Type is all No. 6. The lines, which are all of one length, measure 4$\frac{5}{8}$ inches, and there are 31 to a full page. Woodcut initials. Without folios or catchwords.

The Text begins on sig. **j** recto, with a prologue by Caxton . . . [and] finishes on the verso of the same leaf . . . The table follows on sig. **ij**, with a 2-line initial . . . and finishes on the 5th recto, which, however, in the only copy known, is unfortunately in manuscript. This appears to have been copied from the very rare reprint[1] by Wynken de Worde,[2] the last 4 lines being:—

'How Blanchardin wedded his love the proude / pucelle in amours: And of the grete ioye that / was made there . and of the Kynge of Fryse deth. capl^{e} liiij^{e}.'

The 6th leaf is blank. On sig. **Aj** recto, the 1st chapter commences . . . As to the date there are only the typographical particulars to guide us, which, however, all point to about the year 1489.

The only known Existing Copy is in the library of Earl Spencer. It is, unfortunately, imperfect, wanting the 5th leaf of the preliminary matter, **A**5, **Bij**, and all after **Miiij**. It is in a fair state, and measures 8$\frac{3}{4}$ × 6$\frac{3}{4}$ inches.

One leaf (sig. **L iij**) has also been preserved among the Bagford collections in the British Museum (Harl. MS. 5919, fol. 3 *b*), and from this our specimen at Plate LIV has been obtained.

[1] Why not from the chapter-heading on the last page of Caxton's Text?

[2] An imaginary book. I can find no trace of it in Herbert's Ames, Bohn's Lowndes, Hazlitt, &c.

SALE PRICES

Year.	Sale Lot.	Seller.	Amount. £	s.	d.	Purchaser.
1776	... 783	... J. Ratcliffe	3	6	0	... G. Mason.
1799	IV. 261	... G. Mason	21	0	0	... Duke of Roxburghe.
1812	... 6360	... Duke of Roxburghe	215	5	0	... Earl Spencer.

Blades, *Life of Caxton*, ii. 216-7 (1863.)

Of the edition of 1595—of which Mr. Christie-Miller has the only copy—there are, in the present edition, two long specimens under Caxton's text. Part I. of ed. 1597 is at Hamburg.

The shortest, and therefore the most ancient, version of *Blanchardyn and Eglantyne* is that contained in the MS. 19,152 of the National Library at Paris. In it the poet is kind enough to marry both Blanchardyn and Sadoyne after their return from Cassidonie, where they have killed Darie, the son of Alymodes, and conquered the entire kingdom. The whole story answers to Caxton's chapters 1—42, and half of 43.

The Paris MS. 375, and that at Turin, add the taking of Sadoyne in the Castle, Blanchardyn's setting out in order to save him and the treason of Subion, as related by Caxton in chapters 43—56.

Thus far the report of M. Michelant, in his edition of *Blancandin et L'Orgueilleuse d'Amour* (Paris, Librairie Tross, 1867), is right. But with regard to the prose versions he commits a very gross mistake. He believes the two only extant prose versions to be one and the same. After having given a description of the Brussels MS. he, referring to a short note dedicated to an unknown gentleman, says:—

'Nous crayons qu'il est ici question du Duc de Bourgogne, Philippe le Bel, qui à fait faire bon nombre de ces translations, notamment celles de Siperis, d'Hélène, d'Eric et Enite, que l'on trouve dans la même bibliothèque, bien que le second exemplaire de cette translation semble infirmer notre hypothèse. Ce dernier fait partie du fonds de Sorbonne N°. 466, petit in-folio sur papier, aux armes de Richelieu, de cent cinq feuillets à longues lignes, d'une écriture du xv^e^ siècle, qui paraît postérieure à l'autre MS. La table dont la première manque, contient en tout 54 chapitres sans division de livres; elle diffère de la précédente *bien que roman offre le même texte.*'

I really cannot conceive how the editor could venture to put forward such a fallacy. The prose MS. of the Brussels Library has

not the least connection with that of Paris. They are quite independent of each other, and differ not only in the Tables of Contents, but also in the text. The Brussels MS. is a brief abstract of the story,—as Michelant might have seen by the small number of leaves,—while the Paris prose version is a full rendering of the romance. Besides this, the former agrees with the poetic version as printed by M. Michelant, in every *name*, while the latter, or Paris MS., exhibits a most important alteration in the names of persons and places.

In the Brussels MS., as well as in Michelant's edition, Blanchardyn kills Rubion, the 'roy des Gaians,' and is sent by Alymodes to Salmandrie. During a storm he escapes, and comes to the shore of *Athens*. He presents himself to the king *Ruban*, who makes him 'senechal' of his army, against his enemy *Escamor de Beaudaire*.

This is quite different in the Paris MS., in which Blanchardyn is cast on the shore of *Prussia*, and comes to Marienburg. The king of Prussia is pleased with him, and appoints him (Blanchardyn) head-captain of his army. Meanwhile a wounded knight arrives with the news that the king of *Poland* has invaded Prussia. Blanchardyn, with Sadoyne, is sent against the Poles, and Blanchardyn unhorses the king, who gives himself up as a prisoner.

What induced the author of the Paris prose version to alter Athens into Marienburg? Probably he wanted a country better known to the people of that time as a scene of constant war, and in this respect his choice was very well made. After the Crusades to the Holy Sepulchre had lost their charms, the knights of England and France very often joined their colleagues of the Teutonic order, who were in a state of constant warfare with their heathen neighbours in Lettow (Lithuania), Ruce (Russia), and elsewhere. Compare Chaucer's description of the Knight:—

> 'At Alisaundre he was whan it was wonne;
> Ful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bygonne,
> Abouen alle nacioums in *Pruce*.
> In Lettowe hadde he reysed, and in Ruce,
> No cristen man so ofte of his degre.—The *Prologue*, 51—55.
>
> Forthy who secheth loves grace,
> Where that these worthy women are,
> He may nought than him selve spare
> Upon his travail for to serve,
> * * * * * *

So that by londe and eke by ship
He mot travaile for worship,
And make many hastif rodes,
Somtime in *Pruse*, somtime in Rodes,
And some tyme into Tartarie.'
Gower, *Confessio Amantis*, ii., 5 C.

I feel grateful to Lord Spencer and Mr. Christie-Miller for so kindly allowing their treasures to be used for this reproduction, and I thank Mr. Graves and the other Officers of the British Museum for the facilities they have afforded me. I am also indebted to Dr. Furnivall for adding side-notes and head-lines to the text.

Vienna, Nov. 14, 1889.

Caxton's

Blanchardyn and Eglantine.

c. 1489.

[DEDICATION.]

UNto the right noble puyssaunt & excellent pryncesse, my redoubted lady, my lady Margarete, duchesse of Somercete / Moder vnto our naturel & souerayn lord and most Crysten Kynge henry þe seuenth, by the grace of god, Kyng of englonde & of ffraunce, lord of yrelonde, & *cetera*, I, wyllyam caxton, his most Indygne humble subgette and lytil seruaunt, presente this lytyl book vnto the noble grace of my sayd lady. whiche boke I late receyued in frenshe from her good grace, and her commaundement wyth alle / for to reduce & translate it in to our maternal & englysh tonge / whiche boke I had longe to fore solde to my sayd lady, and knewe wel that the storye of hit was honeste & Ioyefull to all vertuouse yong noble gentylmen & wymmen for to rede therin, as for their passe tyme; for vnder correction, in my Iugement / it is as requesyte other whyle to rede in Auncyent hystoryes of noble fayttes & valiaunt actes of armes & warre, whiche haue ben achyeued in olde tyme of many noble prynces, lordes, & knyghtes / as wel for to see & knowe their walyauntnes for to stande in the specyal grace & loue of their ladyes, And in lykewyse for gentyl yonge ladyes & damoysellys, for to lerne to be stedfaste & constaunt in their parte to theym that they ones haue promysed and agreed to suche as haue putte their lyues ofte in Ieopardye for to playse theym to stande in grace, As it is to occupye theym and studye ouer moche in bokes of contemplacion; wherfore, at thynstaunce and requeste of my sayd lady, whiche I repute as for a commaundemente, I haue reduced this sayd boke out of frenshe in to our englyshe: whiche boke specyfyeth of the noble actes and fayttes of warre, achyeued by a noble and victorious prynce named Blanchardin, sone vnto the kynge of Fryse / for the loue of a noble pryncesse

callyd Eglantyne, other wyse named in frensche 'lorguylleuse damours,' whiche is as moche to saye in englyshe, as the proude lady of loue, quene of tormaday: And of the grete aduentures, labours, anguysshes / and many other grete dyseases of theym bothe, to-fore they myghte atteyne for to come to the fynall conclusion of their desired loue / as alonge by the grace of god it shall be shewed in thistorye of thys present book / Bysechynge my sayd ladyes bountyuous grace to receyue this lityll boke in gree of me, her humble seruaunt / and to pardoune me of the rude and comyn englyshe, where as shall be found faulte; For I confesse me not lerned, ne knowynge the arte of rethoryk / ne of suche gaye termes as now be sayd in these dayes and vsed: But[1] I hope that it shall be vnderstonden of the redars and herers: And that shall suffyse. ¶ Besechynge allmyghty god to graunte to her moste noble goode grace, longe lyffe / and thaccomplysshement of hir hihe, noble, and Ioyes desires in thys present lyff, ¶ And after this short and transytorye lyff, euer lastynge lyff in heuen. Amen /

[1] *Orig.* Bat

HEre begynneth the table of the victoryous prynce Blanchardyn / sone of the noble kyng of Fryse, And of Eglantyne Quene of Tormaday, other wyse callyd lorgoylleuse damours, whiche is to saye, the proude lady in loue.

¶ The first chapitre conteyneth / how blanchardyn departed from his fader and moder wythout lycence / ca primo [*p.* 11]

How to fore his departyng he deuysed wyth his mayster, enquyring hym of the bataylles of Troye the grete cyte / whiche he sawe in tapysserye, the fygures of the knyghtes, and other affayres.[1] capitulo ij°. [*p.* 14]

¶ How blanchardyn departed wythout knowleche of the kynge his fader, and the Quene his moder, and ledde wyth hym the beste hors & courser that the kynge his fader hadde, and his goode swerde. capitulo iij°. [*p.* 16]

¶ How the kyng of fryse sent out men for to folowe and to seche Blanchardyn his sone, and of the grete angre and displayser that the kynge & the quene hadde / cal°. iiij [*p.* 18]

¶ How blanchardyn fonde in his waye a knyght wounded to the deth by a nother knyght whiche had taken his lady from hym / And how by the sayd blanchardyn was promysed to rescowe hir agayn, & how he receyued thordre of chiualrye of the wou*n*ded knyght / capitulo v°. [*p.* 21]

¶ How Blanchardyn wente after the knyght soo ferre that he fonde hym, And wolde haue enforced [2]þ° lady of[2] the hurte knyght / capitulo vj°. [*p.* 25]

[1] *Orig.* affyares

[2–2] *Orig.* þ° of lady

Of the bataylle that [happed] betwene blanchardyn and the knyght, whiche soo longe fought togyder that blanchardyn slewe hym, and rescowed the mayden / whom he brought agayn to her loue and frende, whome she fonde ded, wherfor the mayde deyde for sorowe. capitulo vij [*p.* 27]

How blanchardyn fonde a knyght whiche sente to hym a bote to passe ouer a ryuer / and of the dyuyses that they had togyder / and of the good chier that the goode knyght dyde to blanchardyn. capitulo viij.° [*p.* 31]

Of the deuyses and fayr exhortacions that the knyght of þ^e^ fery gaaf to blanchardyn / and how he conueyed hym on the waye toward Tormady curtoysly / capytulo ix°. [*p.* 34]

¶ The x chapiter conteyneth how blanchardyn departed fro the knyght of the ferye, and went all alone after thorguylleuse damours. capitulo x°. [*p.* 40]

How blanchardyn rode so ferre that he ouertoke thorguyllouse damours, and kyssed her / For taccomplysshe his enterpryse, wherof she was in grete sorow / capl°. xj° [*p.* 41]

¶ Of the grete anger [1]& sorowe[1] thorguylleuse damours had of the kysse that blanchardyn had receyued of her, and of the complayntes that she made to hir maystresse / whiche dyde grete payne to appease her. capitulo xij° [*p.* 42]

¶ How after that Blanchardyn had kyssed thorguylleuse damours, [2][he] departed fro hir,[2] and rode thynkyng all on her, tyl that he cam to Tourmaday, & arryued at thostell of þ^e^ prouost, for to lodge there: [3]where as he dyd meruayllus armes:[3] Capitulo xjij°. [*p.* 44]

¶ How blanchardyn Iusted wyth the prouost and ouerthrewe hym; and by two damyselles, doughters of the saide prouost, was ladde in to their hous for to be lodged [4]honorably.[4] capitulo xiiij [*p.* 47]

¶ How blanchardyn was richely lodged and receyued in to the hous of the prouoste by his two doughters / and of the complayntes

[1–1], [2–2], [3–3], [4–4] Wanting in the French.

that thorguylleuse damours made to her maystresse, of blanchardyn. capitulo xv°. [*p.* 50]

Yet of the complayntes and grete [1]thretenynges and[1] menaces that thorguylleuse damours made to her sayd maystresse, of Blanchardyn / capitulo xvj [*p.* 52]

How thorguylleuse damours, after many remonstrau*n*ces whiche by her maystresse were made to hir, bygan to modere[2] her anger and hate, whiche she hadde toward blanchardyn [3]for the kysse.[3] Capitulo xv.ij°. [*p.* 53]

¶ How thorguyllouse damours[4] made thordynau*n*ce for þ^e^ defence of the cyte. And how the kyng Alymodes arryued & toke the porte nyghe vnto Tormaday, where he sette his siege. Capitulo xviij°. [*p.* 55]

How a[5] doughter of the prouoste brought to blanchardyn a whyte couerture for his hors, and gaaf to hym one of hir sleues, prayng hym to bere it on his helme / whiche he dyde [6]gladly[6] / Capitulo xix°. [*p.* 58]

¶ [7]Of the grete bataylle whiche was to fore Tormaday, ayenst the people of kynge Alymodes / And of the grete prouesses that Blanchardyn dyde that daye. And how thorguylleuse damours becam amorouse of hym. And of the deuyses whiche made to her maystresse [8]of blanchardyn, and other thynges[8] / Capitulo xx°. [*p.* 61]

How thorguylleuse damours, by the grete loue that she had sette vpon blanchardyne / by cam moche Ialouse / & [9]sore[9] doubted leste he shold sette his loue in one of the doughters of the prouost / for whom she sente moche hastely, & speke to hym [10]secretely[10] / Capitulo xxj°. [*p.* 69]

[11]Of the deuyses that were bytwene the prouost & thorguylleuse damours, & of the grete loue that she had sette in blanchardyn / Capitulo xxij°. [*p.* 72]

How the prouost retourned home, & recounted to blanchardyn alle

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2] et dechasser ensus delle
[3–3] Wanting. [4] apres pluseurs remonstrances [5] la [6–6] Wanting.
[7] Ay parle [8–8], [9–9], [10–10] Wanting. [11] Ay parle

that thorguylleuse damours had sayd to hym / & how she sent for blanchardyn to com to her / þe whiche cam, & of the deuyses, & how their loues were confermed. capl°. xxiij°. [*p.* 74]

4 How blanchardyn [1]retourned home wyth the[1] prouoste, and the fayr stede or courser all white, & of the sleue of cloth of golde, whiche his lady thorguylleuse damours sente to him / and of the grete bataylle bytwene blanchardyn & a geaunt, whiche was
8 slayn, & of the meruelouse prouese doon by blanchardyn: and also how he was taken. capitulo xxijij°. [*p.* 80]

How kyng Alymodes wold haue put to deth Blanchardyn / but at the request of his doughter fayr & good / respyted hym of hys
12 deth / and how thorguylleuse damours sent the prouost to alymodes to offre hym raenson for his delyueraunce, whiche wold not accepte it. Capitulo xxv°. [*p.* 92]

How daryus, by the commaundement of the kyng his fader, ledde
16 blanchardyn toward the kyng of salamandre / but the ship was peryshed, & all drowned except blanchardyn / whiche arryued [2]on londe,[2] & cam to þe kyng of maryenborugh, whiche reteyned him, & made him conestable of his oost / ca. xxvj°. [*p.* 94]

20 How a knyght wounded cam & reported tydynges to þe kynge of maryenborugh, that þe kyng of polonie, his enemye, was entred in to hys royalme [3]wyth a grete armye.[3] ca. xxvij°. [*p.* 100]

How the kyng of Maryenborugh delyuered his sone sadoyn wyth
24 fourty thousand men to blanchardin for to fyghte wyth his enmyes, and chased[4] them oute of his royalme. Capitulo xxviij [*p.* 102]

How blanchardyn & sadoyn wyth ther armye dysconfyted their ene-
28 myes. and blanchardyn toke þe kyng of polonye prysoner, whom he delyuerd to þe kyng of maryenborough: [5] ca. xxix [*p.* 105]

How daruys, sone of kyng Alymodes, by fortune of the see arryued in fryse / where he tok the kyng, fader of blanchardyn, and
32 dyde there grete dommage, and ledde hym prysoner in to Cassydonye. Capitulo xxx°. [*p.* 110]

[1–1] revint en lostel du [2–2] a port [3–3] Wanting in the French.
[4] jetter [5] et de lonneur quil fist a blanchandin

How dari*us* arriued in thost of the kyng his fader, where he was receyued with grete Ioye, bycause he brought grete foyson of bestaylle, & almanere of vitayll, [1]to þ^e^ oost.[1] capl^o^. xxxi^o^. [*p.* 115]

How the goode prouoste wente oute of Tormaday, And toke all the bestayll / that Daryus hadde broughte in to the ooste[2] / And ladde it in to the cyte, Wherof they hadde grete nede. Capitulo xxxij [*p.* 117]

[3]Of the complayntes that Blanchardyn made: And of the grete comforte that Sadoyne made to hym / promysyng that to his power he wolde ayde hym. Capytulo xxxiij [*p.* 122]

How Sadoyne toke leue of his fader and also Blanchardyn, and wente to the see wyth a grete nauye full of men of armes / for to socoure thorguylleuse damours / and of the goode prouoste whiche they mette [4]in the see, of whome Bla*n*chardyn was Ioyous.[4] Capitulo xxxiiij [*p.* 125]

Of the grete deuyses of Blanchardyn and of the goode prouoste / and of the lettres that he sente to thorguylleuse damours / and of the Ioye that she had. Capitulo xxxv^o^. [*p.* 131]

Yet of the Ioye that thorguylleuse damours had for the comynge of her frende [5]& loue[5] / & of the grete sorow that sone after she demened, whan she sawe the tempest & fortune that so soone put hym soo ferre fro the porte / Capitulo xxxvj^o^. [*p.* 134]

How blanchardyn & sadoyne arryueden tofore Cassydonye, where they fonde daryus, whiche cam and spake to theym / Capitulo xxxvij^o^. [*p.* 137]

[6]How bla*n*chardyn sleue daryus, & of the grete batayll where cassydoni*en*s were slayen & dysco*m*fyte, & the cyte taken / And how sadoyne & the fayr beatryce dyd do baptyse theym & their people. Capitulo xxxvjij^o^. [*p.* 140]

How bla*n*chardyn fonde ther his fader kyng of fryse, whiche ther was prysoner / and of their pituose deuyces [7]that thei had togyder.[7] capitulo xxxix [*p.* 144]

[1–1] quil ot amene du pays de frise a lost de soudit pere de quoy Ilz orent eu tresgrant dangier [2] du roy son pere [3] Ay parle
[4] en chemin [5–5] Wanting in the French. [6–6] Ay parle [7–7] Wanting.

How blanchardyn,[1] sadoyne, & the kyng of ffryse wente to þ^e^ see wyth a gret puyssance for to com to socoure þ^e^ fayr orguillouse damours, [2]where they arryued in thende wyth right grete Ioye, by the prouesse & valyaunce of armes that they dyde.[2] Capitulo xl°. [*p.* 149]

¶ How blanchardyn recounted[3] to the kynge his fader, & to Sadoyne, the beaulte and bounte of his lady: and of the prouoste whiche cam for to mete theym / Capitulo xlj [*p.* 151]

Of the grete Ioye that thorgulleuse[4] damours had whan she herd saye of the prouoste, the Ioyous tydynges of the comyng of blanchardyn, [5]her frende and loue[5] / capl° xlij [*p.* 157]

Of the grete bataylle tofore Tourmaday ayenst the kyng Alymodes, whiche was descomfyted / And of the takynge of Sadoyne: and of the sorowe that blanchardyne made. Capitulo xliij°. [*p.* 160]

¶ How Blanchardyn made hym redy, and toke his men in his shippe for to goo socoure his felawe sadoyne, whom kyng alymodes ledde wyth hym prysoner [6]in grete distresse.[6] Capitulo xliiij°. [*p.* 171]

How blanchardyn put hymself to the see for to socoure his sayd felawe Sadoyne / Capitulo xlv°. [*p.* 174]

How subyon, to whom blanchardyn to fore his departing had lefte the gouernaunce of his loue, thorguylleuse damours, had made conspyracion ayenst her for to take hir to his wyff, & make hym self kyng, [7]& of his grete alyaunces[7] / Capitulo xlvj°. [*p.* 175]

How the erle of Castelforde: the prouoste, and the knyght of the ferye, toke and ledde the lady by force to castelforde, maulgre subyon & alle his puyssaunce. capitulo xlvij°. [*p.* 179]

How the kyng Alymodes arryued to fore Cassydonye / & how he spack to his doughter, the fayr beatryce. And for to doo her despyte / he ded reyse a payr galowes, supposyng to haue hanged theron sadoyne her husbonde. capl°. xlviij [*p.* 182]

How the fayr beatryce sente socours to her husbond sadoyne, & was

[1] *Orig.* banlchardyn [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3] *Orig.* reconuted [4] *Orig.* thorgullense [5–5], [6–6] Wanting.
[7–7] et ce quil en aduint

rescowed fro deth / and brought wythin Cassydonye, maulgre the kynge Alymodes / Capl°. xlix [*p.* 189]

[1]How Blanchardyn arryued in the hauen of Cassydonye, before whiche Towne he founde Alymodos the Kynge.[2] cap. l. [*p.* 191]

How grete the Batayll was bytwyx Blanchardyn and kyng Alymodos before Cassydonye, and how Alymodes was ouercome, take, & broughte prysoner into the Cyte,[3] & of the Coronacyon of Sadoyn, & of his Wyff Beatryse. cap. li. [*p.* 192]

How the proude Mayden in loue sent the Prouost toward Blanchardin, whiche after thees tydynges exployted so sore, that he arryued wyth alle his Exeercyte nyghe to the oost of Subyon. cap. lii. [*p.* 197]

How Blanchardyn and Sadoyne dyscomfyted Subyon, and of the grete bataylle and manere how he was taken, [4]and what followed after.[4] cap. liii. [*p.* 202]

How Blanchardin wedded his loue, the proude pucell in amours: And of the grete joye that was made there, [5]and of the Kynge of Fryse deth.[5] cap. liv. [*p.* 206]

[1] A leaf is out of the original. The next four Chapter-headings are taken from Caxton's text below. The last is from the edition of 1595.

[2] et se mist en ordonnaunce pour le combatre [3] et des nopces

[4–4] Wanting in the French. [5–5] et de la mort de subien

who has no child.

But after praying,

his Queen brings forth a son, Blanchardyn,

who is nurst by a noble lady.

uated [1]and voyde[1] he was of the right desyred felicite in mariage / That is to wyte, of [2]lignage or yssue of his bodye[2] / Wherof he and the quene his wyffe were [3]sore displesed[3] / I leue to telle the [4]bewayllyngis and lamentaciouns[4] that the goode lady, the quene, made full often [5]by her self al alone in solytary places[5] of her paleys for this infortune. ¶ But she, knowyng the vertuouse effecte of deuote and holy oryson / exercysed with al her strengthe her right sorowful greuous herte to this gloriouse occupacion / And after this fayre passetyme / by veraye permyssion deuyne, conceyued a right faire sone, whiche was named Blanchardyn / [6]Now it is soo that atte his byrthe and comyng in to this world,[6] [7]sourded and rose vp[7] one not acustomed Ioye and gladnesse of the kynge and of the quene, of the pryncis and lordes, and of all the comyn people of the lande / that Iudged hem self right happy of a successoure legytyme / yf vnto you I wold recounte and telle the Ioye and the myrthe that atte that daye was made / I myght ouermoche lengthe oure matere / Blanchardyn, the chylde, was taken in to the handes of a right noble lady of the lande [8]for to norysshe and bryngen vp.[8]

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] lignie [3–3] tres desplaisans [4–4] regretz [5–5] en lieux solitaires [6–6] a laduenement duquel [7–7] sourdy [8–8] pour le nourir et esleuer

---

attempts, [fauing in y[e] want of iſſue] to ſucceed him in his kingdome, wherof, bothe he and the Queene his wife, were moſt penſiue and diſcontented, and by mutuall complaints greatly bewailed this miſſortune. But the Queene, deſirous to fruſtrate the ſcandal that might aryſe by reaſon of her barrennes, day by day, (in moſte deuout and humble manner) ſolicited the Gods to ſend her a ſonne; whoſe dayly and deuout prayers, penetrating the heauens, by the permiſion and fauour of the Gods ſhe conceiued and bare a ſonne, whome at the chriſtning they na[9]med *Blanchardine*. This vnexpected ioy bred ſuch a contentment to the King and Queene, and a comfort to all the Realme, that after humble thankes giuen to the Gods, feaſts, banquets, and all triumphes were proclaimed throughout the Realme of *Friz*. And leaſt

[9] sign. A 3, back.

¶ [1]The first chapitre of this present boke conteyneth[1] how Blanchardyn departed out of the court of his fader, kynge of fryse / Capitulo. primo.

Hat tyme when the Right happy wele of peas / flowrid for the most parte in all cristen Realmes / And that moche peple dyde moche peyne to gadre and multyplye vertues / Regned in fryse a kynge [2]of right benewred and happy fame[2] / loued / doubted and wel obeyed of his subgettis / Ryght habundaunt of the goodes of fortune / But pri-

In a time of peace

reigns in Friesland a King

[1–1] Et commence a parler [2–2] de tres horeuse renomme

(*The first* 6 *Chapters of the edition of* 1595.)

[*Wood-block.*]

[Sign. A 3] ed 1595.

Chap. 1.

The firſt Chapter entreateth of the byrth of *Blanchardine*, his nurſſing and his bringing vp.

Mongſt many antient *Chronicles* importing the haughtie exploites of fundry nations, Lords and Princes, this ſtory of the valorous *Blanchardine* deſerueth greateſt commendation of true and perfect magnanimitie.

At the time when a generall peace concluded throughout the moſt part of Chriſtendome, when gentlemen and Noble Peeres made their returne from armes, and applyed them ſelues to domeſticall and cuntrie paſtimes:

There reigned a King in the Realme of *Frize*, redoubted for manhood and prowes, abounding in goodes and poſſeſſions, reuerenced and beloued both of his ſubiects and equalls, and moſt happie in all his

But he never bears arms or jousts,

armes, nor herde speke therof. Nor also had not seen the manere and thusage of Ioustynge and tournoyinge[1] / [2]And that was for bycause of[2] the right expresse commandementes of the kynge his fadre / doon to theym that hadde the chylde in gouernaunce / ¶ Notwythstandyng he lefte not to knowe theym / For it is sayde in comyn langage, that the goode byrde affeyteth hirself / And so dyde Blanchardyn / as ye shall mowe[3] here heraftre /

though he gets to know about them.

¶ The seconde chapytre conteyneth. how Blanchardyn by fore his departyng talked and deuysed wyth his mayster, demaundynge of the bataylles of Troye, whiche he sawe fygured in tapysseryes, And the signyfycacion of the names of the knyghtes, of theyre armures [4]and of theyre fayttes.[4]

One day Blanchardyn

IT happed that on a daye emonge othre / Blanchardyn fonde hym self in aduyses wyth his mayster, walkynge wythin the paleys. And by aduenture entred in to a chambre, hanged wyth right fayre and

[1] *Orig.* tournoynige [2–2] Et ce par les [3] *Orig.* omwe [4–4] Wanting in the French.

---

maturitie and riper age made him defirous to follow armes and feates of chiualrie, as heerafter you fhall heer.

[ed. 1890] *Chap.* 2.

How Blanchardine, walking in his Fathers Pallace, accompaned with his Tutor, he perufed in the hangings of Tapeftrie and Arms, the fack and diftruction of the famous Cittie of Troy.

IT happed on a day that *Blanchardine* and his Tutor, walking within the Pallace of the King his father, and ftedfaftly perving the abftracts & deuifes in the hangings, demaunded of him what warlike feidge and flaughter of men that might be, which he faw figured in the fame; and hearing his

riche tapysserye of the destruction of Troye, Well and alonge fygured. Blanchardyn, that neuere had taken theratte noo hede, Ryght instantly dyde aduyse and sette his syght toward the sayde tappysserie. And coude not merueylle hym self to moche, in beholdynge vpon the same, of the dyuerse and strange werkes that he perceyued. ¶ Thenne dylygently he demanded his mayster of the subtylnes of the werke, of thystorye and of the personnages / ¶ And first recounted vnto hym his mayster / the puyssaunce / the right grete cyrcuyte and the noblesse of the cyte of Troyes. ¶ And syn the horryble and merueyllous bataylles of the grekes ayenst the troians. the right grete valyaunce of Hector / of Troylus, Parys / and Deyphebus brederen / [1]and of Achilles,[1] and of many othre, Of whom he sawe the representacyon in the sayde tappysserye, that sore mouyd and styryd his noble and hyghe corage / And gaffe hym awylle for to be lyke vnto those noble and worthy knyghtes, wherof he sawe the remembraunces / ¶ After, he demaunded of his mayster, the names [2]and blasure[2] of the armes that the sayde knyghtes bare / that well and alonge dide aduertyse [3]the chylde. And for tabredge [4]longe taryeng,[4] to fore they departed fro the chambre / by thynstruction of his mayster, he was sage and endoctryned of the names and vsages for the moost parte of thabylymentes necessary, and seruynge

sees a tapestry of the Destruction of Troy,

asks about it,

and is told of the battles of Greeks and Trojans,

of Hector and Achilles,

their arms and blazons.

[3] A ij.

[1–1], [2–2], [4–4] wanting in the French.

Maſter ſo to blazon y^e^ warres of the Greekes, in this ten yeeres ſeidge gainſt *Troy*, gaue more diligent[5] attendance, eſpecially when he beheld the valiancie of *Hector*, *Troylus*, *Paris*, *Diophœbus*, *Aiax*, and withall, the ingenious capacitie of graue *Vliſſes*, the large cercuite of the Cittie, and princely buildings of the ſame, ſo that from that time foorth hée conceiued ſmall delight in any thing, [6]but only in recording the magnanimitie, haughtie courages, and the great commendations atcheiued by that victorie. Then queſtioned he with his Maſter, of the blazonry of armes, and y^e^ quartering of theſe coates,

[5] *Orig.* diilgent [6] leaf A 4.

to the werre / From that oure forthon the right noble Iouencel Blanchardyn concluded in his corage, that he shold fynde hym self, yf god graunted hym helthe, in som place where by experyence he shuld lerne to bere armes, and shuld exercyce and take payne and dyligence vpon hym self to knowe the wayes of the same, for the grete plesure that he toke in herynge therof speke, thynkyng in hym self that the vse therof shulde be to hym / ryght moche agreable and plaisaunt. And so thenne departed from his mayster more pensefull than he had be byfore tyme /

Blanchardyn resolves to learn how to fight.

¶ The thirde chapitre conteyneth how blanchardyn departed wythout the knowlege of his fadre, the kynge of fryse, and bare awaye wyth hym his goode swerde, and toke his goode courser / And of the sorowe that the kynge and the quene made for his departynge /

He goes into his chamber.

BLanchardyn, after the departynge that he made from his mayster, cam in to his chambre al alone.

---

which were portraied in the faid tapiſtry; wherin, beeing by him moſt perfectly reſolued, his minde was more & more inſtigated and pricked forward to atchiue the honor which others, in that map, had (as he learned) acquired, ſo that (all other pleaſures and delights laid apart) continually practiſed, both in action and in reading, the imitation of thoſe valorous warres; neither thought he any time ſo wel beſtowed as either in reciting, reading, or conferring of thoſe warres.

[ed. 1595] *Chap.* 3.

The deuices of *Blanchardine* after he had left his conference with his Maſter, & of his departure from his Fathers Court, without the priuitie of any.

B*Lanchardine*, beeing come into his Chamber, penſiue and ſad that he had not atchiued any enterprize, neither as yet had lerned to beare armes, by reaſon of the tender care his Parents had ouer him, concluded with himſelf the meanes of

And there al his thoughtes he concluded in one, for to fynde the manere and facyon for to departe out of [1]his faders hous, the kynge[1] / ¶ And it is not to be doubted / but or euere he myght come to the chyeff of his enterpryse, for to make his departynge, that his mynde was full sore troubled wyth al, bycause of the dyuerse and many conclusyons that his fantasyouse wylle dyde present by fore hym / Neuerthelesse, all rewthis[2] layde a departe, aswell for his fader as for his modre, kynrede & fryndes, as other Infynyte thynges that are wont to tarye þ^e^ corages of some enterpryses / concluded by hym self his departynge, wythout shewyng tyl ony body, & dyde so moche by his subtyll engyne that he gate a ryght goode & riche swerde,[3] that longed vnto the kynge his fadre, whiche afterward was to hym wel syttynge[4] / whan he sawe hym self thus garnyssed therwyth, he was ful glad / Thenne went he all fayre & softe doune[5] fro the paleys, euyn about the oure of mydnight: the mone shone bright & faire. Blanchardyn toward þ^e^ stables tourned his waye / where he fonde, standing aparte, the best courser of þ^e^ kinge his

Blanchardyn resolves to leave his father's house.

He contrives to get a good sword;

and one moonlight night

[1–1] lostel du roy son pere [2] regretz
[3] Alimodes fut desconfit prins et mene prisonnier en la cite et des nopces et couronnement de sadoine et de la belle beatrix
[4] bien séant [5] *Orig.* donne

---

his departure, and couertly practifed with himfelf fome fecret way for his efcape, leaft that the priuitie thereof beeing once difcouered, hee fhould be preuented of his purpofe.

In thefe perplexities and folitarye deuices hee fpent great parte of his time, fur-chanuged with exceeding anguifhe of minde, for his aduenterous flight; and fearing leaft pouertie might breed daunger, he purueyed him felf of a moft rich & trufty fword, belonging to the King his father, which when he had faftned to his fide, hee tooke more courage then before; then, pricked forward with the fpurre of honor and armes, he foorthwith left his Parents and people furprized with found fleepe, and about the houre of one of the clock in the morning, came to y^e^ ftable, where ftood many gallant & feruiceable horfes; but amongft all other, [6]hee chofe the courfer his father tooke

[6] leaf A 4, back.

fader, whiche was þ^e^ fairest & the best that coude haue ben founde in ony countrey at that tyme. So that for the fyersnes of the sayd courser, he was kept in a litil stable by him self, nere ynoughe the grete stables / The Iouencel blanchardyn, Ioyful & gladde, cam & entred in to þ^e^ stable, & sette the sadell & the brydell to the riche and myghty courser, vpon whiche right quykly he mounted; & smyting wyth the sporys, went his waye anone, to thende that he shulde not be herde nor aspyed of noo man. So rode he all that nyght, that was to hym of auauntage, for cause of þ^e^ mone that spredde her bemes abrode, wythout that ony body coude telle ony tydynges [1]where he was becomen[1] / Thus as ye here, the Iouencel blanchardyn all alone, wythout companye, departed from the kynge his fader / the whiche god wyl kepe & guide / so shal we leue him drawing on his waye, & shal retourne to helpe the sorowful kynge & quene for to complayne & wepe for thabsence of theyre dere sone Blanchardyn.

Blanchardyn takes his father's best horse, and gallops off,

no one knows where,

but God guides him.

[2]¶ The iiij. chapitre conteyneth how the kynge of fryse made to pursyew his sone blanchardyn, & of the grete sorowe that he & the quene his wyf made for hym[2] /

[1–1, 2–2] Wanting in the French.

---

greateft pleafure in, whome incontinently hee fadled and furnifhed with a mofte fumptious caparizon; whome, when he had made ready (as he imagined), hee led foftly out of the ftable, the Groomes, by reafon of their heauie fleepe, hearing no noyes at all.

Thus finding him felfe free, and vnfeene of any, hee incontinently mounted his horffe; and, beeing mounted on his back, he pofted away with all celeritie. But leauing *Blanchardine* on his iourney, that way which fortune led him, I wil make mention what pittiful complaintes were made in the Court after his departure, for his abfence.

[ed. 1595]

Chap. 4.

The pittifull complantes made in the Court for the abfence of *Blanchardine*.

[1] After the partynge that blanchardyn[2] made, that alone & wyth out companye rode lighteli, to thende he shold not be folowed of noo man, The nyght passed, & the fayre daye came, & the sonne rose vp spredyng his bemes vpon the erthe, The owre cam that euery man was rysen vp wythin the paleys / right thus as many knyghtes & esquyers went there walkyng & spekynge one wyth other, cam the yomen & grommes of þe stable makynge grete noyse & crye for þe grete courser of þe kynge, whiche that night was stolen fro theim. So moche that the bruyt & the tydinge therof ranne thrughe all the pallays. The kynge & the quene, his wyf, atte that owre were rysen vp, herynge the bruyt that there wythinne was made for that myschyef that so was fallen, & had grete meruelle. [3]dyuerse there / were[3] that vnto them brought þe tydynge of the same. but not long hit taryed, whan tolde and recounted was to theim the harde departynge of theire right welbeloued sone blanchardyn. þat al alone was gon no man knewe where. whan þe good kyng & the quene vnder stode þe voyce of theym, þat þe pyteouse tydynges brought vnto theim there nys no tonge humayn þat coude to yow recounte ne saye þe grete sorow & lamentacion that they both togidre made / & so dyde al they that were wythinne, for þe grete loue that they al had vnto þe Iouencel. but þe lamentable sorowynge that þe king & the quene made passed all other / for they were bothe fal in swone, so that no lyf coude be perceued in theire

1 A iij.

Next morning

the stablemen cry for the stolen horse.

The King and Queen hear of their son's bolting.

They weep,

and swoon.

[2] *Orig.* blancahardyn [3–3] assez fu

After the ſilent night had taken her pitchie Car to runne to our *Antipodes*, *Phœbus*, being mounted on his glorious coatch, entred the Horizon. the Groomes (according to cuſtome), comming into the ſtable and miſſing the Kings Courſer, ran heer and there, making moſt pittiful acclamations; which, being ſuddainly brought to the eares of the King, the whole Courte grew in an vprore what might betide of him, till being farther enfourmed that his ſonne *Blanchardine* was no wher to be found,

bodyes, but trowed all they that were present that they had be bothe deed, wherof þ^e^ pyteouse cryes, wepyng & lamentacio*n*s bygan to be more grete / so that thurgh þ^e^ cyte were herde þ^e^ voyces, wherby they were soone aduertysed, wherfor suche a sorowe was made wythin þe palays / in the cyte & thurgh al the royalme / wept ladyes / maydens / men & wymen / within a short[1] while þ^e^ palays and the cyte were tourned from Ioye vnto tristresse, & replenysshed wyth sorowe ful byttir. The kynge & the quene, after that they had layen in a swoune a goode while, came ayen to theyme self. And the kynge ascryed hym self ahyghe, saynge: 'O my rightbeloued son*n*, the gladnes and Ioye of myn herte, who moued you to leue me / and to parte soo? Certeynly I perceyue in me the shortynge of my dolaunt and sorowfull lyff.' After the rewthes and lamentacions of the kynge, commaunded expressely to al his barons and knyghtes in the cyte and thurghe alle the Realme, that vpon the loue that they ought to hym, and vpon asmoche as they entended to do hym playsire, That they alle sholde mounte on horsbacke for tenquyre and seke after his most dere and welbeloued sone, and to brynge hym ayen vnto him. Thenne were anone steryng out of alle partyes, knyghtes, noble men and burgeys, and they parted for the cyte, toke dyuerse wayes, enquyrynge in every place where they passed by for to here and vnderstande some good and true tydynges of the Iouencel blanchardyn. But so moche

All Friesland sorrows for Blanchardyn's going.

The King laments.

The King bids all his Barons

search for his son.

They set out,

[1] *Orig.* ashort

---

prefent fcoutes & poftes were fundry waies difpatched, to make inquirie after him; but all in vaine; for *Blanchardine*, being well mounted, rode fo faft, that before day he had gone abooue twentie miles from his Fathers Court. The Meffengers, defperate of his inqueft, in all places of their returne gaue ftraight charge to the inhabitants, that diligent fearch fhould forthwith be made throughout the Realme of *Frize* for *Blanchardine*, and hee that could bring firft tidings of him to the Court, fhould be moft amply rewarded for his

they coude not seke nor enquyre that euer they coude lerne nor here ony tydynges of hym, wherof alle dolant and confuse tourned ayen to the kynge of Fryse, that of this aduenture was full sory and dolaunt. And so was his wyf the quene. I shal leue to telle yow of the kynge and the quene, suffryng theym to demayne theire rewthis and complayntes vnto that tyme and oure shalbe for to retourne to the same /

but can get no tidings of Blanchardyn,

and come back to the King.

¶ The fyfthe[1] chapitre speketh how blanchardyn founde a knyght on his waye wounded to deth by another knyght, that from hym had taken his lady awaye.

[1] *Orig.* fythe

---

paines. But when a moneth was paſt, and no tidings brought to the King of his ſonne, Oh! the pit[2]tiefull outcries and continuall laments that both the King, the Queene, and all the Court made, was farre exceeding my capacitie to conceiue, & much more my pen to write. But the Queene (whoſe tender care of her only ſonne was greater then the reſt, vpon the preſent returne of the poſtes), founded with greif; and remaining in this extaſie the ſpace of an houre, at length comming to her ſelf, beganne her exclaimes in this ſort:

'Oh! vngentle heauens, by whoſe mightie powers all terreſtiall things are gouerned, what diſaſters doe you continually heap vpon our heads? oh! accurſed nature, that thus vnnaturallye thou ſhouldeſt bereaue mee of the ioy of my ſoule, when my only ſolace reſted in the happie ſight of my *Blanchardine*. and thou, accurſed earth! why haſt thou giuen him leaue to walke on thee, from the ſight of his Parents, whoſe ſolace is turnd to ſadnes, whoſe mirth to mourning, whoſe bliſſe to bale, whoſe happines to heauines, whoſe life to diſmall death? But, ah! fond Woman, what boote theſe booteleſſe teares, theſe vncoth paſſions and tragicall complaints, when there reſts no hope of recouerie?'

In theſe, and ſuch like extreames, the King, the Queene, and all the Court did ſpend great part of their time; and, in theſe agonies, I will leaue them, to recount what the aduenture of *Blanchardine* was.

[ed. 1595] *Chap.* 5.

How *Blanchardine*, hauing rode all night, found an armed Knight, ſore wounded, lying on the ground, &c.

[2] sign. B [1].

[1] A iiij

And how by the [1]same, Blanchardyn was made knyght, that promysed to rescue his lady vnto hym.

Blanchardyn rides by hidden ways,

AS byfore ye haue herde of Blanchardyn, that alone was departed wythout leue of the kynge, his fader, holdynge the couert wayes, because that of his faders folke he shold not be folowed or ouer taken / So moche and so longe a space he rode wythout fyndyng of ony aduenture that ought to be recounted or tolde, that passyng forth on his waye thurghe the londe, founde hym self in a hyghe waye brode ynoughe / that ladde hym vnto thende of a grete[2] forest, in whiche he entred and rode styl tyl the morowe none, wythout ony aduenture whereof men ought to make mencion. And so rode all nyght vnto the next morowe, tenn of the clocke. And gooynge doune from a hylle in to a valeye[3] / founde a knyght that lay there on the grounde armed of all pieces, the whiche full pyteously[4] complayned & made grete mone / Thenne blanchardyn, seeyng the knyght there alone taryed hym self, meruellyng [5]why nor what cause[5] moeuyd hym thus to sorowe and complayne. He stode styl, makyng humble salutacion vnto hym / and syth demaunded hym of the causes of his

through a great forest,

till 10 a.m.,

and sees an armed knight on the ground, moaning,

[2] *Orig.* agrete [3] *Orig.* avaleye [4] *Orig.* pyteouly
[5—5] pourquoy ne a quelle cause

BLanchardine, hauing rode all the night, and finding both him felfe and his horfe begin to be wearie, and not any aduenture woorthy recounting, traueling thorough a large forreft by many bye-paths (for feare of efpialls), chaunced at laft to finde a man armed, lying groueling on the ground, all imbrued in his owne gore, being by a knight mofte cowardly encountred; who not only had bemangled his limbes, but alfo bereft him of his looue and Miftreffe, which he had carried away [6]perforce. when *Blanchardine* beheld this mofte heauie fpectacle, allighting from his horfe, comforting the difmaid knight, holpe to binde vp his bleeding wounds, & withall inquiring of him y^e^ caufe of his mifhap,

[6] sign. B, back.

sayde sorowe and greuaunce / The knyght, right humbly and wyth a right lowe voyce, [1]as he[1] that hurt was to deth / rendryd hym ayen his salewyng, & well alonge aduertysed the Iouencel blanchardyn of his mysaduenture / shewyng to hym the place and the wounde that drue hym toward to dethe by the hande of a knyght that had taken his lady from hym, the whiche thynge was but late doon vnto hym. ¶ Thenne Blanchardyn, moued of pyte, [2]alyght from his courser,[2] and sette fote on erthe, and disarmed the knyght from his armures, and syth wrapped his wounde, wherof he so sore sorowed, and dyde couere hym wyth his mantell, axyng / yf he that Iniurye had doon to hym myght be but lytyll ferre goon / The knyght answerd and sayde / that he myght wel haue goon a myle and nomore / After this he toke hym self to syghe full sore, saynge / 'Alas! my right dere lady that so moche I loued / This day shal the separacion be made of the two hertes that so stedfastly loued eche other. I fele deth atte thentree of my sorowefull herte, [3]prest and redy[3] to make me pryuated[4] of the swete remembraunce of our entyre and feythfull loue / but moche more werse and greuouse is to me that by vyolent opressyon / that traytour that hath wounded me to deth / shall enioye youre youghthe vnpolusshed.' To thees wordes

who shows a mortal wound given him by a knight who took and carried off his lady.

Blanchardyn tends the wounded man,

who laments the loss of his Lady-love,

and that his injurer will enjoy her.

[1–1] comme cellui qui [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3–3] preste [4] *Orig.* pryuatod

& the man that fo inhumainlike had left him in this diftreffe. hee anfwered: "braue young Lord, I trauelling along thefe plaines, tending my iorney to my houfe, diftant from hence not paft two leagues, was on the fuddain encountred by a vilain, who not only hath left me mangled and wounded as you fee, but alfo hath caried by force from me my wife, whofe abfence will be the prefent caufe of my death, and whofe daunger brings greater forrow to my heart then all thefe woundes which I endure."

'Why,' quoth *Blanchardine*, 'how long fince departed hee hence, and left you thus diftreffed?' the wounded Knight replyed: "fcarce half an houre agoe, he tooke his way towards yonder wood, and

Blanchardyn begs the wounded man to dub him Knight,

sayde Blanchardyn to the knyght, [1]and prayed hym[1] [2]that he vousshesauff to helpe hym that he were doubed knyght wyth his armes[2] / and that in fauoure and com-

that he may avenge him.

passion of his infortune he sholde auenge hym of his enmye, [3]and that he shulde yelde ayen his lady vnto hym[3] / Thenne the knyght sore hurt to dethe, wyth grete

The Knight arms and dubs Blanchardyn,

peyne rose up on feet, & armed blanchardyn with his armes, & gaaf him þe necstroke of knighthode. & dowbed knight for to strengthe þe more the good wylle þat he had toward him / [4]that tyme þe[4] blanchardyn sawe hym self armed of all his armures, he was right gladde & Ioyous, & sore desyrynge for to auenge the dyshonnoure & shame that to þe knyght had be late don / He

who at once mounts his steed,

cam toward his goode courser, on whiche he lyght ful quykly / the shylde alonge the brest, & the helmet wel clos laced, [5]the spere on the rest,[5] & [6]his goode swerde y-girded[6] / Whan blanchardyn sawe hym self on horsbacke

takes a gallop,

& thus wel armed, made a tourne upon the playne for grete Ioye / & to þe knyght began thus to saye : ' vassell

[1–1] Wanting in the French.
[2–2] quil le aidast a adouber de ses armes
[3–3] Wanting.
[4–4] alors que
[5–5] la lance au poing
[6–6] sailly sur son destrier sans quelque auantage prendre

---

caried my looue with him." then replyed *Blanchardine:* 'I neuer yet until this day haue vndertaken armes ; but let mee requeft you to honor me with the order of knight-hood, and I will pawne my life to dye, or to recouer againe your looue.' Then faid the wounded man : "I will not only make you knight, but withall (if you pleafe) arme you with this my armour and launce, that fhall adde more ftrength to your courage ; and befides, I will exorate the Gods to fend you all happines, not only in this, but in all other your honorable attemptes."

'Sir,' quoth *Blanchardine,* 'I thinke me fufficiently honored by this your offer ; therfore difarme your felfe fpeedily, that he may not be paft recouerie, before I ouertake him.' So the wounded Knight armed him, and invefted him with the order of Knighthood. when *Blanchardine* faw himfelfe thus arraied, his youthly courage prickt him on ; who, taking his horfe, mounted the Saddle, wher brauely managing him vpon the plaine, to proue how well he could rule his Launce, found himfelfe (as he thought) fit for this enterprize. And

enforce your self & take ayen your corage, for, to the playsyre of our lorde, Your loue & lady I shal yelde vnto you this day / & also youre enmye taken or ded' / thenne brocheth blanchardyn forth wyth the sporys, his ryche courser, takyng his leue of þe knyght sore wounded, & kept the way that the knyght dyde shewe / ful wel & right fayre dyde blanchardyn conteyne hym self in his harneys, seen that neuer had borne non armes a fore, & right wel halpe hym self wyth his spere, & handled & tourned hit at his playsyre.

and spurs in pursuit of the knight who carried off the Lady.

¶ The vj. chapytre conteyneth how Blanchardyn went after the knyght so longe that he founde him, where he wold haue enforced the lady of the wounded knyght /

BLanchardyn, that wyth all his herte desyred to fynde him that he went sekynge, rode forth wythin the forest so moche, that he founde the foot of the hors of hym for whom he wente in enqueste, whiche he folowed ryght quykly, in so moche that fro ferre he entre herde þe cryes ful piteouse of a mayden wher by he thought and knewe for trouthe that it was she that he went sekynge. So tourned he that parte / & soone chose in the shadowe vnder a busshe the knyght that he soughte, & the gentyl mayde or damoysell dolaunt, & ful sprenct wyth grete teerys / Ryght fowly handled & sore beten by the sayde knyght,

Blanchardyn soon hits the traitor-knight's track,

hears the Lady's piteous cry,

and finds her weeping, she having been

---

fo, with valiant courage and cheerefull countenance, hee tooke his leaue of the w[ou]nded Knight, and poſted after the other, that had carried away his wife. He had not ridden long, but he perceiued the tracktes & footſteps of a horſe, that had lately gon that way; and, following thoſe ſteps with a ſpeedy pace, he heard the pittifull complaint that a [1]Lady made, to appeaſe the raging luſt of a villaine, who fought perforce to rauiſh her: whom preſently hee found, hid vnder the ſhadow of a leafye tree, beating ye poore diſtreſſed Lady, the wife

[1] sign. B 2.

beaten by the traitor for rejecting his lust.

for the reffuse that she made to his shameles concupyscence / Blanchardyn herynge the cryes, & seeynge þe wepynges, the grete sorowe & doleaunce of the vertuose and noble mayden / broched wyth þe spowrys & swyftli waloppyd that parte, tyl that he cam to the place where as the sayde pucelle cryed so pyteously / Where as atte thapproches that he made, said ful instantli to þe knyght:

Blanchardyn

'vassal, kepe þat ye nomore attouch þe pucel / & defende youre self from me. for hir sake I wyl fight with you in fauoure of þe good knight her true[1] louer / þe whiche falsly, as an vntrewe knyght, ye haue be trayd & wounded vylaynously, wythout a cause goode or rayson-

demands the Lady for her wounded lover.

able: so yelde ye her ayen lightli to me by loue[2] / & I shal lede her ageyn surely and saufly towards her[3] right dere loue.'[4] ¶ The knyght thenne beholdynge the Iouencell Blanchardyn that right yong was, and sawe

The traitor-knight

hym alone, Rose anone vpon his feet / all chaffed and full of yre, as half madde for the contraryte of his

fiercely refuses,

wylle that he founde in the same mayde, moche fyersly behelde blanchardyn, & sayde vnto him, that in vayne he traueylled for to require her from him for another / in sainge to him that of suche purpose he wolde ceasse, and that he shulde noo more speke therof, or ellys he

and threatens to injure Blanchardyn.

shulde shewe hym by his swerde / that the pursyewte that he had made and wolde yet make for her / shulde

[1] *Orig.* hertrue [2] paramour [3] *Orig.* toward hers [4] ami

---

of the wounded knight. to whom, making ſpeedy approch, 'vaſſail, (quoth he), deliſt from this cruell and damnable enterprize! for I ſweare by heauen, I will make thee repent this abſurd vilany.'

The Knight, ſeeing *Blanchardine* to be young, & greatly greeued for his ſodaine approch, made ſemblance of much wrath; but *Blanchardine*, with auſtere countenance & Princely voice, commaunded him preſently to free the Lady, whom moſt wrongfully he had caried away from her huſband, whom hee left almoſt ready to yeeld vp the ghoſt.

The knight, diſdaining to be ſo vpbraid by ſo yong a knight, beſtirred himſelfe preſently, and made him ready to the fight. But

be to his shame / And that he shulde therfore dye shamefully[1] [2]in that place.[2]

¶ The vij chapytre conteyneth and speketh of the bataylle that was made betwyx the sayde knyght and Blanchardyn. And so longe they fought that Blanchardyn slewe hym sterke ded / and reskued the pucelle, the whiche deyde for sorowe, bycause that she founde her true louer ded.

Blanchardyn

WHan blanchardyn vnderstode the knyght thus went thretnyng hym, and that so moche inhumaynly entreated the gentyll pucelle / sayde vnto hym, 'vassell, goo thou, and lyght vpon thy destrer. For syth that by fayre meanes thou wylt not yelde ayen the pucelle, [3]thou most nedes deffende the nowe ayenst me the right that thou pretendest vpon her.[3] And yf thou auaunce, [4]or haste[4] not thy self / I shal doo passe this same spyere thrughe the myddes of thy body / For thy lyffe is to me so gretly displeasaunte / But that it were for shame that I see the a fote, [5]I sholde haue separed alredy[5] the sowle of the / from the body.'

bids the traitor-knight mount, and fight for the Lady.

¶ The knyght, heryng the grete wordes of the Iouencell Blanchardyn / answerd hym, & sayde, 'o thou proude [6]berdles boye,[6] and full of arrogaunce, ouer grete haste thou makest to the purchas of thy deth whiche is right

He sneers at Blanchardyn,

[1] *Orig.* shamefully [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3–3] Il te conuient contre moi deffendre le droit que tu y pretendz a auoir. [4–4] Wanting.
[5–5] Ja te eust fait separer [6–6] garchon

(withall) commaunded *Blanchardine* to defift from his enterprize and leaue him to his pleafure, (or if not) it fhould coft him his life. *Blanchardine*, not able to endure thefe cruell menaces, willed him to addreffe him to the combat quickly, or he would send him, body and foule, to hell: wherevpon he furnifhed himfelfe to the fight.

sore nyghe, and the whiche I shal presente anone vnto the wyth the yron of my spere whiche is full sore trenchaunt' / ¶ Thenne wythout[1] moo wordes the

and mounts his horse.

kynght mounted hastely on horsbake, and toke his spere whiche he cowched / and cam gyuyng the spores ayenst blanchardyn, that had his spere all redy prest in

They charge,

hande / Soo ranne the vasselles to gyder, and roughte eche other by suche a force vpon the sheldes, that they

break their spears,

were brusen and broken all to peces; theire sperys (that sore bygge and stronge were) broke also all to pyces.

and fight with swords.

And thenne toke theire swerdes, wherof they gaaffe many a grete stroke tyl eche other / Blanchardyn [2]sore angry and euyl apayde[2] / of that he sawe the vntrewe knyght to endure so longe / approched hym self ayenst hym, and heued vp his good swerde wyth bothe his handes, wherof he gaffe to the knyght suche an horryble and dysmesurable a strok, in whiche he had employed alle his strengthe & vertue, that he detrenched and cut his helmet and the coyffe of stele [3]in suche manere

Blanchardyn cleaves the traitor to the chin,

awyse,[3] that the goode swerde entred in to the brayne porfended, and cloue his hed vnto the chynne, and syn wringed his strock atte the pullyng out ayen, that he made of his swerde. So fell the knyght doune[4] from

[1] *Orig.* wythont [2–2] yre et maltalentif [3–3] tellement [4] *Orig.* donne

---

[ed. 1595]

The combate betweene *Blanchardine* and the Knight.

THefe braue caualiers, being mounted, encountred eche other with fuch agility, that their fpeares fhiuered in the ayre; & each of them, admiring the valure of his foe, and finding their launces broken, they betooke them felues to their fwords. long remained the fight doubtfull, till *Blanchardine*, remembring the equitie of his quarrell, and the honor he fhould atchiue by this conqueft, with all the agillity and ftrength hee could, (mounting himfelfe on his ftirrops), fo feircely affailed his foe, that vnnayling his armor and vnlacing his helmet, he fent him [5]to carry newes of *Blanchardines* valure, to the

[5] sign. B 2. back.

his hors, [1]that neuere moeued fote nor legge[1] / The pucelle thenne seeynge that she was delyuered by the dethe of the knyght / wyst not what a manere she shulde kepe, nor how to thanke humbli ynoughe blanchardyn, whiche made the pucelle to lyght vpon the hors of the knyght so slayne and deed / fro the whiche incontynent[2] he dyde cut of the hed, & henged hit atte forende of his sadel, for to shewe hit to the knyght wounded, that he shulde take the more comfort wyth the ryght wysshed desyre of the syght of hys present maystresse / ¶ The noble pucelle, ryght desyrouse to here tydynges of her right true louer / demaunded of Blanchardyn whether he wyst not that her louer was alyue / 'Bewtefull suster,' sayde blanchardyn, 'that owre that I parted from hym I lefte hym strongly greued and sore hurt, but I hope that yet, to the plesure of oure lorde, we shal fynde hym alyue / ¶ So late vs ryde a goode paas, to thende we may gyue hym comfort' / 'Alas, syre,' sayde the mayden, 'I make grete dowte, seen[3] his grete sore, that neuer I shal see hym alyue / And yf thus it happed, that god forbede, I shuld quyte and gyue vp the remenant of my lyffe. Syth that we two helde but one party For our herte, thenne shulde be departed, yf deth parted vs asondre in takynge fro me my louer. and my parte shulde be wythout powere, and as Imperfyht drawyng to the perfection of

sets the Lady on horseback,

hangs the traitor's head on his saddle,

and says he hopes to find the wounded Knight alive.

The Lady answers, that if her Lover dies, she shall die too.

[1–1] que oncques puis ne remua pie ne jambe
[2] *Orig.* incontnynent [3] attendu

infernall ghofts: which when the Lady faw fo brauely accomplifht, fhe foorthwith gaue thankes to God and him for this deliuerie. Then *Blanchardine*, feuering the head of the ſlaine traitorous Knight from his body, hung it at the pombell of his Saddle, and ſet the Lady on the Knights horſe, and poſted towards the wounded knight. but on the way, fhee demaunded of *Blanchardine* in what ſtate he had left her knight? to whome he replyed, that though hee were greatly wounded, yet was he liuing. 'alas! (quoth fhe), let vs poſt to comfort him, with as great ſpeede as we may.' But approching the

his partye' / in suche deuyses as ye here, blanchardin & the maiden rode forth tyl that they cam to þ^e^ place

They find the wounded knight dead.

where þ^e^ knyght her louer laye, whiche they founde ded, & the sowle departed fro the body / whan the pucelle sawe her feythfull loue dede, of the grete

His Lady-love swoons,

sorowe that she toke therof / She fell doune[1] dyuerse tymes in a swoune vpon the corps or euer thusaunce of speche was in her restored for to complayne the intolerable euyll that for this infortune enuyroned her herte out of all sydes / ¶ And for tabredge, after the

weeps,

rewthes, syghes, and wepynges that so moche incessauntly or [2]wythout ceasse[2] / made the noble pucelle,

and falls dead on his body.

fell doune sterk ded vpon the stomak[3] of her most dere louere. ¶ This seeyng,[4] blanchardyn right moche abasshed hymself / and sayde in hym self that thees two persones loued eche other full truly. wher of moche grete pyte toke hym [5]in tendryng theym,[5] so muche

Blanchardyn weeps for them.

that the teerys ranne doune[6] from his eyen / & right muche dyspleased hym that he muste leue them there / Ryght gladly / yf he had myght, wold haue brought them bothe wythin some place for to gyue the corsses a sepulture, to thende they shulde not abyde there to be

He cannot bury them.

fode for birdes and bestes / But so ferre he was from all townes, that agrete day Iournay nyhe were there noo dwellers. wherfor it behoued hym for to leue hem there, seeyng that noon otherwyse he myght doo /

He takes off his armour, puts on his mantle,

But disarmed hym self of tharmures of the sayd knyght / toke ayen his mantell, and syn departed, sore troubled

[1] *Orig.* donne [2–2] Wanting in the French. [3] le pis
[4] *Orig.* sceyng [5–5] en soy rattendrissant [6] *Orig.* donne

---

place, where they found him dead, which fight fo amazed and difcomforted the forowfull Lady that, calling to heauen for vengeance on the foule of her aduerfary, fhe prefently yeelded vp the Ghoft; which ftraunge event fo amazed *Blanchardine*, to fee fuch perfect amitie to reft in two conioyned hearts, that leauing them, and difarming him felf of his armour (being to heauy for his cariage), he tooke againe his mantle, which before hee had left with the knights,

atte herte for the pyteouse dethe of the two true[1] louers. And also had wel in remembraunce the knyght that he had slayne. Blanchardyn, all mournyng and pense-
4 full, departed & went his waye / And from that tyme forthar began to fele a lytel of the state of loue / & praysed & comended hit in his herte, and was remembred of it allewayes / and goes his way, praising love.

8 ¶ The viij chapitre conteyneth. how blanchardyn fonde the knyght that made hym to passe ouer the ryuere wythin a bote[2] that he sent hym. And of the deuyses that
12 they had to gydre. & of the goode chere that the knyght made to hym /

Aftre that Blanchardyn was goon fro the place where he lefte the two louers wythout lyffe / he Blanchardyn
16 began to ryde faste by the forest, in whiche he was bothe the daye and the nyght, vnto the morowe aboute the owre of pryme, wythout aduenture to fynde [3]that doeth to be recounted.[3] Ryght wery and sore trauaylled rides till next morning, and is wèary and
20 he was for hunger & for thurste that he felte, For syn that he was departed from his fadres house, the kynge of Fryse / had nothre eten nor dronken / but onely that whyche he fonde vpon the trees growynge in the grete
24 forest, as crabbes and other wylde frutes [4]that are wonte to growe in wodes.[4] So longe rode blanchardyn by the hungry.

[1] Wanting in the French. [2] *Orig.* abote
[3–3] qui a raconter face [4–4] Wanting.

---

28 and pofted away. but, remembring this integritie of affection betweene them, he felt the fting of loue to penetrate the intralls of his tender hart.

[ed. 1595] *Chap.* 6.

32 How *Blanchardine* came to a riuer, which he could not paffe, and the knight of the Ferry fent him a boate to paffe him ouer.

forest, that in comynge doun from an hylle / [1]he sawe[1]
Blanchardyn sees a plain through which runs a broad deep river.
there vnder in a playn a moche ample and a grete medowe / thorugh which passed a grete ryuer wyth a streme, sore bigge and right grete / Blanchardyn, seeyng this riuere of so bygge a streme,[2] so depe & so sore grete, was moche abasshed how nor by what manere he sholde mowe passe hit ouer. So descended and cam doune[3] the hylle, and rode thurgh the medowe tyl he
He rides to the river-brink.
cam to the banke of the ryuere, whiche he fonde grete and large, wherof he was sore displeased, for Impossyble was to hym for to passe ouer, tyl that by aduenture,
A knight on the opposite bank
atte the other syde of the ryuere, he sawe a knyght armed of al peces, that went hastly rydynge along the ryuage; the whiche, whan he sawe Blanchardyn, anone
warns him not to swim the river.
escryed hym self hyghe, sayeng / 'vassall, beware, beware that ye putte / not your self wythin this ryuere by noo manere for to passe hit ouer / For nother ye nor your hors sholde neuer departe out wythout ye sholde be bothe perysshed. [4]Suffre alytel whyle;[4] For soone
A boat shall be sent for him.
I shal sende you a vessell [5]for to passe for you and your hors ouer'[5] / Thenne blanchardyn, herynge the knyght that to hym wolde do this curtoyse to make hym passe ouer, alyghted from hys courser, & sette fote on grounde. Not long he had ben there, whan toward
The boat comes.
hym arryued a marener, that brought hym a boote goode and sure / that from the knyght [6]of the ffery[6]

[1–1] Il choisy [2] *Orig.* astreme [3] *Orig.* donne
[4–4] suffrez vous [5–5] ou nef pour vous passer
[6–6] Wanting in the French.

LOng ridde *Blanchardine* through the forreſt, till at length he came to a high hill, at the foote wherof there ran a riuer, moſt deep and perillous; whether, when *Blanchardine* was come, he, trauerſing vp and doune to finde a paſſage, was eſpied by the knight of the ferry, and by him aduiſed not to venter ouer (in any caſe), becauſe there was no landing on the other ſide. *Blanchardine* alighting, thanked the knight much, & requeſted the boate to ſhip him ouer, which the knight of the Ferry

was sent vnto hym / he entred the vessell, ledynge his hors by the brydell. Thenne began they to rowe, so that wythin a short whyle they were ouer. Whan they were passed ouer, they founde þ^e [1]knyght, that awayted after theym, that well and curtoysly saluted Blanchardyn; whiche thanked hym moche of his curtoysy that he had shewed vnto hym, of his goode aduertysynge, and of the vessell that he had sent hym for to passe ouer the ryuer / ¶ The knyght wyth grete merueyll bygan to byholde blanchardyn. and the more he loked vpon hym, the more lyked hym to be a childe comen of a hyghe extraction / saynge in hym self, that neuer noo day of his lyffe, a fayrer Iouencell had he not seen / And that the disposicion of his membres Iudged hym to be a man of grete myght. ¶ After [2]he mynded and dyde byholde[2] his Ioyouse esperyte, & his assured contenaunce [3]and goodely manere,[3] that right moche pleased hym / So aproched him self nygh blanchardyn, and began to demaunde hym / axyng of whens he was, and whyther he wold drawe to / Blanchardyn full curtoysly answerd hym, sayeng / that he was of the roalme of ffryse; & by cause, thanked be god, that the marches there were in peas / he had sette hym self to Iournaye / for to fynde som contreye where werre was, for to proue his barnag, excercisyng hym self in the noble crafte of armes for tacquyre lawde

Blanchardyn and his horse cross in the boat.

[1] B j.

Blanchardyn thanks the Knight,

who takes a great liking to him,

and asks him about himself.

Blanchardyn says that he has left Friesland

to get some fighting, and practise arms.

[2–2] remiroit [3–3] Wanting in the French.

---

prefently difpatched away. *Blanchardine*, entring the boate, was by the in[4]duftry of two Mariners conducted to the further fhore; at whofe arriuall, the knight of the Ferry attended to receiue him, with fuch kinde and courteous falutations, that much encreafed *Blanchardines* loue towards him. and the knight, precifely veiwing the fingular beautie of *Blanchardine*, mixt with a kinde of maieftie and courage, requefted to knowe the place of his abode, and the caufe of his comming thither. to whome *Blanchardine*, with princely grace and eloquent fpeech, related at large the Cuntrey where he was born, & the aduenture that mooued him to trauell, which was by reafon

[4] sign. B 3.

& pryce as tyl a knyght apparteyneth / Thenne the knyght, heryng þ^e haulte corage & goode wylle that the yonge knyght Blanchardyn had, was [1]ryght well apayed[1] of that answere, and praysed & comended hym ryght moche in his herte.

The Knight of the Ferry is pleased with Blanchardyn's answer.

¶ The ix. chapitre conteyneth and speketh of the deuyses and fayre exortynges that the knyght of the feery made vnto blanchardyn, and how he conueyed hym vnto the waye of Tormaday /

After many dyuyses made betwene the knyght and blanchardyn by the shorys of the ryuere, the

[1–1] trescontent

---

that all parts about the Realme of *Frize*, were fetled in tranquilitie & quiet: and heerupon hee vndertooke this inqueſt, to acquire honor and fame by his Chiualrie.

The knight of the Ferry, much delighted with this braue reſolution, and highly commending the valour of *Blanchardine* (beeing ſo young, and yet of ſo haughtie courage), requeſted him home to his houſe, where bothe him ſelf and his horſe did reſt, and refreſhed themſelues for a day or two. Then *Blanchardine* (loth to linger, or make longer ſtay) craued leaue of his gentle hoſt, y^e knight of the Ferry, to depart; who, accompaning him a little way, diſcourſed at large the ſtate of that Country vnto him, and many other nouels, which heer after ſhalbe ſhowen.

[ed. 1595]

CHAP. 7.[2]

How the Knight of the Ferry diſcourſed at large to *Blanchardine* the ſtate of the Countrey, and the beautie of the Princeſſe thereof.

After this freendly repaſt, which *Blanchardine* had receiued with the Knight of the Ferry, *Blanchardine* riding ſoftly on the riuer ſide with the knight in his companie, requeſted him to enforme him of this Country, & the ſtate thereof, vnder whoſe gouernment it then was: The knight, moſt deſirous to ſatiffie *Blanchardines* requeſt, beganne in this ſort to vnfolde the circumſtance: [3] "This Countrey (quoth he) is called *Dalmacia*, wherof *Tormaday* is the principall

[2] *Caxton's Chap. xi. corresponds to Chap.* 8 *of ed.* 1595.

[3] B 3, back.

knyght[1] [*le mena en son chastel, ou Il fut receu en grant reuerence par la femme de dud cheualier / Se on pensa bien de lui et de son destrier pas nest a demander, Coer de tous les biens dont on pouoit corps dhomme aaisier, blanchandin en fut seruy ainsi comme bien en auoit mestier ¶ Blanchandin, apres ce quil ot mengie a son aise et que Ilz furent leuez de table, demanda et enquist au cheualier comment auoit nom la marche et le pays ou Il estoit arriue ¶ Le cheualier, oyant le Iouencel, lui respondy, et dist quil estoit seruiteur a la pucelle de tourmaday, qui estoit succedee a la couronne du Royaulme de darye, dont tourmaday estoit le chief et la maistresse cite dudict royaulme / dont assez p[r]es estoit marchissant vng roy payen tresancien, nomme alimodes de cassidonie, qui par sa force et grandeur veult auoir a femme ladicte damoiselle, lorguilleuse damours, et que pluseurs grans princes chrestiens eussent bien voulu auoir pour la grant bonte delle, et la noblesse de son royaulme qui moult est riche ¶ Mais par le refus que la pucelle a fait au roy alimodes, Il sest prepare et mis en ordre pour faire grant guerre a ladicte pucelle, pour ce que tant on luy auoit loee et prisee pour la tresexcellente beaute qui est en elle, et aussi les tresgrans vertus dont*

Blanchardyn is well entertaind by the Knight of the Ferry,

who is under the Queen of Darye,

the capital of which is Tormaday.

King Alymodes of Cassidonye wants to wed the Queen, 'The Proud Lady of Love' (Eglantine);

but she has refused him, and he is about to make war on her.

[1] A leaf wanting in Caxton, now supplied from the French original.

---

and cheife Cittie, gouerned by the moſt beautifull, chaſte & princely Lady *Eglantine*, who is now regent and Queene therof: and by reaſon that diuers Kings, Lords & Princes haue ſolicited her in mariage (allured through her magnificencie and furpaſſing beautie, which all the world admyreth), yet her chaſt life, beautified with virginitie, controles and countermaundes loue and all his lawes. And heeruppon ſhe is furnamed *Eglantine* the faire, Queene of *Tormayday:* yet the proude Lady in looue. But not farre hence there is a proude Panim King, called *Alimodes* of *Caſſidone*, that would haue enforced our Princeſſe to marry him, after the refuſall of many chriſtian kings: and by reaſon of her denyall, he is now preparing to inuade her dominions; and that which he cannot winne by looue and promiſes, he will attempt by fire and ſwoorde: for her beautie hath carryed

Q. Eglantine's beauty and wealth.

elle est aournee, La quelle, entre les autres pucelles du monde, est reputee la supellatiue / Se sa beaute, son humilite, et les biens qui sont en elle, vous vouloye au long raconter, trop vous pourroie tenir ¶ *Neanmoins Ia soit ce que elle soit telle comme vous me oez dire, si comme toute commune vise recite, on ne la pourroit trop louer et prisier* ¶ *La cause si est pour ce que elle na oncques volu ne veult prester ses oreilles aux offres, prieres ne requestes, que nullui ait fait en amours, tant feust grant ne bien adreschie. Elle en est appelee de tous princes pres et loingtains, 'lorguilleuse damours' Ia soit ce quelle ait nom 'englentine'* ¶ *Blanchadin a grant merueilles escoutoit le cheualier parler si gracieusement se deuisoit que le chiualer ne se pouoit assez esbahir comment le Ione chivaler pouoit auoir desia tant de vertus, comme de excellente beaute, gracieusete et prudence, dont a ceste occasion ne se polt tenir quil ne dist blanchandin* ¶ *'Pleust ores a dieu sire que ma maistresse, lorguilleuse damours, eust de vous fait son amy, par ainsi ce feust voutre vouloir et vous la deussiez deffrendre* (sic) *alencontre du roy alimodes'* ¶ *Blanchandin lors respondy au cheualier, et lui dist, 'Sire, Ie vous remercie du bien et de lonneur que vous me voulez; mais Ie congnois assez que vng si grant bien ne mest pas deu, et que oultrecuidance seroit a moy de y vouloir penser, veu que comme vous dictes, tant de gens de bien lont voulu requerre, et que pour riens elle ne veult oyr priere]* nor requeste of noon of theym / be he neuer of so grete perfection.' 'Certes' / sayde thenne the knyght, 'me semeth not / that this manere at long rennynge

She has shut her ears to all offers of love,

and is therefore called 'The Proud Lady of Love.'

The Knight of the Ferry wishes Queen Eglantine would love Blanchardyn, and let him defend her against King Alymodes.

Blanchardyn dare not think of this.

---

fuch prayfe and commendation throughout the world, that all the neighbouring Princes haue profecuted her loue; and euery one hath giuen ouer his fute, fauing *Alimodes*: & hee (I fay) whome no anfweres will fatiffie, endeuoreth to compell her to wed him by force. Now (if it fhall pleafe God) that you, by your haughty prowes and manly courage, fhall defend her from *Alimodes*, I doubt not but that

may endure the arowes of loue, ne hir dartes right sharp / som daye / yf god be plesed / shall not be ydle about her / But peraduenture she so quykly hitte atte her herte ther wyth all, that daunger nor refuse shal haue nomore lawe for to rule nor gouerne hir prowde corage / as touching loue. ¶ God gyue grace that this may be soone. and that he to whom we wolde wysshe moste good in this worlde, be cause of the reformacion of suche an obstynate wylle' / Moche humbly remercyed blanchardyn the knyght, excusynge hym self in dyuers facions by gracyouse langage of this thynge. [1]How be it,[1] that with in hym self alredy, by thadmonestynge of the good[2] knyght, byganne for to desyre the goode grace of the same proude pucelle in amours, wythout makynge of eny semblaunt, nor to dyscouere it to the knyght. ¶ After many wordes seruyng to the purpos afor sayd, and vtteryd betwyxt them bothe / the knyght sayd vnto Blanchardyn, 'Syre, ye be a right fayre Iouencell, and of noble representacion, well syttyng on horsbacke, and tyl a wysshe wel shapen of alle membres / And to my semynge right wel worthy to haue the grace and fauore of the right gentyll damoyselle, the proude mayden in amours. Soo thenne, after my counseyll, my aduyse is that theffecte that shal procede therof shal be to you

The Knight feels sure that Eglantine 'll be subdued by love some day,

and he hopes it'll be soon.

Blanchardyn

begins to desire the favour of Eglantine.

The Knight says he's a very good-looking fellow,

[1—1] Ja soit ce [2] Wanting in the French.

---

in time (conſidering your excellencie of perſon and princely behauiour) ſhee may conſent to be your wife:' 'alas, Sir (quoth *Blanchardine*), can you imagine any poſſibilitie in mee to obtaine her whome ſo many Princes of high eſtates haue vndertaken, and haue their intents and purpoſes annihilated? no, no, Sir, I neither can [n]or will preſume ſo high: but all the ſeruice that my abilitie is able to perfourme, ſhall reſt at her imployment and commaund.'

[3]'Wel, ſir,' anſwered the knight of the ferry, 'nothing is impoſſible in loue; and although ſhe haue been hetherto moſt obſtinate and peruerſe in liking; yet loue may chance to make ſeizure vpon her tender heart, when ſhee leaſt ſuſpecteth.

[3] Caxton, B iij.

and, if he'll follow advice, he may win Eglantine.

moche prouffytable / I haue told you her byfore, that the paynem kynge Alymodes apparreylleth hym self to make werre to my lady, my maystresse, the proude pucelle in amours, and commeth for to be-syege the cyte of Tormaday. And for this cause departeth now

She is going to ride to Tormaday.

my sayd lady [1]from a castell of hers,[1] not ferre hens, & draweth toward Tormaday [2]for to gyue a corage to the

[2] B iij.

knyghtes and other men of werre, that ben in the towne for the deffense of the same ayenst the kynge Alymades. Right well it were your fayt [3]and welthe[3] /

Blanchardyn must offer to serve Eglantine as a soldier.

for to goo rendre your persoune vnto her, for to serue her as a soudyoure for tacquyre praysynge of worthynesse and goode renomme, [4]that thurghe this cause shall mowe growe to your ward, somoche that the bruyt wherof haply shal come to her knowlege, vnto the preiudyce of her pryde dampnable / And to the felycyte of your benewred persoune[4] / deseruynge ther-by her goode grace / I doubte[5] not / but that ye shall fynde

'You will find her

her by the waye / Ryght nobly accompanyed of knyghtes and noble men, of seruauntes / of ladyes and damoyselles / And by cause of her delyciouse custume and tendernes of her selff, she rydeth [6]the lytyl paas[6] vpon [7]her swete and softe palfraye[7] / And of her custome

[1–1] dun sien chastel

[3–3] Wanting in the French.

[4–4] qui a ceste cause vous pourra accroistre et aucoꝛter tant que le bruit espoir viendra a sa rongnoissance ou preiudice de son dampnable orgueil / et a la felicite de vostre bieneuree persoꝛne

[5] *Orig.* dobute

[6–6] a petit pas

[7–7] sa haguenee

---

[4] And by reafon of the entire affection I beare you, (feeing you fo refolute to performe any thing for our Countries good,) If it fhall pleafe you to bee rulde by my aduice, I will vndertake that our Queene fhalbe your wife, and thus it is:

[8] 'The King *Alimodes* (as I tolde you) intendes warre to our Princeffe.' . . . [ed. 1595]

[8] leaf B 4.

whan she rydeth by the feldes awaye / she commeth allewayes behynde, ferre ynoughe from all her folke, hauynge onely besyde her a goode auncyent damoysell, whiche dyde norysshe her of her brestys in her moost tender and yonge age / And is called her nouryce and maystresse. Wherfore I counseylle you to fynde the waye and the manere for to haue a kysse [1]or cusse[1] of her mouth, how so euer that it be / Yf ye doo so, I ensure yow ye shal be the happyest of alle other / For my herte Iudgeth yf ye may haue that onely cusse / and ye wyll [2]but yf it be long on yow[2] / hit shal be occasyon of a loue inseparable betwyx her and you in tyme to come / How be it I knowe right wel, and make no doubte at all / but that first of all hit shall tourne / for pryde of her, tyl a grete displeasire vnto her, and shal be therof wors apayed more then reason requyreth. ¶ But care you not for that / ye be well horsed; passe forthe wyth the spore wythout eny spekynge as for that tyme, and ryde fast awaye, wythout taryeng, tyl ye come to Tourmaday / And whan ye come there, thynke to do that wher-by ye may be comended.' ¶ whan Blanchardyn herd the knyght thus speke, he was ryght glad, and promysed hym to do soo yf possyble were to hym, what someuere shold falle therof / ¶ And after the curteys thanke / that wel coude make, Blanchardyn [3]toke his leue[3] of the knyght, and of the lady his wyf, thankyng the knyght of the goode counseyll and aduertysinge that he had gyuen vnto hym / Thenne departed forth the chylde Blanchardyn / But the knyght, that was right curteys, guyded hym & conduyted a whyle, and shewed hym the waye that he muste holde for to furnysshe his entrepryse / Prayeng our lord god that a gode adouenture he myght fynde, as the herte of hym dyde desyre /

riding behind her folk,

with her foster-mother.

Manage to kiss her somehow.

At first she'll be angry.

Don't mind that,

but spur on to Tormaday.'

Blanchardyn promises to do this,

and takes leave of the Knight of the Ferry.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] se a vous nen tient
[3–3] voult prendre conge

and syn toke leue of Blanchardyn, and tourned homward ageyne /

¶ The x. chapitre conteyneth. how Blanchardyn parted fro the knyght of the Fery, and rode on his waye al alone after the proude damoyselle in amours, for tacomplysshe[1] his desyrable entrepryse, [2]as foloweth[2] /

Blanchardyn rides fast to overtake Eglantine,

Aftre that þ^e knyght was retourned home, blanchardyn bygan to ryde on a good paas, desiring with all his herte to ouertake þ^e proude pucell in amours, for to fulfylle his desyre and the promesse that he made to the knyght / ¶ So thought he moche in hym self by what manere he myght execute and brynge at an ende the werke that he hath vndertaken, that is to wyte, to kysse the proude mayden in amours, wherof [3] B iiij. in this manere of [3]thoughte was his noble herte all affrayed and replenysshed wyth grete fere lest he shold faylle of his entrepryse / For wel it was thaduis of

and is resolvd to blanchardyn that the thyng [4]ought well to be putte in a proffe[4] / syth his promesse was thus made to the knyght. And for this cause entred wythin his thoughte a drede as for to be so hardy that he sholde vaunce hym self for to kysse suche a pryncesse that neuer he had seen byfore / And wherof thacquentaunce was so daungerouse. But loue, that wyth her dart had made in his herte a grete wounde, admonested hym for to procede constantly to his hyghe entrepryse. And after all varyablenes and debates y-brought at an ende wythin the mynde of this newe louer, his resolucion fynall

kiss her, was / that he sholde putte peyne for to haue a cusse of the proude pucelle in amours, al thoughe deth sholde

[1] *Orig.* tacomplysssse [2] Wanting in the French.
[4—4] deuoit aduenir

be vnto him adiudged onely for this cause; And herupon went Blanchardyn sayenge: 'O veraye god, how well happy shold myn herte be, that presently is ouer moche prossed by cause of myn enterpryse, yf I myght obteyne that one cussynge / And yf myn infortune or feblenes of corage sholde lette me for this aduenture that so sore I desyre / Deth make an ende of me' / though he should die for it.

¶ The xj. chapitre speketh how Blanchardyn ouertoke the proude mayden in amours and kyssed her, wherof she toke a grete anger /

THus as ye here the Iouencell Blanchardyn went stryuyng in herte, for fere that he had, lest he myght not brynge his entrepryse at an ende, and rode thus, thynkinge a goode while tyl that soone after he herde the bruyt and the voyces of the proude pucelle in amours folke / and in tornynge of a narowe waye / by the knowlege that the knyght of the Fery had yeuen to hym of her araye / knewe that it was she that he went sekynge / & thought it was tyme to endeuoyre hym self. he gaf the spore to þe hors & forced hym as moche as he coude, for to ouertake the fayre pucelle, Soo that by his dylygence taken wyth an ardaunt desyre / fonde hymself nyghe her and of her maystres wythin a short space of tyme. ¶ Blanchardyn seeyng the oure and the poynt that he sholde furnysshe hys enterpryse that ful sore he desyred to fynysshe, smote hys courser wyth the spore for to kysse her [1]as he furth by her went,[1] wherof happed, by þe bruyt that his hors made, that she loked bakward for to se what he was that so hastely rode after her. And so well it fortuned Blanchardyn that bothe theyre mouthes recountred, and kyst eche other fast / ¶ Yf blanchardyn was right

At last, Blanchardyn sees Eglantine in front of him.

He gallops up to her.

She turns her head; their lips meet, and they kiss.

[1—1] en passant

glad of this aduenture / It is not to be axed. And of that other party the proude mayden in amours coude not kepe her behauoure in this byhalue for the grete dyspleasyre that she toke therfore[1] / But blanchardyn wyth a glad chere waloped his courser as bruyauntly as he coude thurghe the thykkest of all the folke / lepyng alwaye here and there, as hors and man had [2]fowgthen in the thayer[2] / And dyde so moche in a short while that he had passed ladyes & damoselles / knyghtes and squyers, & all the grete companye of this proude pucelle in amours / gyuyng a gracyouse and honourable salutacion to them all where he went forth by. It is not to be axed yf he was well loked vpon of all them of the rowte / ¶ And in especall of the ladyes and gentyl women, that all in one sayde he was a knyght right goode and fayre, and that it semed wel by countenance to be a man comen of hyghe extraction, merueyllyng hem self what he myght be, and fro whens he came there thus alone wythout eny companye.

Blanchardyn gallops on,

and passes all Eglantine's escort,

the ladies of which praise him.

¶ The xij. chapitre conteyneth and speketh of the grete wrathe and anger that the proude mayden in amours had for the kysse that Blanchardyn had taken of her. And of the complayntes that she made ther fore vnto her maystres, that peyned herself full sore for to pease her / [3]as herafter foloweth /[3]

Blanchardyn is joyful,

WHan Blanchardyn sawe that he had brought at an ende his enterpryse,[4] And that he had passed alle the rowtes and compaynes of the proude pucelle in amours, he was ryght glad of this fayre aduenture / Soo

[1] de ce baisier [2–2] volassent en lair
[3–3] Wanting in the French. [4] *Orig.* euterpryse

toke his waye as right as he coude, as was tolde hym by the knyght, and rode toward Tourmaday. ¶ A lytyl shal here ceasse oure matere to speke of hym / vnto tyme and oure shal be for to retourne to the same / And shal shewe the sorowes and the complayntes of the proude pucelle in amours / and the manyere that she kept after the kysse that blanchardyn toke of her. ¶ Incontynente that she felte her self to be thus sodaynly kyst of a [1]man straunger[1] out of her knowlege, she fell doune from her amblere [2]as a woman from her self and in a swone[2] / [3]And whan she myght speke vnto her maystres[3] / that he that this Iniurye had doon to her what so euer he be / Yf he may come in her handes or in her power, noon shal mowe saue hym / but he shal lese his hed for the same / ¶ Of the teerys that from her eyen fyll doune, her gowne that she had on was therof charged as grete shoure of rayne had come doune from the heuens / thenne her maystres, that sage and dyscrete was / comforted her, blamyng gretly þ^e^ grete sorowe that she made for a cusse / but þ^e^ proude pucelle in amours kept so hard that same kisse in her corage, whiche she reputed for an Iniurye doon to her / that fayre speche nor non excusacion that her goode mastres coude make nor shewe to her / for to pease her of her anger / myght not in nothynge conforte her. But semed that she sholde slee her self to be more hastely venged. her maystres saide vnto her: 'Alas, my goode damoyselle, I haue right grete merueylle, how a prynces of so grete renounne as ye be of, may make so grete a sorowe of a thynge of nought. yf a gentyl man hath kyst you, take ye hit for a folye or dishonoure whiche is not so. noon but I haue seen it, & make no doubte that euere hit sholde be

and rides on,

Eglantine is indignant at being kist by a strange man.

She vows revenge.

She weeps,

and will not be pacified.

Her foster-mother bids her not make such a fuss over a kiss.

No one saw it. There's no harm done.

[1–1] homme estrange
[2–2] haguenee comme vne femme oubliee et pasmee
[3–3] Et quant elle polt parler dist a sa maistresse

discouered [1]nor knowen[1] by me. Soo pray I you, that ye wyl cesse your grete sorowe' / Thenne ansuered the

Eglantine

pucell to her maystres / 'how may ye requyre me to leue myn anger, [2]but that I sholde complayne me[2] / No lenger may suffre me god to lyue in suche a sorowe / yf that shame done to me / be not right sone auenged.[3] Now knowe I not yf he be a gentyl man or not. ¶ Alas, that my knyghtes knowe not, and my folke that marchen byfore me / this aduenture. soone ynoughe they wolde auenge me. ¶ Certaynly [4]I shal doo folow[4] hym; and byleue for certayn that his laste daye is comen [5]and shal deye.'[5] 'O madame,' said the maystresse vnto the yonge damysell / 'ye shal do more wyseli. for yf thys thynge shuld come oute and be knowen, your sorow ought to double sore therfor, yf men sayden that of eueri man ye had taken a kysse. yet ought ye to maynten & holde thapposite, [6]saynge strongly ayenst hit.[6] & ye wyll sca*n*dalyze [7]& vttre[7] your my*s*fal [8]that is now happed to you of one man.[8] lepe vpon your palfraye. your folke ben ferre afore you / and put out of your ymaginacyon [9]suche casuall fryuolles,[9] & that ouer[10] moche do greue your self / for it is for your best, & worship grete yf ye wol vnderstande hit well' /

declares she'll put Blanchardyn to death.

Her foster-mother advises her to hold her tongue,

and say nothing about it.

¶ The xiij chapitre conteyneth how blanchardyn, after he had kyst the proude mayden in loue / went forth on his waye, [11]hauyng styl his thought fast vpon here beaulte[11] / tyll that he cam to the cyte of tourmaday / where he alyghted at the prouostis house for to be lodged there / [12]as herafter foloweth /[12]

1–1, 2–2 Wanting in the French. [3] Ie mourray piteusement [4–4] Ie le feray sieuir [5–5, 6–6, 7–7, 8–8] Wanting. [9–9] les friuoleances [10] *Orig.* oú [11–11, 12–12] Wanting.

After many shewynges that the olde damoyselle had don vnto her lady, the proude pucelle in amours, [1]wyth what peyne & grief that it was[1] / atte thynstance & requeste of her sayde maystresse, she mounted anon vpon her [2]whyte palfray amblyng[2] / And sayde she sholde fynde at Tourmaday / hym that had doon her this vyolence / And that by the morowe next she sholde [3]make him to be hanged.[3] Sore troubled of wyttis, and gretly vexed wythin her mynde as ye here, rode forthe the gentel pucelle after her folke towardes her cyte of tourmaday. But we shal leue her sorowyng / wyth her maystresse that conforteth her, & shal speke of blanchardyn, that alredy was nyghe comen vnto the cyte of Tourmaday / whiche he dyde beholde well, hauynge merueylle of the comodyouse and riche contrey where the towne was sette / And hym semed the most fayre and most riche cyte that euer he sawe / The see was nyghe betyng on the walles atte one syde of the towne, at the other syde were the grete medowes, the fayre vynes and the londe arable / The wodes, swete ryueres, and dyuerse fountaynes. And sayde in hymself / that he that had suche a noble cyte of his owne were a grete lorde. Blanchardyn exploytted so, that he soone entred the cyte. And rode a goode waye wythynne, beholding on eche syde the fayre houses and ryche palayces, and the grete edyfyces, as monasterys, chirches, and chapelles. and also he sawe the grete multytude of peple, the fayre stretes ample and large / tyl that he cam to the chyeff market place, Where he dyde calle a man to hym for to brynge hym to a good lodygys for hym self and his hors. The man ansuered hym, that wyth grete payne he sholde be lodged / And that the men of armes of the proude pucelle in amours were comyng in so grete nombre for to awayte on þ^e^ siege, that the Kynge Alymodes wold leye aboute the

Eglantine mounts her palfrey,

and rides towards Tormaday.

Blanchardyn

thinks this city on the sea

a noble one.

He rides to the market-place,

[1–1] a quelque peinne et meschief que ce feust
[2–2] la haguenee . [3–3] le ferra prendre

cyte there / that the towne was not suffysaunt[1] for to
and is advised to lodge at the Provost's. lodge hem alle. / But wel he tolde hym that he sholde
be well lodged in the prouostys house of the towne, yf
he wolde receyue hym for his hoste. ¶ Blanchardyn
thanked hym humbly, and prayed hym that he wold
shewe hym the prouostys hous / And he wyth goode
wylle dyde soo / Blanchardyn drue thytherward / &
fonde the prouost syttyng at his gate / He salued hym /
prayng / that for to paye well and largely content him,
he wold vouchsauf to take hym for his hoste, and lodge
The Provost hym in his place. The prouost stode vp anon, & dede
beholde blanchardyn, whiche he praysed moche in his
herte, & sayde vnto hym thus: 'Syre, the manere of
says he cannot lodge there this lodgyse is suche, that noon may lodge hym self
here / but yf he doth that whiche is wryton in that
marbel stone aboue the yate' / Than casted blanchardyn
his sight vpward, and sawe writon, graued wythin a
marbel stone, the verses that herafter folowen; [2]wherof
he was glad / for non other sporte or non other thing
he desired / ¶ Here foloweth the ballade that was
wryton vpon the gate of the prouostis place of
Tourmaday /[2]

unless he first fights his host, the Provost.

[3]WHo that wol lodge hym self herynne,
most furst befyght thost of herynne
wyth spere, swerde, & eke of axe.
Here nedeth non other craftes to gete ynne,
for who that wol be receyued wyth chere fyn
May thynke / that nedes he muste therto.
But god graunte hym grace herto,
to ouercome his host, thylke hardy foo /
He shal mowe lawfulle entre this Inne /[4]

[1] *Orig.* suffysaunt [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3] This is set as prose by Caxton.
[4] Quy se vouldra ceans logier,
Loste fault combatre premier
De la lance, despee ou de hache;
Il ne conuient aultre fourrier.
Quy a desir dy herbegier,
I'ense quil fault quainsi le face;
Mais se dieu luy donne la grace
Que son oste vainque ou defface,
En lostel saille sans songier.

¶ The xiiij chapitre conteyneth. how the Iouencell blanchardyn Iosted and fought ayenst the preuost, and ouerthrewe hym; and how two yonge damoselles, doughters to the prouost, cam and toke Blanchardyn for to haue hym to be lodged wythin her faders place /

WHan blanchardyn had wel loked and rede the verses that grauen were in the marbell vpon the gate, & well vnderstode theire sentence, a lytyl he bygan to smyle / as he that [1]lytyl dyde sette ther by[1] / And the prouost axed hym yf he was counseylled for to fulfylle the construction of that texte. Blanchardyn ansuered that he was therof right wel content, so that he myght haue harneys to arme hym selff wyth all / The prouost sayd it sholde not lacke on that / and that gladly he sholde furnysshe hym of goode and mete harnoys to arme his body wyth all / And he dyde soo / For he made to be brought vnto hym by his folke al suche armures and harneys as to hym behoued to haue, and that to suche a caas apperteyneth / Blanchardyn sette fote a gronde, and made hym to be armed and well appoyntted by the prouostis men, whiche was all prest and redy poyntted to the Iouste / ¶ Whan Blanchardyn sawe hym self well armed of alle peces / right quykly he lept vpon his courser, the helme on his hede / the shelde atte his necke, and the spere in his fyste, wythout takyng any auauntage, wherof all thassystents that were comen there for to see hym Ioust with the prouost of the toune, sayde that they neuere sawe no fayrer man of armes, nor better pyght,[2] nor better sytting on horsbak. Grete multytude of peple was there assembled for to see the Ioustynge of the two vasselles.

Blanchardyn smiles

and agrees to fight.

The Provost lends him armour;

he leaps on his courser;

many folk come to see the joust.

[1—1] de ce tenoit peu de compte [2] adroit

The Provost of Tormaday

þ^e^ prouost seyng blanchardyn redy mo*un*ted vpo*n* his hors, þ^e^ spere in his fyste, & lepte out of his place, he semed wel by his behauoure & mayntenau*n*ce to be a man of right grete fayte / for to saye trouthe, he was a myghty man of body, wel renommed of prowesse. And the valyant Blanchardyn, the spere couched on his thye, awayted for hym in the strete all redy for to assaylle hym. The prouost sayde to blanchardyn from as ferre as he coude chuse[1] hym: 'Syre, thynke to deffende your self well, For yf ye ouercome me I shal lodge you in my house, where ye shalbe right richely serued wythout your cost / but yf I may, it shal not come therto, For I shal brynge you to dethe, or to me ye shal yelde your self.' ¶ Blanchardyn herkned the prouost, to whom boldly he answered that he shold doo the best and the worst that he coude, and that he shulde take no thoughte but onely for hym self, and that he sholde putte peyne that his honoure sholde be kepte, and his body ayenst hym / Thenne toke the prouost his spere / and so dyde Blanchardyn [2]the his,[2] whiche was strong and bygge, that it was meruayll. And as moche as the horses myght renne, came eche ayenst other / The prouost brak his spere vpon blanchardyn, but he hurted hym not, For his goode shelde kept hym, and his stronge bones suffred hym not to bowe bakward, by the right grete vertue wherof he was garnysshed / Blanchardyn hytt the prouost in the myddys of his shelde so myghtly that it was perced all thourgh, that the yron was seen at the other syde of the shelde / And yet the prouostis harneis was hole, and nought dommaged of nothyng / But not-wythstandyng the strok was so myghty grete and so sore peysaunt / that hit lyfted the prouost out of the sadel to the grounde more th*e*nne ten*n* fot ferre bakward; & with that re*n*ne, bla*n*chardyn his courser ran ouer þ^e^

states the conditions of the fight: if he is beaten, he will lodge Blanchardyn gratis.

The Provost and Blanchardyn

charge one another at full speed.

Blanchardyn unhorses the Provost.

[1] choisir [2–2] la sienne

prouost that he tradd vpon one of his armes, so that it was hurt full sore. But he was so gretly astonyd of þ^e^ myghty stroke wherby he was fallen doun, that he wyst not [1]where he was.[1] Blanchardyn right quykly alyghted from his hors / his swerd in his hande for to cutte the laas fro the helmet of the preuost, & so to smyte of his hede yf he wolde not yelde hym self to Blanchardyn, and gyue hym fre entre wythin his hous. But whan the two doughters of the prouost, that right praty and full fayre were, dyde see this harde bataylle, and theire fadre in parell of deth / lepte hastely out of their house, and cam to the place, where as bothe of hem / puttyng them self vpon theyre knees byfore blanchardyn, sayde vnto hym: 'O thou free knyght, replenysshed wyth prowesse & of grete wordynesse / haue mercy vpon[2] our fadre' / And Blanchardyn, full of courtoysye, to them answered / that for the loue of them / he sholde be sauf from all euyll / And euyn at these wordes / cam the prouost tyl his owne knowlege ageyne, & vnderstandyng that he had lost the felde for cause of þ^e^ stourdy stroke that he had receyued of the spere of blanchardyn. ¶ And sayde [3]in this maner:[3] 'a, right gentyl knyght, to whom none oughte to compare hym self / For that right grete vertue that in you is entred and sette, I yelde my self vnto you / And presente my hous [4]to your plesure and behouffe,[4] prayeng right affectually that in pacyence ye wyl take*n* hit wyth suche as ye shall fynde in hit.' And thenne wythout taryeng drewe his swerde, and toke it vnto Blanchardyn, that wyth goode wyll gaff it hym ageyn, and wyth-all pardoned hym alle that he myght haue had mysprysed ayenst hym in that / that he wold fyght wyth blanchardyn / wherof the prouost thanked hym gretly.

and runs over his arm.

Blanchardyn dismounts, and is about to cut the Provost's head off,

when his two daughters beg for his life.

Blanchardyn spares the Provost,

who yields up his house

and sword to Blanchardyn.

[1–1] quelle chose aduenue luy estoit [2] de
[3–3], [4–4] Wanting in the French.

¶ The xv. chapytre conteyneth how Blanchardyn was moche richely lodged and receyued in the prouostis hous, of the two doughters of the prouoste. And of the co*m*playntes that the proude mayden in amours made vnto her maystres of Blanchardyn /

AFter this that blanchardyn, atte requeste of the two yong damoyselles / had pardoned theyre fader, the prouost, [1]his euyll wylle[1] / dyuerse folke of the towne / that had seen the valeauntnes and prowes, the grete humylyte and courtoysyes that were in blanchardyn / prayse and commended hym right moche, sayeng comonly that a fayrer knyght they had not seen nor herd speke of in their tyme; And that by his [2]behauoure and[2] contenaunce, men myght well knowe that he was departed and come of [3]noble extraction and hyghe parentage.[3] ¶ Soone after Blanchardyn / hauyng the two yong damoyselles by the handes, was lad by the prouoste in to his house, where he was receyued and festyd, god knoweth how / So was he by the two doughters brought in to a chambre full richely dressed and hanged wyth riche tapysserye / where he was desarmed by the two damoyselles, that helped him / whiche toke him a longe gowne furred wyth fyn martrons, that was her faders, for to clothe hym wyth / And syth dyde sende for the wyn, and made hym the best chere for the first acqueyntaunce that euer coude be made to a knyght. ¶ It is not to be tolde but that Blanchardyn mayntened hym self, talkyng emonge hem more gracyously than euere dyde man, and shewed hym self of so goodly and honneste behauoure / that right sone he conquered the hertes [4]and goode wylle[4]

The folk of Tormaday

praise Blanchardyn,

The Provost's daughters receive and feast him,

disarm him,

clothe him in a furd gown,

and give him wine.

He talks graciously to them, and wins their hearts.

[1–1], [2–2] Wanting in the French. [3–3] haulte lignee
[4–4] Wanting.

of the two forsayde praty maydens; [1]that was not a lytell thyng[1] / For moche fayre and gentyl they were. Whiche on that other part / sawe in [2]Blanchardyn so [2] Cj.
grete a beaulte[3] / that neuere was seen by them noon suche in noo man, wherfore it was noo meruaylle yf they gladly behelde hym. We shal leue to speke of this matere / And shal retourne to speke of the proude mayden in amours, whiche alredy had exployted so moche that she entred wythin her towne of Tormaday, and in a dyspleasans right bytter of her acustumed corage, descended in to her paleys wyth her stoute rowte of folke of armes, & syth, moche tryste and pensefull, entred her chambre, callyng wyth her her mastres, that fulle soone cam there / wherfore that night noon of them alle, were he neuer so moche her famyllyer / cam to see her, but onely the captayne of Tormaday, that cam for to make vnto hir the reuerence. And emonge other deuyses, that ynough brief were, recounted vnto her / how a knyght straunger was come to the cyte / whiche was the fayrest gentylman that myght be seen, and had befought the prouoste and ouercomen hym. ¶ Thenne the proude pucelle in loue, after a lytyl musyng, vnderstode well by the wordes of the captayne, and by the cognyssaunce that he tolde her of his horse, that he was that self knyght that the kisse had taken of her. But she therof made noo semblaunt / The captayne gaff [4]the goode nyght[4] to the damoyselle, toke his leue of her, and went. The proude mayden in amours, seeyng the captayne goon from her presence / sayde anon vnto her maystres: [5]'I shal suffre for this nyght hym that so grete a dysplaysure hath don to me this day by the waye to be festyd in the prouostis hous.[5] But ther nys man a

Eglantine reaches Tormaday.

Its Captain tells her that a most fair knight has overcome the Provost.

She recognizes this knight as the one who kist her,

[1–1] qui nestoient pas peu de choses [3] *Orig.* abeaulte
[4–4] la bonne nuit
[5–5] Ie lairay meshuy festoier en lostel du preuost cellui qui tant ma fait de desplaisir au Iour duy sur les champs

lyue, that so gretly be my frende / that myght kepe me / But that I shal to morowe make hym for to deye of an right euyll deth, [1]Yf I am woman a lyue.[1] And wyth this, yf the prouost wolde not delyuer hym vnto me / I shal destroye hym,[2] and shal make hym pryuated from all his tenementes that he holdeth of me' / Thus as ye here, þ^e^ proude pucelle in amours, in her harde herted wyll, abode all that nyght for to make Blanchardyn to deye / wherof for this cause, for grete anger that was in her, she had nother lust nor myght for to ete nor drynk, nor also to take the reste of slepe /

and declares that she'll be the death of him.

¶ The xvj. chapitre conteyneth yet of the complayntes & grete thretenynges that the proude pucelle in amours made vnto her maystres of the knyght Blanchardyn

IN suche astate, and of the wrathe wherin she was / talked & deuysed her self sore harde and angerly wyth her maystres, whiche dysconseylled her by al manere wayes of the deth of blanchardyn / But what argument nor remonstrans that she coulde make to the proude damoyselle in amours, [3]coude nor not myght not[3] moeue her for to haue awaye her corage from thobstynacion that she had toward Blanchardyn / Thenne sayde the fayre damoyselle, [4]that so fyers was ayenst the god of loue[4] / 'Of what dethe myght I do make hym to deye for to tormente hym moost therby / Other late hym be hanged / brente, or drowned / his hed to be smytten of from his shulders / or to make hym to be drawen and quartred / for to gyue vnto hym his payment of the grete oultrage by hym commytted in my persone' / Her maystres, heryng her wylle / conclusion, and haulte corage insaucyble / that right

Eglantine is still wroth with Blanchardyn,

and discusses how she shall have him kild.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2] *Orig.* hym hym
[3–3] ne le sceut ne peult [4–4] Wanting.

sore touched thonestete and honoure of alle pryncesses / was therof right Impacient / And bygan to saye suche or semblable wordes : ' Alas, madamoselle, he that ye so sore do hate / hath not desserued dethe, thoughe he hath taken a kysse of you / To my semyng ye sholde forclose and take awaye out of your herte all invtyle sorowfulnesse, wherof ye ouer moche doo hurt hit, And garnysshe hit [1]of a newe Ioye / The rayson wherby I so saye, I shal shewe hit vnto you, yf ye be pleased to vnderstande it / Al ynough ye may thynke and knowe / that what someuer he be / he hath a gentyll herte, and is a man of hyghe facion. And where all-redy ye haue mowe knowen by the relacion of [2] youre captayne of Tourmaday / ye may vnderstande of his worthynesse / Ye may well knowe / that yf he had not chosen you full praty and ryght fayre, and more than eny other accomplysshed in all manere of beaulte and faycture / byleue certaynly that he neuere wolde haue vaunced hym self to take a kysse of you / nor had not put hym self in dau*n*ger of youre indyngnacion, that gretly ought to be drad. Wherfore atte my requeste, and for the loue that euere ye had to me ; by all the seruyces and pleasures that I haue mowe doon [3] unto you, And that herafter I myght doo, beseche you / that this euyll wylle and grete indygnacion / that ye haue to that yong knyght, ye putte and chasse out from you. And that ye wyll ceasse your sorowe, and take ayen vnto you thastate of Ioyfull lyuyng / For vpon my sowle, it is the beste that ye can doo in this world' /

Her foster-mother says a kiss doesn't deserve death.

[1] C ij.

Eglantine should rejoice

that so gentle and valiant a knight as Blanchardyn loved her.

Otherwise he'd never have riskt kissing her.

She should give up sorrowing, and be joyful.

¶ The xvij. chapytre conteyneth how the proude pucelle in amours, after dyuers and many remonstracions made by her

[2] *Orig.* yf [3] *Orig.* dooon

maystres vnto her, bygan to wexe moderate, puttyng awaye from her the hate that she had vpon blanchardyn /

Eglantine begins to let love creep into her heart.

She says, 'How cruel it will be of me to kill a knight for only a kiss!

'Still I shall grieve if he brags to the Provost's daughters that he's kist me.

'But he is too noble to do this.

After that the proude mayden in loue had largely herde of her maystres, that all ynough semed her raysonnable, wyst nomore what to replyque nor gaynsaye, & bygan to leue her eerys thurghe a subtyl and soubdayne hete of loue, that perced the veray hert rote of her / for the delyuerance of the yong knyght blanchardyn / She helde her self styl a longe[1] whyle wythout speche, and becam penseful, with a contenaunce full sadde, more than euer she was byfore / But at thende of a whyle, began for to saye wythin her self: ¶ 'O veraye god, what bruyt of cruelnes and of tyrannye sholde be spred ouer all the worlde of me, that am a woman, Yf I, for by cause of a kysse onely, sholde make to deye soo gentyll a knyght. I nedes muste saye that he loueth me truly, and ouer moche straunge sholde be the reward of his loue vnto hym, yf deth sholde folowe therby by the sentence of me, that may conforte hym. ¶ But alas, I make a grete doubte that ouer moche sholde greue me / yf by aduenture it happed that he fonde hym self somwhere, as he presently doth wyth the doughters of the prouost, sholde boste hym self to haue kyssed me / this remors prycketh me to the herte. how be it, I holde hym so courtoys and dyscret, or wyse, that noo bostyng shold not mowe come out of his mouthe, & in especyall of her vnto whom he hath shewed so grete a token of loue. It is farce, and her to I am constrayned / that I confesse that he hath the corage areysed vnto parfytte noblenesse / And that yf he were otherwyse, he sholde neuere haue made farce to kysse me / [2]¶ Men see atte ey his beaulte,[2] wherof he is endowed hyghly / his

[1] *Orig.* alonge [2–2] on voit a loeul

valyauntnes is alredy well preued. And therfore I chuse hym and make hym myn Senescall and cheff of my werre, For he is a man worthy to be taken soo / ¶ And by al thus, but yf it holdeth on hym / yf eny malyuolence or euyll wylle I haue had byfore this vnto hym, I altogydre pardone hym. But alwayes, yf he hath eny loue to me / It is for nought; For neuer, daye of my lyffe, hym nor other I wyll not loue. So wot I neuer what loue ment, nor what it is of loue / nor I loke not after to knowe it / For all suche thynges I repute and take for foly, as / [1]certaynly they be / And wol that euery may knowe that it is / and shalbe alleways my [2]souerayne desyre[2] and fynall conclusion' /

'I'll make him my Seneschall and Commander-in-chief.

'But I won't love him,

[1] C iij.

'and that I firmly resolve.'

¶ The xviij. chapitre conteyneth how the proude pucelle in amours made her ordonnaunces for the kepynge of her cyte / And how Kynge Alymodes arryued and toke lande nyghe the cyte of Tourmaday, whiche he beseged [3]with a myghty power of folke /[3]

IN this dyuersyte of purpos the proude pucelle in amours, to what a peyne that it was passed the tyme of the nyght / And on the morowe she made the castell and her sayde cyte of Tourmaday to be garnysshed right wel of vytaylles, of men of warre, and of almanere of artyllary / by cause that she had had tydynges that same daye / that for certayn she sholde be beseged there, after whiche ordynaunces so made by her knyghtes & captaynes, she wythdrewe her self in to her castell of Tourmaday / She entred in her chambre and cam toward a wyndowe, out of whiche men sawe

Eglantine victuals and arms her city of Tormaday.

[2–2], [3–3] Wanting in the French.

right ferre in to the see / And there she had not be no
She sees King Alymodes's navy — longe whyle, whan she had perceyued the playn choys
ands fyght of a right grete and myghty nauye, and of
many a highe mast that bare grete saylles / And many
penoncelles, baners, and standardes that the wynde
shok here and there, wherof the golde & the azure was
glysteryng tyl vnto her eyen / bycause of the bryght
bemes of the sonne that spred were vpon them. All
the see was couered wyth shippes & galeyes, that wyth
anchor before her city. — a full sayll cam to take parte, and to caste theire ankers
byfore the cyte of Tourmaday. ¶ The damoselle seeng
that grete armee commyng, knewe all ynoughe that it
was thexcercyte of the sayd kynge Almodes, by the
banners & cognyssaunce that she sawe appyere vpon
the see / She called to her them that were in her
Eglantine bids her men oppose K. Alymodes's landing. — chambre / to whiche Incontynent she commaunded
that they sholde goo & arme them self for to resiste
ayenst her enmyes at their commyng on lande, whiche
she sawe approched alredy right nyghe / After this
They muster, — commaundement made, they all went to arme and
arraye hem self, & thourgh all the cyte [1]euery man toke
his harneys on hym, & made grete haste toward the
hauen.[1] Troumpettes, claryons, & other instrumentes
bygan to blowe thurgh euery part of the towne / and
were all in affraye for to lepe out, to thende they
myght be at the descendyng of theyr enemyes to lande.
but are too late. — Neuer so soone they coude comen, But that the kynge
Alymodes, with his son Darius, — Alymodes had alredy taken lande, & his sone daryus
wyth hym, and one of his daughters that he had,[2]
his pretty daughter, — whiche was moche fayre, and a praty mayden, that
it was meruaylle / So had he one kynge in his com-
K. Rubyon, — panye that hyght Rubyon. And wyth theym was come
another kynge right myghty and grete beyonde mesure,
and a seven-foot hideous king, — whiche of heyght was xv fote long, and wyth-all right
foull and hydouse for to see / So moche they dede that

[1–1] Chacun courut aulx armes. [2] *Orig.* he had he had

they cam all out of their vesselles, and had out all theyr horses, tentes, & pauyllyons / artylleryes, and harneys / And sprade them self thurgh the medowes that be there full ample & large / They of the cyte coude neuer lette hem nor defende / But that atte their pleasure they descended from their shippes & toke lande, for so grete a nombre they were, that men called them about four score thousand[1] men of warre or more, besyde thos that kept their shippes / Ryght grete bruyt & grete noyse they made at their comyng a lande, of harnes, bussynes, and of tambours, so that an horryble thyng it was to here / The Kynge Alymodes and his son daryus, acompanyed wyth the two other kynges, mounted vpon theire coursers & palfreys, [2]& *xx thousand men wyth them,[2] & came to fore the cyte, The kynge Alymodes so ferre that he was nyghe by the gate, heuyng vpward his hand / sayeng to them that kept theire warde / that they sholde yelde vp the cyte vnto hym or euer that the lande aboute were wasted / sweryng vpon all the goddes that he worshiped / that he ne sholde departe from byfore the cyte, vnto the tyme that he had the proude pucelle in amours tyl his spouse and wyff / They of wythynne thenne heryng Alymodes the kynge speke that wel they knewe, ansuered vnto hym / that they had noo fere of hym / And that theyre damoyselle & maystres doubted nor feered hym nought in noo thynge / This ansuere yherde, Alymodes þ^e^ kynge, replenysshed wyth wrath and Ire more than euer he was to fore / made his oost to approche as nyghe the cyte as he coude / He made there his tentes & his pauyllyons to be pyght, and his folke to be lodged aboute hym / And made his chieff standard[3] to be sette al on hyghe vpon his riche pauyllyon / ayenst whiche they of the cyte casted full fast,

with 80,000 men at arms, all land.

The Kings and 6000 men come up to Tormaday,

* C iiij.

and demand its surrender,

and that Eglantine be given to Alymodes to wife.

These demands being rejected,

Alymodes pitches his tents close to the city.

[1] *Orig.* thousaud

[2–2] a dix mille hommes auec eulx

[3] *Orig.* staudard

The citizens fire on them, and kill many,

& often serpentynes and gunnes, wherof they dyde grete dommage vnto their enemyes / But what someuer thinge that men euere dyde vnto them, nor that of their folke was made grete occysion and slawghter,

but cannot dislodge them.

Neuertheles, they lefte not to lodge hem self there, [1]what for daunger nor moleste that men coude do to them[1] / And all as nyghe the cyte as myght be /

Alymodes prepares to bombard Tormaday.

makyng redy their canons and their bombardes, for to bruse and bete doune the walles of the sayd towne /

¶ The xix. chapytre conteyneth how the doughter of the prouost brought to Blanchardyn a fayre coueryng, [2]all of whyte sylke,[2] to couere his hors wyth all, and one of her sleues, prayng hym that he wold bere hit vpon his helme. And he dyde so.

WHen they of the cyte had seen the manere & the rewle[3] of their enemyes, and that all wyth leyser they had seen their puyssance and their manere of doynge, The captayne and the prouoste of the towne dyde ordeyne a stronge and a bygge warde that they sette by a goode ordenaunce along the walles, and in to the yates for the defence of the towne / And this doon, toke wyth them two thousand men well chosen and all in a goode array / lept out of the cyte, & sodaynly wyth a grete cry that they made, charged vpon theyre enmyes, wherof at their commyng on / they dyde putte to deth grete foison of Kynge Alymodes folke, whiche was right sory for it. But soone ynough, by the prouysion that he putte therto, reculed his enemyes abacke [4]tyll wythin the barreys of the towne[4] / Another posterne of the cyte was open, wherof

The Tormadians set a guard on their walls,

and then 2000 of them charge their foes, and

slay many of them.

[1–1] quelque dangier ou moleste que on leur sceust faire.
[2–2] Wanting in the French. [3] gouuernement
[4–4] dedens de la cite.

the enemyes toke noo kepe / out of whiche yssued out a thousand men, goode & handy fyghters well shapen, & strongly herted for to hurt their felon enmyes. So smot they hem self, wythin callyng vp a hyghe crye in to þ^e^ thikkest of their enmyes, where they slew and detrenched many one / And dyuerse tentes and pauyllyons they pulled doune, and brought to dethe theym that were wythynne. Soo that the cry and the callyng camen vnto the kynge Alymodes pauyllyon, that hastely came there, acompanyed wyth x thousand of his men / The noyse and the cry [1]bygan thenne to be efte as grete than it was to fore[1] / so that the folke of the proude pucelle in amours were constrayned to wythdrawe them self ayen in to þ^e^ cyte, after that they had brought & slayne wel xiiij c. of their enmyes, without eny losyng of theire owne folke, wherof Alymodes the kynge was right sory & dolaunt / & sore troubled & heuy, wythdrewe hym self in to his pauyllyon, commaundyng his folke that euery man shold loke to lodge hym self, trowyng to be in a sewrete that his enmyes as for that same day sholde not comen nomore out of their cyte. Blanchardyn, that at the same owre was in the prouostis hous, heryng the bruyt & the noyse that wythout the towne was made by kynge Alymodes folke, the whiche he had seen and aduysed from ouer the walles where he went vp / And seen the battaylles & scarmysshynge that by them of the towne & their enmyes were made, So[2] began he to be ful of thoughte, & all annoyed of hym self by cause he was not armed tyl his plesure, and that he myght not yssue out vpon the proude pucelle in amours enmyes wyth her folke. The prouost, that right wyse was and subtyll / asked blanchardin what moeuyd hym to be so sore sad & pensefull, and yf he was not well lodged at his ease

Then another 1000 of the Tormadians make a separate sally,

and kill many foemen.

Alymodes drives them back,

after losing 1400 of his men.

Blanchardyn is

annoyd that he was not in the fight.

[1–1] se renforca si tresgrande

[2] Si

and to his playsure / and yf he wanted eny thynge that myght be recouerd for gold or syluer, that he sholde telle it hym, & that he shold late hym haue hit in-contynent[1]; al sholde he putte in Ieopardye, bothe lyf & goode, for to fulfille his wylle / 'Alas,' saide blanch-

Blanchardyn complains to the Provost

ardyn / 'Sire, of your lodgis and good chere I am right wel content, & thanke you moche therfore / But one thynge wol I telle you, syth that it playseth you to knowe þ^e^ cause of my grete dysplaysaunce; ye shall vnderstande that I haue habandonned & forsaken bothe fadre & modre, kynnesmen & frendes, [2]& eke lyflode &

that, tho' he wants to fight,

lande[2] where I toke my byrth & noureture, for to exercyse & able my self in þ^e^ noble crafte of faytes of armes, & to take & lerne þ^e^ discipline of knyghthode /

he has no armour.

¶ And I se nowe that for defaulte of armures I may not sette awerke nor employe my goode wylle / whiche full sore greueth me, And moche more than I telle.' ¶ The prouoste, hering the goode wylle and grete affection / that this yonge knyght had / was therof right glad / and sayde vnto hym / 'vassell, come wyth me,

The Provost agrees to give him a horse and arms.

and I shall delyuere you hors and eke harneys right goode, so that ye shall haue noo cause for fawte of armures / But that ye shal mowe proue your prowes whiche I holde right grete.' 'Syre,' sayde blanch-ardyn,[3] 'of the curtosye that ye haue doon and proffre vnto me, I thanke you moche;' thenne the prouost toke Blanchardyn by the hand, smylyng, and to hym sayde: 'come[4] you wyth me, and I shal gyue you the choys of suche armures as ye shal lyke.' They two went to gidre, and entred in to a chambre that wel garnysshed was of all manere of armes, suche as atte that tyme

Both of them arm quickly.

were vsed. ¶ The prouost dilygently armed blanch-ardyn of suche armures as he wold chose. And syth made eche hem self to be armed hastely / Whan dressid

[1] *Orig.* in contynent [2–2] terre et le pays
[3] *Orig.* saydeblanchardyn [4] *Orig.* saydecome

and redy they were, they made theire coursers to be had forth out of the stable, whiche were brought anone to the mountyng place before the halle. Thenne one of
4 the doughters of þ^e^ prouost, knowyng that blanchardyn was armed and redy to goo out wyth her fader / she cam and brought wyth her a fayre whyte coueryng of damaske clothe, wherof she made the hors of blanch-
8 ardyn to be couered wyth, and vnto hym she gaffe one of her gowne sleues, that was of damask blake / prayng hym that for her sake and loue he wolde voche sauf to were and bere it vpon his helmet / Blanchardyn toke
12 þ^e^ sleue of the damoysell, sayng that he sholde fulfylle her request; & she, thankyng hym therof / sayde, she sholde, be cause as her semed that god sholde gyue hym some goode fortune that day /

One of the Provost's daughters gives Blanchardyn white horse-trappings, and her black sleeve to wear in his helm,

and says that God 'll favour him.

16 ¶ The xx. chapitre speketh of the grete bataylle that was byfore the cyte of Tour-maday ayenst kyng alymodes folke, and of the grete prowes that blanchardyn
20 made there that day / and how the proude mayden in amours becam sore enamoured oú[1] him. & of the deuyses or co*mm*unyng that she made wyth her
24 maystres.

[1 *read* on]

AFter that the prouoste and Blanchardyn were armed of all peces, and set vpon the myghty coursers the shelde at the necke / theire helmes bokled,
28 and eythre of them the spere in the hande / toke leue of hem that were there, and departed out of the place, and cam to the towne gate, where they fonde thre thousaund men alredy for to yssue out / the whiche by
32 the motion & warnyng of the prouoste / had appareyl-led them self for to kepe hym felawship and folowe

Blanchardyn and the Provost mount,

and find 3000 men at the gate.

hym / ¶ When the prouoste was come to the yate, hit was soone open, thurghe whiche they alle yssued out

Blanchardyn and the Provost

in goode and fayre ordynaunce / Blanchardin, whiche was sore desyryng for to proue[1] hym self and shewe his strengthe and vertue, to haue bruyt and comendacion, and that he myght be knowen / dyde putte hym self in the fore front, hauyng a ryght bygge spere in his

march out with Eglantine's men,

hande / ¶ They bygan alle to vaunce, and marche forth out of the barres of the towne. And syth all atones gaaf a grete crye, Wherof theire enmyes that all redy awayted there for them, were alle affrayed /

and charge the foe.

They byganne thenne to renne one vpon other by so grete strengthe, that for the noyse and sowne that the erthe gaffe by cause of the horses that ranne harde vpon, It semed to them of wythin and wythout that the foure elementes had fought theire togydre / ¶ The duste rose vp fro the grounde that derked the lyght of the sonne wyth the shot that drawe was of bothe sides, one parte ayenst that other / ¶ Blanchardyn, that

Blanchardyn, in front, kills the nephew of Alymodes,

in the fore fronte was the frist man of all, [2]had his spere in the rest, and ranne vpon[2] Corbadas, that neuewe was to kynge Alymodes; and so grete a stroke and so heuy he gaffe hym, that the spere hed appiered at the backe thurgh the body of the sayd corbadas; & in pulling ageyn his spere, he ouerthrew him doune [3]sterke ded[3] to þ^e^ erthe; & syth anone he rought another of kynge alymodes knyghtes in suche a wyse that he made his spere to entre his body thurghe lunge and lyure, and so kyld hym. And so moche he made atte the first empraynte, that ar euere his spere[4] was broken,

then one of his knights,

and then six enemies.

he threwe doune ded syx of his enemyes from their sadelles / the whiche emonge the horses fete fynisshed myserably theyre dayes. And syn aftre, he lyghtly dyde sette hande on the swerde, of the whiche he smote

[1] *Orig.* prone [2–2] baissa la lance de laquelle Il consieuy [3–3] mort [4] *Orig.* swerde

here and there wyth bothe his handes by suche a strengthe, that him that he rought wyth full stroke, was [1]all in to brused, and clouen in two peces[1] / He detrenched and kutte bothe horses and knyghtes / he cloue and rent helmes and sheldes, and brake the grete routes, and made his enemyes to sprede abrode / Moche better he semed to be [2]a man of the fayre[2] than a creature of the worlde. All fled byfore hym, and made hym waye to passe / There was noo man, how hardy that he was, that durste mete hym, so sore fered and doubted hym his enmyes / wythin a lytyl whyle he made so moche [3]of proesse[3] that his enemyes were therof ryght sore abasshed, and that his swerde was well beknowen emonge hem: ryght grete and horryble was the battaylle / And so moche that they of Tourmaday and his enemyes merueylled gretly of the grete strengthe and hyghe proes that they sawe in Blanchardyn, the whiche his enmyes fledde, as the larke doth the sperhauke.

After that, he hacks right and left with his two-handed sword,

and slays men and horses,

so that all flee from him

as the lark from the sparrow-hawk.

¶ The howlyng and the noyse bygan to ryse vp a hyghe, and so moche that the fayre proude mayden in amours, that lened atte a wyndowe, seeyng the grete proesses & merueyllouse faytes of armes that by blanchardin were there made, Asked of her maystres that was nyghe her / yf she knowe not þ^e^ knyght that had his hors couerid with whit rayment / & syth she also perceyued the black sleue that vpon his helmet was sette fast / Her maystres thenne wyst not what to thynke, nor also what he myght be / But well ynough sayde that he was the most valyaunt, & that dyde best that day of al bothe partyes / And she sayde: 'a, madame, loke / nowe ye may see that they all fle awaye byfore hym, and ye may well perceyue that noman dare abyde hym, moche grete desyre I haue to wyte & knowe

Eglantine looks out,

and asks who the white knight with the black sleeve is.

[1–1] tout fouldroye [2–2] homme fae
[3–3] Wanting in the French.

what he may be.' ¶ Euen atte this oure that the proude mayden in amours and her maystres were in suche talkyng, came vnto them a squyer that cryed on

A Squire tells her that this

hyghe, and sayde / 'O my right redoubted lady, yonder wythout may you chuse and see the floure of

slayer of her foes

knyghthode, the subduer and sleer of your enemyes, [1]not yet satysfyed nor fylled of the deth of many of hem, but styl destroyeth them.[1] he heweth and felleth doune right al byfore hym / his armes were not longe syth all clere and whyt / but now they be dyed in red wyth the blode of your enemyes that he hath slayne and brought to deth / Madame, knowe for a trouthe

is the knight who lodges at the Provost's.

that it is the fayre knyght whiche is lodged at þ^e^ prouostis house.' / Whan þ^e^ proude lady in amours

Eglantine blushes,

vnderstode the squyer speke thus, the bloode ranne vp at her face, and wexed red as a rose / Well perceyued

smitten by love.

hit her sayde maystres, and that the loue of hym smote her / But no semblaunt she made therof to her. right gladde and Ioyeful was the pucelle whan she knewe that it was Blanchardyn / And bygan to thynke in her self that he was wel worthy to be beloued. thenne she

She says it 'll

sayde to her maystres / 'Certes that knyght that I see yonder dooth merueylles of armes / I see þ^e^ prouost that of nyghe foloweth him. it is to be thought þ*at* he

be a great pity

shal wyl giue him one of his doughters in mariage, with a grete parte of his grete hauoyre; but on my

if such a noble man marries the Provost's daughter.

fayth it were do*m*mage, for he is a man of noble corage, & right valyau*n*t / & nought it is to be doubted, but þ*at* he is come of som noble hous. The maystres, that right sage was, dyd perceyue incontyne*n*t by her wordes that her Indygnacion and euyll wylle, that she byfore that had conceyued ayenst blanchardyn, was moderat [2]in

Her foster-mother

her herte,[2] And wyst not what she therof shold thynke, but that loue had ouercome her euyll erroure, Wherof she shold haue ben right glad. and lyke as her thought

[1–1] Insaule de les destriure. [2–2] Wanting in the French.

was to be, so it was in dede happed / Among other comynyng & deuyses that she myght more playnly knowe how it was therof, right subtyly bygan to saye thus to the proude pucelle in amours: 'Madame, as for this I knowe, and can perceyue youre pryde shalbe cause / but yf ye take hede, of the totall distruction of your royalme. Concedere you not that ye be occasion, and the cause mouyng of thassemble of the ostis that are for your towne, and of the shedyng of bloode that procedeth therof / Yf ye[1] wolde wedde the kynge Alymodes, all your lande shalbe in surete, quyete, and peas' / Than the proude mayden in amours, after this exhortyng, herde of her maystres, sayde that she sholde noo more speke therof vnto her, and that neuer the dayes of her lyff she sholde wedde [2]paynem nor noo man infydele.[2] ¶ And for this cause cessed a while their talkyng / And loked bothe toward the felde, where they saw the knyghtes ful sore fyghtyng of bothe partyes / But Blanchardyn hath the praysyng ouer hem alle, For ther was no man of nother syde that of prowes & worthynes coude go beyonde hym, wherof kynge alymodes knyghtes had grete enuye ouer hym, and grete cure & laboure toke vpon them for to slee hym; but non of them / how hardy þat he was, durste not proche nor nyghe hym, For as many as he myght reche vnto, he feld hem doune or slew hem, and wounded them greuosly / ¶ The proude pucelle in amours folke bare them self right wel that day / This bataylle lasted tyl the nyght came; wherfore kynge Alymodes, seeyng that he myght not by noo manere putte nor close them fro the cyte, by cause of the wyse wyt and worthynes of the goode knyght Blanchardyn that conduyted them / made to sowne and call the retreyte [3]or wythdrawe his men,[3] to his losse and grete

tells her that she is the cause of the destruction of her folk.

If she would but wed K. Alymodes, all would be peace.

Eglantine says she'll never marry a heathen.

Blanchardyn is the best fighter on her side.

K. Alymodes

has the retire sounded,

[1] *Orig.* Yf yf

[2–2] vng Infidele aourant les ydoles dyaboliques

[3–3] Wanting in the French.

and withdraws to his tent.

confusion / & wythdrewe hym self in to his tente, right wrothe and sorowfull for the losse of dyuers his knyghtes / And all thurgh the vertue and strengthe of one knyght only / Blanchardyn & the prouost, wyth theire folke, wyth grete glorye and tryumphe entred ayen in to the cyte, and brought wyth them many a riche prysonner. And to the prouostis house toke blanchardyn his waye, wher vnto he was conueyed of the most parte of the noble men, makyng to hym the gretest honoure that men can or may doo to a knyght / as to hym that best had doon that day / And to saye the trouthe, many of the gretest of hem had ben slayn or taken, yf by the vertue and strengthe of blanchardyn they had not be socoured & holpen that day.

Blanchardyn is escorted to the Provost's house by the Tormadian nobles

whom he had rescued and helpt.

Some he helped ayen vpon theire horses whan they were feld doune, some he rescued from the hande of theire enmyes that had hem as prysoners, so bare him self, that wyth grete tryumphe and grete glorye he retourned fro the bataylle wyth them vnto the sayde prouostes place / to the grete benyuolence[1] and gladnesse of the peple of the cyte, and there alyghted from his hors, and the prouost wyth hym, whos two doughters, that were right fayre and praty, came there ayenst them /

The Provost's pretty daughters,

both in love with him, receive him,

For bothe of hem loued sore blanchardyn, & right enamored they were ouer hym / There abode xx knyghtes at souper wyth blanchardyn, for to chere and feste hym, and to be acoynted of hym. harpe / lute / [2]sawtrye,[2] and dyuerse other instruments of melodyouse musyke were sent for, For to reioysshe the noble felawship that was full fayre / fore there were comen diuerse ladyes, many a gentyl woman, maydens / and noble bourgeyses, at the requeste and prayers of the prouoste, and of his two doughters[3] that were right besy for to chere & serue Blanchardyn wyth all dyligence. Atte the same owre

feast him,

and attend on him.

[1] *Orig.* beuyuolence [2–2] guisternes
[3] *Orig.* twodoughters

that this Ioye & feste [1]was in makyng[1] in the prouostis house / The proude pucelle in amours was in her castel lenyng vp on one of her chambre wyndowes that had syght wythin the towne, and herde the noyse and the feste that was adoyng in the prouostis house for loue of Blanchardyn, and for to doo hym worshipe & honoure, wherof she was aduertysed alredy. And how be it that as ye haue herde anone, she had gyuen herself in hir herte to the sayd blanchardyn / alle wayes at the same owre was taken the fynall and faste conclusion, and altogydre was of her determyned, to make of Blanchardyn [2]her louer and her specyall,[2] that a lytyl before that / for one kysse onely was so ferre from her gode grace, and in daunger of his lyf, yf the goddesse of loue, that is so myghty of her grace, had not purueyed better for hym / At the begynnyng of this new alyaunce, amoures or loue serued her wyth a messe sharp and sowre ynoughe tyl her tast / that is to wyte, of a louely care / that is as moche worthe / as a suspecyouse Ialousye of the doughters of the prouoste and her specyall Blanchardyn. But she thought in her self that she sholde purney therto of a remedye mete & goode to the cause / whiche thynge she dyde as ye shal here herafter / loue that departeth wyth her goodes, where as it semeth her best employed / forgate not her newe seruaunt / but atte her first comyng made her to be[3] vysited and wayted vpon by [4]a seruant of hers[4] named Care, that well sore mouyd and troubled her spyrites. And she that was not lernyd to receyue suche geestes, sore harde was his queyntaunce to her. And yet wythin a whyle after, loue smote her ayen wyth a darte to the quycke tyll þ^e^ herte of her / so that the fayer pucell wyst not her behauyng, [5]nor how to mayntene her self[5] / and also had no power to drynke nor ete, nor

Eglantine hears the noise of the feasting,

and resolves to make Blanchardyn her lover.

She is jealous of the Provost's daughters,

becomes anxious and troubled,

and is so stricken by Love that she can't eat or sleep.

[1–1] se faisoit [2–2] son amy [3] *Orig.* tobe
[4–4] vng sien seruiteur [5–5] Wanting in the French.

coude not slepe [1]ne take no maner of reste[1] / but held her hert so esprised & so ouer pressid wyth loue that she had to blanchardyn / that she myght noo lenger hyde her falle. Thenne cam to her maystres, & said to her in thys maner: 'alas, who shall mowe recouer helth to this pacient sore syke, that suffreth wyth goode wyll of herte, both grete thurste, honger, & shaketh for colde caused thrughe a hete intollerabyll?' / The maystres perceyued anoone by her wordes and maner, that she had ben in the chapiter of the / god of loue / and by his grace men shuld haue gode accompte of the pryde that ouer longe a tyme had ruled her dismesurable herte / She thought that[2] she had ben taken wyth kyng Alymodes loue, & syth said vnto / her: 'Madame, ye oughte to yelde grete graces & thankes to the myghty god of loue / seyng the vnknoulege that ye haue had alwayes here byfore of his vertues / that hath dayned to vysite you, & to altre & change your corage. I byleue now that for cause of thys soudayn mutacion ye be seke & sore passioned of one accident that nameth hymself the sore of loue' / 'Alas,' said the pucell / 'the sore of loue is ryght anguyssous and heuy forto bere, as me semeth.' 'Madame,' sayd her maystres / 'men must suffre for better to haue / This euyll shalle be be cause of your perfeccion / and knouleche that loue is that thynge that moost embellisheth and decoreth the nobyl corages / And I can not thynke that euer man and woman, hauyng bruyt or name of some goode vertues passyng other / haue come nor raughte therunto wythoute[3] that they were or had ben in the seruice of loue.' The proude mayden in amours herkened hir maystres / but the feuere that loue had takn her for to plucke oute the roote of pryde from her herte / lettid here sore.

Eglantine asks who can cure her of her love-troubles.

Her foster-mother

thinks Eglantine is in love with K. Alymodes,

and says she ought to thank the God of Love.

Eglantine confesses

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2] *Orig.* thoughtthat
[3] *Orig.* wythonte

and atte the ende of a whyle biganne to saye: 'Alas, amours, I haue longe defendyd my sylf ayenst the harde assautes and Impetuous excitacions, that often tymes thy messangers made vnto me. Now haue I nother power nor wyl to defende me eny more / vnto the I yelde me.'

that she can no longer resist the attacks of Love.

She gives herself up to it.

¶ The xxj. chapiter conteyneth how the proude pucell in loue / by the grete loue that she had sette vpon Blanchardyn, bycam Ialouse / and douted leest he shuld sette his loue on one of the doughters of the prouoste / whom she hasteli sente for, and spake to hym [1]as it foloweth[1] /

The maystres, herynge the complayntes of the proude pucelle in amoures, had no lytyl Ioye to here suche tydynges, and tyll her feete fell herself, and sayd: 'Thanked be god, madame, þ^e^ werre wiche is cause of so many euilles shal ceasse in your realme, yf it please god, for from þ^e^ owr that ye shal wold gyue your loue vnto kynge Alymodes, the right happy wele of peas shal be publysshed thurgh alle the countrey. But and yf ye suffre the siege to abyde any lenger byfore youre cyte, Ye ought to wyte that the countrey about shal vtterly be dystroyed of kyng alymodes folke; wherfore at my request, vse youre self after þ^e^ dyscyplyne of amours, to whome ye haue made obeyssance, and take to youre lord and husbande the kynge Alymodes: how well [1]he ys ouerraged, take no hede and care not therfore. he hath yet strenghe ynough. ye see what it ys of warre' / And then the proude mayden in loue answerd and sayde to her maystres: 'I haue absoluteli sayde to you, ones for alle / that

Eglantine's foster-mother

falls at her feet,

and begs her to love K. Alymodes,

and relieve her country from war.

[1] D ij.

Eglantine vows

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

she will never wed

while I lyue, kyng Alymodes shall neuer wedde me. I merueylle me gretli of you, that ar ferre in age, & ought wele to knowe so ferre that a lesse euyll it were for to suffre all my lande to be wasted, than to wed

an idolater like Alymodes.

and take to my lorde a kynge full of Idolatrye, acursed and apostata of oure holy crysten feyth. Thynke not that I sorough for hym, but byleue that there is grete choys of alymodes & hym for whom loue hath taken my fayth, that neuer I shall change hym.' The maystres wyste not goodely what she shulde thynke, but ynoughe she doubted that Blanchardyn had that grace, from whiche he was alytyl afore sore ferre cast. Sone after, wythoute lityll taryeng, the proude pucelle

She sends for the Provost,

in amoures sent for the prouoste, sayeng that she had nede of his counceyl / 'he is sage, dyscrete, and experte in many thynges,' sayd she; 'I am sure that he hath in his house a rote that, as to my semyng, shal gyf me help, and shal lyght my herte of the soris wherof I am full sore passyonned' / her maystres, wythout more enquyre to be made / sent one for the prouost, that cam sone toward the proude mayden in amours / and made to her the reuerence / She toke hym by the hande, and made hym to syt doune by her, for to breke

speaks to him of the war,

her matere and to come to a conclusyon. She made her premysses for to speke of her werre / But she forgate not to telle hym how the knyght, his hoste,

and Blanchardyn's deeds,

that is to wyte, Blanchardyn, and he hym self had borne hem self that day right valyauntly, wherof she was right well content / And that yf it pleased god, she sholde haue knowlege som day of thoos that helpeth her to mayntene her were ayenst the [1]false sarasyn[1] Alymodes / She that ardauntly sought occasion to fynde matyere for to spek of Blanchardyn, sayde vnto

and says she has

the prouost in this manyere: 'Prouost, I haue founde you alwayes goode and / trewe seruaunt vnto me /

[1–1] desloyal

wherof I fele me moche beholden to yow / And wyl aduertyse you of one thyng that dyspleseth me sore, whiche is sayd of youre doughters, that is that they heard that his daughters love his guest,
wyll enamoure hem self of that knyght, youre ghest, whiche is now lodged wyth yow, whiche is a thynge of grete oultrage and grete dyshonoure vnto them, knowyng that he is a man come of a grete house and extracted of hyghe parentage, and a grete lorde in his contrey / I make no doubte, but holde my self wel certayn that he the lesse therfore setteth by them. And also it is no merueylle, theyre grete foly dis- which displeases her.
playseth me moche. for it is to be presumed that this myght be cause to mynusshe your worship and their goode renomme' / 'Madame,' sayd the prouost, [1]'I haue The Provost answers that he wishes Blanchardyn would take one of his daughters.
not perceyued me of this[1] that ye telle me / But yf it were soo that the knyght wherof ye speke were wyllyng to take one of hem, I sholde holde her to be employed to the most valiaunt knyght that men euere speke of: to the moost free, sage, and curteys that I trowed euere to be acqueynted of. Now wolde god that his wylle were suche / And that he had as grete desyre to take her / as I sholde be wyllyng for to gyue her to hym, shure bargayne shold be all thus lyghtly doon / that sore lytyll that god hath lent me of goodes sholde not be straunged vnto hym by me / [2]for he is worthy to haue mykel more[2] / hath he not taken this daye tenne knyghtes prysonners, besydes threty coursers that he hath conquered vpon youre enemyes; and so many of them he hath clouen and slayne, that grete merueylle it were to reherse the same. and [3]to my demyng[3] / I trowe better that he is a man of the feyre than He must be of Fairy race;
[4]otherwyse, for his prowes and worthynes, that ben [4] D iij.
hyghe, are not to be tolde ne compared to the humayn no human being could do so valiantly.
or wordely werkes.'

[1–1] Je ne me suis pas perceu de [2–2] car il le vault
[3–3] a mon ensient

¶ The xxij. chapitre conteyneth and speketh of the deuyses that were betwene the prouost and the proude pucelle in amours. And of the grete loue that she had sette to blanchardyn [1]the yonge knyght, as it folowed here /[1]

Eglantine delights in the Provost's praise of Blanchardyn.

THe proude pucel in loue, heryng þ^e^ prouost, was right glad, for she herkened not to þ^e^ rewthes, but onely to that loenge and praysynge of her louer and frende specyall. But well she bethought her self that the doughters of the prouost sholde not longe trouble her heedes, for she sholde purueye therto of a remedy conuenable. And whan she spake ageyne, her wordes were suche. 'Prouost, as byfore I haue sayde vnto you, the knyght of whom I speke, parauenture is of byrth right hyghe; And suche and so vertuouyse in armes, as ye knowe. It nedeth not to be doubted that he is comme to his extremyte of prowes and valyantnes, wythout that amours hathe be the cause in the persone of some hyghe a pryncesse. And for to telle you I knowe well soo moche, that he is this day in the goode fauoure and grace of a kynges doughter, right ryche, myghty, and well in lynage, & endowed as men sayen of all that / that can be desyred in the body of a woman. And therfore grete foly it is to youre doughters to haue suche an ouerwenyng[2] wylle, wherof men gyuen them a dysmesured proclame / Neuertheles, as dere as ye haue my playsure to fulfylle / and aboue all to renne in to myn indygnacion, holde the hande to this, [3]that they forbere hem self to the smylynges and fayre shewes of their eyen, whiche wauntonly they caste full often vpon that yonge knyght.[3] And to thende

She says that Blanchardyn does his great deeds for love of some Princess.

The Provost's daughters must be stopt from smiling and making eyes at the knight.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2] oultrecuidant
[3–3] que elles se deportent de semblant et regars quelles font vers le cheualier.

that ye may haue them to[1] soner awaye from the loue of the sayd knyght, gyue me hem bothe, and make them to be brought here wythin, and wythout eny thyng to youre charge nor cost: I shal mary hem right wel' / ¶ The prouoste, heryng his lady souerayne, right humbly thanked her of the grete offre and curtosye that she wolde do to his doughters / and was ryght glad / he toke his leue of her in his most goodly manere, as to suche a caas apparteyneth / After the fayre offres had don vnto hym, and at his partyng from her, she sayde vnto hym that she wold wel see the knyght of whom they had spoken, and that he sholde brynge hym to her the next day for to make aqueyntance betwyxe hem bothe / & sayde that she was wel holden to doo so, knowyng that he was in hir seruyse, & that he exposed his body for the deffence of her countrey. 'I wol,' saide she, 'knowe yf he shalbe wyllyng to dwelle wythin this my towne, takyng suche wages as ben acoustumed, or ellis yf not soo, I shal doo so well reward hym that he shal by reason be well content of me. and be sure, yf he serue me as he hath bygonne, yf god be pleased I shal rewarde hym right well / And I hope that thurgh his ayde my werre shall take a good conclusion. and that doon / yf it pleaseth hym, he shal mowe take to his spouse hyr that so moche is his / & that so truly hath gyuen her self to hym. ¶ And yf it cometh to purpos / forgete not to say / that it were yl don of hym for to forgete her / But on my feyth, this that I speke / the cause is moued, bycause that the forsayde, his specyall maystres and true louer / is my cosyn germayn. And also that she bereth in hir herte care ynough and dyspleysure for the loue of hym, And may nother slepe nor take nomanere of naturall rest, so moche she is enamored on hym. I doubte not that yf by aduenture she were out

Eglantine will get the Provost's daughters well married.

The Provost is to bring Blanchardyn to her,

as she wishes him to serve her.

Her cousin is in love with him,

cannot rest for him,

[1] two

[1] D iiij.

of his remembraunce, & by hym putte [1]in oblyuyon, that god forbede / but that sholde dey sodaynly / after that suche pitteuouse tydynges were brought tyll her, gryeuous sore and payne tendreth to pite the very herte of myn owne body / and nedes muste I putte peyne to the releuyng of her grete sorowe. ¶ for wythout fawte it were domage yf suche a lady, that is so well condycioned, [2]and in all manere norreture right parfyt,[2] sholde perysshe thourgh the coulpe of a knyght /'

and would die if he rejected her;

which would be a pity.

¶ The xxiij[3] chapiter conteyneth how þ^e^ prouost retourned tyll his house, and recounted vnto Blanchardyn that the proude pucelle in amours had tolde hym / And how she sent for hym, that he[4] sholde come toward her / And how Blanchardyn went thither / And how they talked togydre at leyser, to the grete pleasure of bothe partyes. And how theyr loue was [5]knytted and[5] confermed /

The Provost

After the humble leue that the prouost toke of the lady, he went homward agayn tyl his place, all penseful of the wordes that he had herde of the pucelle. It was tyme to go to bed; so cam he toward blanchardyn / that was alredy goo in to his chambre / and gaff hym the goode nyght / & on the morowe, after the masse / the prouost sayde vnto Blanchardyn that he wold talke wyth him atte leyser. And blanchardyn ansuered, 'fayre hoost / [6]in good oure be it'[6] / Thenne they two sette hem self vpon a benche / The prouost bygan hym to recounte and telle hou the

next morning

tells Blanchardyn

[2–2] Wanting in the French. [3] *Orig.* xxiiij. [4] *Orig.* she
[5–5] Wanting. [6–6] en la bonne heure

proude mayden in amoures, the euen last past, had spoken wyth hym of many thynges, & emonge other tolde hym that she was right well content of his seruyce, and wolde reteyne hym in wages, and gyue hym of her goodes, for he was worthy therof. 'Morouere,' sayde þ^e^ prouost, 'sire, she hath tolde me that ye be enamored of a hyghe and a riche pryncesse, wherof I merueyll me not / for on my feyth ye be well the man that ought to chuse your specyall loue in a hyghe place. But allewayes it is force that j bere you in hande that it is her owne silf, for it semeth me not wel possyble that yf it were in som other place / hit sholde not haue comen to her knowlege. how wel that here is one doubte that retardeth myne ymagynacyon, she sette neuere nought by amours / & loue, But iapeth[1] & playeth her self of theym that ben amerouse. I wote not allewayes yf the god of loue myght haue shewed his vertues in her. Alas, we sholde wel desyre that it were so, to thende she myght take a goode lord for to deffende vs and her lande' / ¶ After that the prouost hade sayde to blanchardyn all that semed him good to be tolde / Blanchardyn curtoysly, wyth a smylyng contenaunce, ansuered hym, that god hath well kept hym from so moche an hap and so hyghe, as for to haue the grace of so noble and so grete prynces as was the proude pucelle in amours / '& also I byleue,' sayde blanchardyn, 'that ye make your self these tydynges. But I can not bethynke to what purpos ye haue seen eny token ne apparence for to coloure your gracyouse suspecyon; I neuer spake wyth her, nor neuer in my dayes I dyde see her / wherof sholde to me come suche a wylle?' 'I wot not,' sayde the prouost. 'I telle you that, that I haue herde of my lady. Yf ought be ther to your auauntage, soo take hit / ¶ Now pleased god that she were that woman

what Eglantine has said of him,

and that she is in love with him,

tho' till then she has always poohpoohd love.

Blanchardyn smiles, and says

he's never spoken to Eglantine;

[1] se farse

that suffred so moche of sorowe and angwysshe at her herte for the loue of you.' 'I thanke you,' sayde Blanchardyn /

¶ 'I wolde not that noobody sholde suffre for loue of me any thyng to his dyspleasure, where as I myght by ony manere of waye putte a remedy. But alwayes,' sayde blanchardyn, 'I can merueyll me not to moche wherof suche langage commeth, & can not thinke that it shold come of the doughter of a kyng / for thus to say, she [1]in a manere[1] mocketh me: suffyse her yf I am come to serue her in kepyng my worship. And as to me, suche an vse I seke not; but I wyl onely proue and aduenture honorably my body, as a gentyl man ought for to doo / Ioustyng, tournoynge, and behourdyng[2] are my passe tyme / and no wyffe I thynke not to take.' 'Aa, sire,' sayde the prouost, 'I wold well kepe me, and be loth for to denounce thynge vnto you that sholde tourne you to a displeasure, and praye you that ye wyll not take the thynge other wyse than I haue tolde hyt to you, and thynke nomore vpon it. But let vs go see my lady / for in goode ernest she doth sende for you by me' / Blanchardyn graciously ansuered to his hoste that he was content, excusyng hym silf alwayes of that loue that he had spoken to hym of. How be it, he felt the contrary at his herte / They cam to þ^e^ ladyes palays, and went thourgh þ^e^ grete halle in to a fayre chambre. And after that announced was there comyng, men made them to entre in to the chambre of parement, wher as the right gracyouse and fayre, the proude pucelle in amours, was wyth many of her ladyes, and other her gentyll women / and spake at that same owre wyth certayne of her counseyll vpon the faytte of her werre. Blanchardyn and the prouost entred in to the chambre; and thenne, as blanchardyn

he can't understand her talk;

he doesn't think of love for her;

he only wants to joust and tourney.

But tho' Blanchardyn repudiates her love, he feels it.

He goes to Eglantine's palace with the Provost,

[1–1] aucunement

[2] *Orig.* behonrdyng. Wanting in the French.

sawe & perceyued þ^e^ noble pucelle, he dyde vaunce him self toward her, & make vnto her the reuerence so gracyously and so boldly in all worship / that non coude amende it; and consequently to all the lordes, ladyes, and gentyl women, so goodely & wel that euery one saide good of hym. þ^e^ noble mayden behelde hym moche humbly, whiche toke a right grete pleasure to see his gracyouse & assured behauyng, that tysed and doubled in her herte the fyre of loue, wherof she was sore esprysed / And thenne, after the fayre and swete welcomynges, the lady wythdrewe her toward a couche that was in the sayd chambre, & toke blanchardyn by the hande, and made hym to sytte besyde her. He made hym self to be prayed & drawen sore or euer he wolde vaunce hym self for to sytte hym doune by her. But force was to hym to obeye her commaundement, wherof al they that thenne were wythin the chambre coude not tourne their eyen from Blanchardyn, for his right grete beaulte, fayre behauoure, & good manyere. And she to whome the dede most touched, had grete Ioye at her herte / to fynde her self in the presence of hym. And for to saye the trouth, she was so enbrased [1]and taken[1] wyth the brennyng fyre of loue, that she not coude kepe her contenaunce; & yf rayson had not restrayned her, wythout other premysses nor conclusyons, she sholde haue gladly of pryme face tolde vnto blanchardyn, how loue constrayned her for the[2] loue of hym. And at ende of a while, the best wyse that she coude, Wyth a lowe voyce she sayde vnto blanchardyn: 'Syre, ye knowe the werre that the vntrewe kynge Alymodes hath alredy don to me dyuerse tymes, Wherfore I mystered gretly of thayde and socours of you and of other / So praye I you, that ye wyl helpe & conforte me in my said werre, & I shal rewarde you so that ye shalbe content.' 'Madame,' sayde Blanchardyn,

and salutes her graciously.

Eglantine seats Blanchardyn beside her on a couch,

and is glad at heart,

for she burns with love for him.

She prays him to help her.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2] *Orig.* to

He says he will, not sparing himself.

'I ensure you on my feyth, that in all that I shal mowe, I shal employe me in your seruyce: I wyll not spare my self. I am come out of myn owne contrey for to fynde me in a place where as I myght excercise the fayttes of armes, as longeth tyl a knyght to doo / And thanked be god, I am here right well arryued: I

He wants no wages. Let the Provost have them.

aske no thynge of you. But I praye you / syn that it pleaseth you to gyue me wages, that ye wyl doo them to be delyuered vnto myn hooste, youre prouost / for moche beholden[1] I am to hym; and I shal gladly dwelle wyth you, in the companye of your other knyghtes / And shal serue you truly' / 'Syre,' sayd the pucell, 'I promette you that youre hoste shalbe al to gydre contented of you / and alle of myn owne' /

Eglantine sighs deeply.

And after thees wordes she dyde cast a profound syghe, that proceded from the depnes of her herte, that sore

She is over head and ears in love.

was pressed / She was so ouer perced and enflammed of loue / that she had so moche on it as the herte of eny lady myght bere or comprehende, vnto the grete extremyte. And the reyson is goode / for the strenthes and vertues of the gode of loue, that departeth wyth where as hym semeth goode, are suche that the more that þ^e^ persone is more harde to be conuertysed and tourned to his lawe, the more ought she afterward, whan she is ouercome, to be more constant & stedfast to kepe hit. This experyence was playnly shewed in

Blanchardyn notices this,

this lady. Blanchardyn trowed to perceyue a lytyl her manere, and remembred hym self of the wordes that his hooste had tolde hym the same daye, And syth sayde

and asks her about her cousin who she said was in love with him:

to þ^e^ lady: 'Madame, myn hoste hath tolde me this daye that ye knowe well my lady paramours, and that she is of your lynage. by my feyth, this thynge semeth me right straunge.' Thenne the proude pucelle in amours byganne to ansuere, and sayde / 'The lady of whom I touched the prouoste, your hoste, is well

[1] tenu

trusted wyth me, and I wolde doo for her as moche honoure as I wolde for my self' / 'A, madame,' saide blanchardyn, 'pardoune me yf I desyre by manere of replycacyon to knowe the name of her of whom ye haue made nowe mencyon / for I ensure you, madame, that whan I dyde that grete oultrage, wherto I was constrayned by force, to nyghe & touche youre swete mouthe, I had not seen no lady, nor non other gentylwoman, of whom I desyred to be retcyned her seruaunte / But syth I haue ben fayne of the seruyce of one whiche I repute to me a grete fredom, in suche a wyse / that yf I sholde deye for deffawte of her socours, yet coulde I not, nor wolde not departe nor be from her for no thyng of the worlde / & therfore, my ryght redouted lady, I beseche you in all humylyte, that it please you of your grace to pardoune me my vayne wylle / for in you lyeth my bytter deth, or my prosperouse lyf. I am and shalbe, yf it please you, youre feythful & true seruaunt, for temploye my self in youre seruyse in al that shal please you to commaunde me, as longe as lyf shalbe in me, what someuer happeth to me for' / whan the pucelle herde this swete & graciouse langage, of the heryng of whiche she toke no displeasure, wold no lenger suffre hym to be in peyne, vpon whom she had sette her herte, & in whom she hoped of goode seruise for to brynge her werres tyl an ende / but seide vnto him: 'Aa, gentyl knyght, forced I am atte this houre present, syth it is your wylle, that I declare & saye that whiche my herte thynketh & suffreth for your sake; be ye sure that all that I sayde vnto þ^e^ prouost, toucheth noo body but only to my self / for so helpe me god, as I loue you wyth all my veraye herte / & am so esprysed wyth your loue, that reherce it to you I can not. I haue debated þ^e^ quarelle ayenst the god of loue[1] / but at the

what is her name.

Blanchardyn reminds Eglantine that he kist her lips:

she, Eglantine, is his death or life;

he is her servant.

Eglantine confesses

that what she told the Provost referd to herself.

She loves Blanchardyn with all her heart.

[1] *Orig.* of god loue

last I haue ben subdued & vttirly ouercome thourgh the graciouse maneres, honeste behauing, hardy & noble corage that I haue perceyued in your persone, whiche I loue moche better than alle the remenant of the world / And from hens forth I reteyne you myn onely true louer and goode frende / neuer to chaunge vnto the oure of deth' / Wherof men may thynke al ynough that in spekyng and vttraunce of suche wordes / they were not wythout mutacion of coloure, chaungyng of contenaunce, and suche other thynges in this caas acostumed / And where vpon is to byleue that blanchardyn was neuere in hys lyff half so glad, and not wythout a cause / as whan he vnderstode this Ioyouse tydynge / ¶ And as that thinge whiche most he desyred in this world, dyde accepte this gracyouse and desyrable ansuere / and how he thanked that noble mayden / It is not to be demaunded / for he forgate noo worde that therto serued to be sayde. And thenne thourghe a soubdayne fyre, that descended from the heuens aboue, was theire loue confermed to gydre. And fro that oure abode bothe their hertes in one hole wylle. The prouost at the same tyme perceyued well that blanchardyns besynes was in non euyll waye. How be it he coude knowe noo thynge therof but by suspecyon / Betwix the lady and blanchardin were noo wordes more for that tyme, but that the yonge knyght toke a gracyouse leue of the fayre pucelle, that myght not tourne her eyen from Blanchardyn /

Eglantine will be Blanchardyn's till death.

Blanchardyn is full of joy,

and thanks Eglantine.

Thenceforth their hearts are one.

He takes his leave of her.

¶ The xxiiij. chapitre conteyneth how Blanchardyn toke leue, and went ayen to the prouostis house / And of the fayre whyt courser, and of the sleue of cloth of gold that his lady dyde sende to him. And of the grete battayll that was byfore

Tourmaday, betwix blanchardyn and a gyant, whiche was dyscomfyte / and of the grete meruaylles of armes that blanchardyn made there, & of his takynge /

After their deuyses the prouost vaunced hym self for to take blanchardyn by the arme, and haue hym to his house. But or they went, the proude pucelle in amours sayde to the prouost that he sholde not leue to bringe her [his] two doughters the next morowe. And that she sholde[1] marrye hem right well / as she dyde, vnto two of her knyghtes right noble and gentyl, wythin fewe dayes after. I saye not that Ialousy was cause of this thynge / but I leue it in the iugement / that in suche a caas can good skyle / ¶ After the gracyouse leue of the lady / Blanchardyn & the prouoste came ayen in the sayd place / and was dyner tyme / The prouost that wyth all his herte loued Blanchardyn, coniuered hym, sayng, It semed hym that he sholde be yet kynge and lorde of the londe of Tormaday / And that their lady had hym well in her grace / Thenne Blanchardyn, that well beholden was to the prouost / and that knewe hym for a trusty man and secret, mystrusted not hym / but recounted & tolde hym al alonge the fayttes of his werkes in amours; wherof the prouost was not lesse reioysshed than blanchardyn was. The dyner was redy, and made an ende of theyr proces tyl another tyme. They sette hem self at the table / And had not be longe at their meet, whan the lady sent to Blanchardyn a fayre whyte courser / and wyth it her right sleue, whiche was of riche clothe of golde crymosyn, to thende he sholde bere it vpon his helme whan he shold go vpon her enmyes, by cause she myght the better knowe hym emonge other / ¶ This present was not to be reffused,

The Provost takes Blanchardyn home.

Eglantine marries the Provost's daughters to two knights.

Blanchardyn tells the Provost how he has prosperd in love.

Eglantine sends Blanchardyn a white steed, and her crimson sleeve to wear in his helm.

[1] *Orig.* holde

and the messanger sayde to Blanchardyn / that well he ought to areyse his corage whan so gentyl a lady wolde sende him suche a present / Blanchardyn thanked the messager, and prayed hym curtaysly / that he wold haue hym for humbly recomended to the goode grace of the noble pucelle that so fayre a present had sent to hym / ¶ Blanchardyn dyde putte his hand into his aulmonere, and drewe out of it a riche ouche[1] of golde, vpon whiche was sette a right riche ruby enuyrouned wyth fyue grete perles, and gaffe hit to þ^e^ messager, whiche thanked moche humbly blanchardyn / of whom he toke his leue, and departed and taryed noo where vnto the tyme that he had tolde and reherced to the lady the Ioye that blanchardyn had made at the recepcion of the present that she had sent vnto hym / And syth recounted her of the riche gyfte that blanchardyn had don to hym, wherof the proude mayden in amours was wel payd / sayng in her self that suche largesse proceded to hym of veraye noblenes. Here we shal leue to speke of her / and shal retourne to speke of blanchardyn, that in the prouostis house was sette atte dyner / Right soone aftre the last messe was serued, a lytyll affray and alarme[2] roos wyth in the towne, for bycause of the kynge of geauntes called rubyon, that was in the playne wythout the cyte byfore the walles of the towne, And demaunded after the Ioustes, for his ladyes sake that daughter was vnto kynge Alymodes / the whiche had taken hym a sleue that was of satyn vyolet, and had sette hit vpon his helme for the loue of her / But bycause he was of so byghe & bygge corpulence, and so stronge of body, and renomme of grete proes / the proes was not grete of the knyghtes, nor of other folke of Tourmaday, for to furnysshe his apetyte nor fulfylle his requeste / ¶ The bruyt of this werke cam to the know-

Blanchardyn rewards the messenger,

who reports his generosity to Eglantine.

The King of Giants, Rubyon,

challenges the Tormadians to joust.

[1] fremail [2] *Orig.* alytyll affray and a larme

lege and vnderstandyng of Blanchardyn, the whiche for this tydyng was gladde by ouer mesure / And sayde of a goode herte & a free wylle / that he shal furnysshe Rubyon of his requeste / and that he was comme in tyme. Redyly and soone he made hit to be knowen to Rubyon, lest he sholde departe thens, whiche was right Ioyous of þ^e^ tydynges, for right moche he desyred to shewe hymself, for his ladyes loue, daughter to kyng Alymodes, of whiche he was amorouse, & of that other partye blanchardyn made hymsylf to be armed quyckeli, and syn mounted vpon þ^e^ myghty courser that the fayer, the proude pucell in amours had sente to hym / he forgate not the sleue of cloth of gold that vnto hym had be presented from her bihalf, the whiche he couched along his shoulder in stede of gardebras, and for that day he wold[1] haue therto noon other armour, wherof the prouost was not wele content. whan he was redy appareilled, mounted & armured of all his armures, except the haulte pece where the pucelles sleue kept stede, he made the signe of the crosse ouer hym, and so departed oute of the prouostes place, and cam ridyng through the toun accompaned wyth the prouoste and of many other knyghtes. he was sore loked vpon, and praysed of the ladyes & gentyll women as he passed by / for al prayd to our lord that wyth honoure & Ioye he wolde brynge hym ayen. So longe rydde blanchardyn that he cam to the toun gates, oute of whiche he yssued & parted, the spere in the hande, the shelde sette afore hym, the helmet lacid, & cl s redy forto renne vpon his ennemye that he sawe byfore hym / þat walked before the barres of the toun, awaityng after hym that shuld furnyshe hym of batayll, thynkynge that none shuld dare come bicause he had taryed there longe, where of he bare hymself wel proude. whan he see Blanch-

Blanchardyn accepts the challenge, arms, mounts Eglantine's steed, wears her sleeve as his only arm-guard, rides through the town, out of its gates, and comes close to the Giant.

[1] *Orig.* wlod

ardyn, that all prest was to furnyshe hys enterprise / gaffe to hymself grete merualylle, and praised hym but litell, he asked hym of whens he was. Blanchardyn answerd, that for no drede nor fere that he had of hym he shuld kepe his name from hym / and tolde hym that he was of the realme of fryse, and his name was blanchardin, that vnto him was sent by the fayer þ^e^ proude [1]pucell, his maystres in amours for to Iuste and to aproue hymsylf vpon hym. Thenne answerd Rubyon to blanchardyn, that the daughter of the myghty kynge Alymodes, the euen byfore had gyuen vnto hym her sleue, the whiche in presence of her fader she had taken it from her ryght arme, to thende that for the loue of her he shuld doo some thynge wherby she myghte the better haue hym in her grace. 'vassayll,' sayd blanchardyn, 'thynke to do your werke / ye see me here redy to furnyshe your requeste.' Thenne bothe of them went abacke for to take their cours, and turned ayen brochynge their horses wyth their spores, that one ayenste þ^e^ other the speres in the rest, wherof they raughte eche other vpon the sheldes by so grete a strengthe, that nother of their sheldes abode there hole / but were all quartred in peces / and in suche a wyse they recountred eche other, that their speres brake vnto their hands, that the shyuers flowe vpward / & syn passed beyonde for to parfurnysshe their enterprise / And in tornynge hemself ayen / layde hande on their swerdes, wherwyth they began to smyte one vpon that other by so grete & horrybyll strokes / that the fire cam oute of their helmes / Euyn atte the same oure that the two vasselles be foughte / eche other / the proude mayden in amours was lenyng at a wyndow, thorough whyche she sawe pleynli the bataylle of her speciall & of Rubyon / wherfore all ynoughe ye maye byleue that she had grete fere that blanchardyn shulde not retourne atte his honoure / How well she helde

Rubyon asks whence he comes.

Blanchardyn says from Friesland,

[1] E j.

to fight him.

They charge one another,

and break their spears.

They fight with their swords.

Eglantine sees them.

hym so valiaunt / as he was / that her aduyse was for the ryghte grete & goode desire that she had / that her beste biloued was alle redy com [1]to his aboue ouere[1]

Rubyon / The doughter of Alymodes the kynge was atte this owre settynge[2] byfore her pauillyon for to beholde þ^e^ batayll of þ^e^ two champions. She dyd prayse & commende so moche blanchardyn / and preuely atte her herte wished[3] hersilf hys lady peramours, for the grete worthynes / & proesse that she perceyuid in hym there, for he smote so grete strokes wyth his swerde, and so ofte that he had all astonyed alredi his enmye Rubyon / Blanchardyn / seeng Rubyon in that plyght, lefte vppe his swerde, of the whiche he raughte Rubyon wyth a reuers myght by the eere wyth suche a meruelous stroke, that he ouerthrewe hym doun from his hors / The batayll had ben sone finyshed bytuyx them both / and Rubyon ded / ne had ben kynge Alymodes folke / that cam for to socure Rubyon, to whom blanchardyn had smyten the hed of / yf they had not come right soone. But the proude pucell in amours for the grete care that she had to sende socoure & helpe vnto her louer that she sawe in danger, & enclosed with three score men / that aboute hym were for to slee hym & brynge hym to deth / sent hastely her men for to secoure hym / for he was assaylled of eche side of good men of werre, but not wythstandyng thys, right vygoriously defendid hymsylf ayenst them all / and yelded them ynoughe to do wythoute þat they euer coude hurte, nor wounde hym / vnto the tyme þat socours cam to hym / for he detrenched & kyt them both legges and armes, and cloue their heedes vnto the brayne. And so fiersly mayntenid himself ther / that none durst no more vaunce to approche nyghe hym / whan they of kyng Alymodes oost sawe them of the cite þat were comen oute, they mounted on horsebacke,

K. Alymodes's daughter watches the fight.

Blanchardyn unhorses Rubyon.

K. Alymodes's folk rescue Rubyon, and surround Blanchardyn.

Eglantine sends men to help Blanchardyn,

who hacks and hews his foes.

More of Alymodes's men come up.

[1—1] au-dessus de [2] *Orig.* setytnge [3] *Orig.* whished

& came to themwarde as faste as they might come / And atte the recountre that both partyes made one ayenst that other / were many a spere broken, and many a knyghte broughte to grounde, that were troden wyth the ffeete of the horses, so that fewe of hem rose [1]vp alyue. And in conclusyon, all they of Alymodes partie had ben there slayne or taken / yf his son daryus had not come the same tyme, that brought with hym a grete companie of folke, and assembled and called ayen to gydre theym that fled fro the battaylle / ¶ And thenne entred hymselff in to the battaylle, where he byganne to do merueylles of armes / for a ryght gode knyght he was, [2]yf he had ben a crysten man.[2] Grete slawghtyr he made of them of the cyte / but Blanchardyn, that sone was aware of his commyng, cam ayenst him, the swerde in hande vp right on hyghe, whiche he lete fall vpon daryus wyth suche a stourdy strok, & so grete, that he amasyd hym wyth all, and ouer threwe hym doune from his hors / And right sone wolde haue taken the hede wyth the goode helmet from the body of hym, yf he lyghtly had not be socoured of his men, that wyth right grete peyne, strong wounded and sore hurt, remounted hym on his hors, [3]and had hym[3] to his pauyllyon, wher he kept his bed the space of thre dayes. Rubyon, the kynge of gyauntes, that of Blanchardyn had ben ouer throwen, as it is sayde afore, fought full sore ayenst theym of Tourmaday, beryng to them grete domage. But blanchardyn, that alle his mynde and thoughte had sette to fynde hym, to thende he myght be auenged ouer hym / loked aboute at the right syde of hym, where as he chose Rubyon, that made merueylles of armes, and had ouer thrawen doune the goode prouoste, whos hed he sholde haue stryken of right soone, yf Blanchardyn had not be / that hastely brake the presse, and camen there, and socoured hym, cryey[n]ge

A fierce fight follows

[1] E ij.

Darius has to support Alymodes's men.

Blanchardyn

unhorses Darius,

who has to be carried to his bed.

Rubyon, the Giant-King,

slays the Tormadians.

Blanchardyn goes for him.

[2–2] si en dieu eust este creant. [3–3] et emmenerent

vpon Rubyon in this manere of wyse / ¶ 'Ha, A! thou false paynem [1]and cursed man![1] this shall be thy laste daye, for by false and grete traysen, and [2]by a watche thought before, wolde haue madest me to be murdered /[2] And by suche meanes thou escaped ones fro my handes; but to me nor to noon other thou shalt neuere werke trayson.' ¶ And thenne Blanchardyn that had a stronge axe in his handes, smote atte Rubyon wyth al his strenthe, & gaff hym suche a stroke that his goode armures coude not waraunt his lyff, But was feld doune sterk ded, wherof the cry and the noyse rose vp ryght grete / Whan the sarrasyns saw the kynge of the gyaun*t*es dede they were sore frayed and gretly abasshed, for in hym was alle their hope. they fled toward their tentes as faste as they myght / ¶ Blanchardyn and they of Tourmaday pursued them, smytyng and ouer thrawyng hem ded vnto their tentes. And so moche that Blanchardyn cam to the kyng Alymodes tente, before the whiche he fonde his doughter syttyng, that behelde the battaylle that was afore the sayde towne / Whan blanchardyn sawe the yong damoysell that was there syttyng / he bowed hym self douneward vpo*n* his hors necke, and toke the mayden by the myddes of her body, and sette her vp byfore hym, wythout any resystence made by the pucelle, whiche made therof noo refuse / And syth retourned ayen as faste as he myght toward the cyte of Tourmaday. But Alymodes seyng this harde aduenture so befalle, as a man madde and all to gyder from his wyttes, cam rennyng after Blanchardyn wyth more than foure thousand sarrasyns wyth hym that folowed faste at the backe of hym for to socoure their lady / ¶ And blanchardyn that bare the pucelle byfore hym, sawe a sarrasyn that moche nyghe folowed hym / he tourned his horse hed toward hym, lyfte vpward his

Blanchardyn kills the Giant Rubyon with an axe.

The Saracens flee,

the Tormadians pursuing them

Blanchardyn carries off the daughter of K. Alymodes,

and rides towards Tormaday,

pursued by 4000 Saracens.

He unluckily turns and kills one of them.

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

[2–2] par aguet appeuse mais mas cuidie faire murdrir.

swerde, and gaff suche a merueyllouse stroke to the
[1] E iij. sarrasyn that he cloue his hede [1]to the harde[2] tethe /
Alas, why dyde he tary hym self for to slee that
The rest of Alymodes's men close on Blanchardyn. sarrasyn, for so sore nyghe he was pursiewed by kynge
Alymodes and his folke, that they closed hym anone
rounde aboute / The prouost and the other of the towne
entred ayen in to the cyte, wenyng to them that Blanch-
ardyn had be wyth them / but he was not, but was
enclosed from al sydes, and in suche wyse opressed
They kill his horse. that they had all redy slayne his horse vnder hym, and
was a fote amonge the sarrasyns, where he fought wyth
He slays many of them. þ^e swerde in the hande, wherof he made grete slawghter
of them. But what occysion or defence that he made
myght not warauntyse hym, for aboute him were more
than foure thousand sarrasins that desyred all for to
purchasse hym his deth. The kynge Alymodes seeyng
the grete prowes that was in Blanchardyn, & that non
so hardy durste approche hym, he bygan to crye a
K. Alymodes reproaches his men for their cowardice. lowde on hyghe / 'fy on you all, vntrewe paynemys!
cursed be the owre of your natyuyte / Whan for the
body of one knyght alone, I see you more than foure
thousand men to tourne & recule abacke! full yl haue I
employed þ^e godes that I haue doon vnto you! a full
sory noryshyng I haue doon ouer you' / thenne the
sarasyns, that herde their lorde soo speke to them,
They rush on Blanchardyn, whiche they dyde ferre ryght sore, all attones ranne
vpon Blanchardyn, that sore wery & traueylled was of
the grete strokes that he had / gyuen and receyued, soo
that the blode ranne out of dyuers places of his body.
wel he saw that it was Impossyble to hym to laste eny
lenger, but that he muste be other slayne or taken.
Notwythstandyng this, blanchardyn, lyke as other a
tygre or a lyon that is broken loos from his boundes[3] /
who cleaves the King's nephew to the chin, Heued vpward his swerde wyth bothe the handes, &
smote a knyght therwyth that neuewe was / vnto Kyng

[2] Wanting in the French. [3] gardes

alymodes, wyth suche a strengthe, that he cleued hym vnto the chynne bone. But as he wythdrewe his swerde to hym ward, from that grete and merueyllous stroke, his fotyng faylled hym, for cause that the grasse wher vpon he trad was sore weet & slyther. And so nedes he muste falle / Thenne cam vpon hym sodaynly out of all sydes grete foyson of paynemys, and toke and bonde hym full fast / ¶ Whan the sarasyns dyde see hym thus fallen to the grou*n*de, they made all atones suche a horryble crye that ferre wythin the cyte was herde the sowne of hit. ¶ At the same owre the proude pucell in amours, that yet was styll at her wyndowe, and had seen her folke turne agayn in to the towne wyth grete haste / And syth herde the crye and the greate noyse that was made wythout the cyte / And of another part she sawe a grete no*u*mbre of folke that retourned to the tentes / thoughte wel, & also her herte Iudged & gaf it to her that, that was þ^e^ worthy blanchardyn / her louer, þ^e^ sarasins ledde wyth them prysoner / Seyng this co*n*fusio*n* thus to be happed, she wyst not how to conteyne her self, and byganne full sore to wepe wyth grete teerys, that fell doune alonge her swete vysage, And sayde: 'Alas, my right dere and feythful louer / yf god thurgh his grace putteth noo prouysion her-vnto / this day shalbe broken and vndoo oure sore desyred acqueyntaunce / ¶ Thenne the prouost, right sorowfull and gretly dysplaysed, wyth a sad chere entred in to the chambre where the right desolate, the proude pucelle in amours, made grete mone, whiche he fonde fallen in a swoune in the lap off one of her gentyl wymen / And syth whan she was come ayen to her self, that she had the myght to speke, she sayde to the prouost that soone and incontynent he shold go toward the kyng Alymodes for to wyte yf for golde or syluer he [1]wolde take to raenson þ^e^ knyght that was a straun*g*er, whiche was but as her

but falls himself.

Alymodes's men take Blanchardyn, bind him,

and raise a cry of triumph.

Eglantine hears this, and

thinks her lover Blanchardyn is taken prisoner.

She weeps.

The Provost comes to her,

and she bids him go to K. Alymodes.

[1] E iiij.

sowldyour in this her werre. And yf his playsure was
and offer him seven dromedary-loads of gold for Blanchardyn's ransom. to sende hym ayen to her, 'I shal gyue him for his raenson seuen dromadaryes al laden with fyn gold / so that he wyll sende hym to me soun*d*e and hole' / Whan the prouost sawe [1]the grete amarytude, or by termes grete sorowe,[1] where as his lady, the proude pucelle in amours, was Inne, And the promesse that she made for the delyueraunce of Blanchardyn, He, moeud wyth pyte, ansuered and sayde to the pucelle, that wyth all possyble dilygence he sholde do so moche, that or euer the nyght sholde come he sholde knowe the certeynte of that / that kynge Alymodes
The Provost goes wolde doo in this behalue. he toke his leue of the proude pucelle, whiche he lefte sorowynge wyth in her chambre wyth her maydens, and went anone hastly
to the battlements, vpon a hyghe toure that had syght toward kyng Alymodes oost. And there he called out of the
and asks a Saracen knight batelmentes as hyghe as he myght, vpon a knyght sarrasyn þat went forth by the same toure, to whom he
to get him a safe-conduct to K. Alymodes. prayed sore moche that he wold doo hym as moche curteysy toward the kynge alymodes, that he myght, vndre gode suryte and saufcondyt, goo to speke wyth hym, for to shewe and an*n*once to hym certayn message from his lady the proude pucelle in amours / The paynem knyght, that was full curteys, made a token to hym that his request he dyde graun*t*e. Soo went he
This procured, hastely, and dyde so moche that he brought to hym a goode saufcondyt, where the prouoste right moche thanked hym. the prouost anone after made hym self
the Provost goes to K. Alymodes's tent, redy toward his waye, and cam nygh ynoughe to the tente of kynge Alymodes. and as he passed by, he saw blanchardyn, that was kept in holde of six squyers, syttyng byfore a pauyllyon[2] / That tyme that Blanchardyn perceyued the prouost that passed forth by hym /

[1–1] la grant doleur et la grant amertume
[2] *Orig.* apauyllyon

he demaunded of hym what thyng he went there sekynge. The prouost tolde hym that he went toward Alymodes the kyng for his delyueraunce, saynge to hym that he sholde not be abasshed of no thynge, & that he sholde not care / but sholde make good chere / And that he sholde not abyde behynde, so that for eny golde or syluer he coude be had / 'frende, of that ye telle me,' sayde blanchardyn, 'I am right glad, [1]& Ioye wel to thanke god therof.[1] I praye you that ye wyl doo the beste that ye shal may toward the kynge alymodes, for my confyance & trust is in you' / The prouost toke leue of hym, and dyde so moche that he cam and alyghted byfore kynge Alymodes tente, And syth entred Inne, where he fonde kynge alymodes and his barons aboute hym / He right reuerently salued hym, sayeng vnto hym, that he was come there for to beye ayen þ^e^ straunge knyght that he helde prysonner, whiche is a souldyour, and reteyned in to wages wyth the proude pucelle in amours. And the cause that moeueth her herto, it is by cause that he is a straunger, and that he is comen from ferre lande to take wages: thus right gladly she wolde haue hym ayen, yf your plesure were for to putte hym to raenson / and my lady, the proude pucelle, offreth you for hym seuen dromadaryes, al charged of fyn golde, and a thousand coursers, and as many amblynge horses and armures, goode and fyn ynoughe for to arme a thousaund knyghtes. ¶ Whan the kynge herde the prouoste, that soo grete offre made for to haue ageyne blanchardyn / He gaff hym self grete merueylle, & bethoughte in hym silf a lytyl whyle / and syth dyde sende for blanchardyn, whiche he behylde so moche whan he was come afore hym, and sayde wythin hym self, that neuer in his lyff he had not seen noo fayrer knyght, nor more better made and myghty of body /

speaking to Blanchardyn by the way.

The Provost tells the King he has come to ransom Blanchardyn,

and offers for him seven dromedary-loads of gold, 1000 coursers, 1000 ambling horses, and 1000 suits of armour.

K. Alymodes sends for Blanchardyn,

sees what a fine man he is,

[1–1] en suis moult Ioyeulx et en doy bien louer notre seigneur.

He dyde coueyte moche sore the grete hauoyre that was proffred hym for his raencon / but a soubdayne sparkle of Ialousye cam to hym byfore / that was lest this yonge and fayre knyght blanchardyn were reteyned of the proude pucelle in amours as her owne specyall louer; the whiche thynge kept hym so sore at the hert of hym, that he, mouyd wyth grete wrath & yre, wold haue ronne vpon blanchardyn for to haue slayn hym / sayeng for to couere his right false Ialousy / that it was for the grete damage and grete slawghtir that he had don of his folke / and that by the feyth that he owed to his goddes, he sholde not abyde longe alyue, for he sholde nother ete nor drynke tyll that he sholde see hym deed /

gets jealous of him as loved by Eglantine,

and swears that he'll kill him forthwith.

¶ The xxv. chapiter conteyneth how kynge Alymodes wolde make to be put to deth blanchardyn / But at the request of the fayre Beatryse, his doughter, he respyted hym / And how the proude pucelle in amours had sent þ^e^ prouost toward the kynge Alymodes, offryng to hym a grete raenson for the delyueraunce of Blanchardyn, whiche he refused /

K. Alymodes's

THus after as ye haue herde, kynge Alymodes made his auowe, and sware his goddes / that he sholde neyther ete nor drynke tyl that Blanchardyn had lost his lyff. Wherof daryus, the sone of the same kynge Alymodes, and many other barons that were there present, had grete pyte, for the right grete beaulte and worthynes that they sawe and knewe in Blanchardyn /

son Darius

and other barons

pity Blanchardyn,

¶ But the best of them all was not so hardy that he durste speke one worde nor praye for hym, by cause they drad and fered euer sore kynge Alymodes / And thenne

but dare not speak for him.

his doughter Beatryse that was there, whiche had taken goode hede and well ouer loked the grete beaulte of Blanchardyn, and well had also consydered the grete and meruellous faytes of armes that she had seen hym do that day, prosterned or casted her self doune byfore her faders feet, on her knees humbly / requyryng, wyth bothe handes heued vp faste to gyder, that pyte and compassyon he wolde haue of the yonge knyght, and that hys lyf myght be saued. Kynge Alymodes heryng the request and humble prayer of his doughter, whiche he loued tenderly / ansuered to her and sayde: 'My ryght dere & right well beloued doughter, I wold for mekell goode that ye had not requyred me herof, & that ye had not ben here at this tyme / for the presence and syght of hym [1]for whom ye haue caused your humble supplycacion,[1] reneweth alle my sorowes. But for to obtempre youre request, for this tyme I graunte hym his lyf / but ye shall wyte that I shall sende hym in to the royalme of Salmandry, vnto the kynge of the geauntis brother, that is to wyte, Rubyon, whiche he hath slayne, and the whiche I loued as myn owne persone / for yf he had ben yet man alyue, I wolde haue gyuen you tyl his wyff / ¶ So may ye knowe that he shal doo goode Iustyce of hym, and shal take cruelle vengeaunce / And noon other wyse wyll I doo' / And syth dyde caste his eyen vpon the prouoste full proudely as by grete despyte, and tolde hym that he myght well go home ayen. And that he sholde not leue, but that he sholde departe his presence incontynent, or ellys he sholde make hym soone deye an euyll deth / And that nother for noo golde nor for no yefte that myght be don to hym, nor for noo manere of raenson, he shold not respyte nor yelde ayen blanchardin / But he sholde sende hym in to a suche place from whiche he sholde neuer retourne ayen. & thenne

But the King's daughter Beatrice

throws herself at his feet,

and prays him to spare Blanchardyn's life.

The King unwillingly

consents;

but says he will send Blanchardyn to Rubyon's brother,

who will take vengeance on him.

K. Alymodes orders the Provost off at once,

and declares he will never give up Blanchardyn.

[1—1] Wanting in the French.

the prouoste departed anone, & full sory of thaunsuere that kyng Alymodes had gyuen to hym, ful sore wepyng, went toward blanchardyn, & recounted hym the harde tydynges that had be made of hym. And euyn thus, as they sholde neuer haue seen eche other, they toke leue one of other. And after their leue taken / Blanchardyn, lokyng right pyteously vpon the prouost, prayed hym that he wold haue hym for recomended vnto the fayre, the proude pucelle in amours / besechyng her on his byhalue that she wolde not putte in oblyuyon nor forgete hym that is in her seruyse, [1]for he whom god wolde preserue can not peryshe.[1] The prouost heryng blanchardyn speke that, charged hym his erande to be do vnto the proude pucelle in amours, departed soon wythout eny more that he could say to blanchardyn, for he had no power to speke no more for the grete pyte that he had ouer hym / but retourned to the cyte so full of hertely sorowe that no man can expresse it to you, and rested hym not tyl he come to the / paleys, where he alighted doune and went forth in to the halle, and syth entred in to the chambre wher the noble pucelle was / vnto whom he recounted and tolde the harde & pytoyable tydynges, & the proude ansueres that kynge Alymodes had gyuen vnto him, wherof the right noble mayden made suche a sorowe & grete heuynesse that neuer was sen like / we shal leue her makynge her pytoyable complayntes, & shal retourne to speke of kynge Alymodes þ^e^ right and euyl tyraunt, that all taken was wyth anger and wrathe.

The Provost takes leave of Blanchardyn,

who sends a message of fidelity to Eglantine.

The Provost returns sorrowfully to Eglantine,

and tells her the hard tidings of her love, Blanchardyn.

She makes pitiable lamentations.

¶ The xxvj. chapitre foloweth, whiche conteyneth how darius had a commaundement don vnto hym in his faders byhalue, that he shold haue blanchardyn forth in

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

to Salamaundrye. ¶ And how the ship in whiche Blanchardyn was Inne, was perysshed by fortune and tempeste of the see, and were all drowned except blanchardyn / And how he cam toward the kynge of Maryenbourgh / that reteyned hym [1]in seruyse,[1] & of hym he made his constable /

After the departynge of the prouost, Alymodes the kyng gaaff commaundement vnto his sonn daryus, that he sholde tourne ayen in to Cassydonye, whiche is in the lande of Nourwaye, of whens he was kynge. ¶ And that he sholde take wyth hym his suster, and kepe wel his lande and countreye duryng the tyme that he sholde kepe his siege before Tourmaday / And that he sholde haue wyth hym blanchardyn / whome he sholde sende forth hastely assone as he were comen to Cassydonye / to be pressented on his byhalue to the kynge of salamandrye, whos brother blanchardyn had brought to dethe, [2]for to haue wrake vpon hym.[2] Daryus heryng his fadres commaundement, made to be redy a shippe right bygge and grete / wher Inne he and his suster entred wel garnysshed wyth folke & vytaylle / And in another small shippe that was there redy he made Blanchardyn to be brought ynne wyth thre score men that had the kepyng of hym / Whan they were redy they[3] wonde theyr saylles vp and departed / Grete pyte it was to see and here the pyteouse rewthe and complayntes that blanchardyn made / for well he wend that he sholde neuyr haue seen ayen her for whom he was brought in suche angwysshe and sorowe / We shal at this tyme leue to speke of hym,

K. Alymodes bids his son Darius go to his kingdom of Cassidonie in Norway,

and deliver Blanchardyn to the King of Salamandry,

whose brother, Rubyon, he had slain.

Darius embarks in a big ship,

and puts Blanchardyn in a small one.

Blanchardyn mourns his loss of Eglantine.

[1–1] de son hostel [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3] *Orig.* thy

and shal retourne to speke of the proude pucelle in amours, And of the grete tyraunte Alymodes that wasted al the countrey aboute the city of Tourmaday, & greued sore the towne and them of wyth-ynne wyth his engynes asmoche as he coude / How be it that the cytezeynes yssued oute often and slew fuson of their enmyes / And y^e^ fayre, the proude pucelle in amours that euermore had her sight that parte that she wyst her best beloued goon, whiche she wysshed sore agayne / lamentyng for hym, for she sawe playn ynough whan he departed from the porte, toke in her herte her leue of hym, full sore wepynge / She brought thene in remembraunce how swetly he had kyssed her, wherof she had take so grete a dyspleasure; 'but alas!' sayde she, 'this displeasure passed ouer manyfolde that other, and more than I can telle. Ha, A! fortune, shal I neuere haue noon other, but alwayes dysplaysure' / And after thes wordes she fel in a swone as half ded. And the ladyes and other gentyl women full pyteously wepyng, toke her vp anone, and had her to bedde, where fro she parted not six dayes after / Of that other part, Daryus and his folke, his suster wyth hym / & blanchardyn in the lytyl shippe, saylled soo longe that they arryued in the lande of Northweye, euyn at the hauene of the cyte of Cassadonye where they ancred / But or that daryus went out of his shippe, he commaunded and ordeyned to them that had kepynge of Blanchardyn / that they shold haue hym streyght forthe to the kynge of Salmaundrye / And that they sholde delyuere hym in his hande / And telle hym that it was he that had slayne Rubyon, his brother, byfore Tourmaday, where his fader kynge Alymodes was yet kepyng the syege, whiche made hym a present off hym that had kylled his brother, for to take vengeaunce thereof atte his wylle / They that had the charge to doo this, ansuered that they sholde doo hys commaundement. They departed from

K. Alymodes wastes the country round Tormaday.

The citizens make sallies on his men.

Eglantine mourns for Blanchardyn's departure.

She swoons, and is put to bed.

Blanchardyn reaches Norway, at the port of Cassidonie.

Darius orders him off to Salamandry,

to be given up to Rubyon's brother.

cassydonye; but ye may be wel in certayne that this departynge dysplaysed moche vnto Beatrise, Daryus suster / & ful fayne wolde haue putte ther vnto a remedy yf by any meanes she had coude; but atte that oure she had noo power to do soo / Blanchardyn, that in the lytyl ship was, was sore dolaunt whan he sawe hym self to be had forthe from the other, and thoughte well that a present sholde be made of hym in some straunge lande. he dyde reclame & calle vpon oure lord god right deuoutly, beseching that of his grace he wold haue pyte and mercy vpon hym, that he myght yet ones come to his sore desyred wylle / that is to wytte, to see his fayre lady, the proude mayden in loue, and that he wold kepe her sauff from kynge Alymodes handes / Ye may byleue well that Blanchardyn made grete sorowe and lamentacyon, [1]wyshyng full often that he may yet see ones his lady that he loued truly aboue all other.[1] ¶ And whan they were comen two days saylyng nyghe the coste of Salamandre, a grete tempeste roose in the see, and so horryble that the saylle of their shippe was all to-rent in peces, that all the maryners coude putte therto noo remedye. suche and so grete was the tempeste that they must gyue nedes to the wyndes and wawes of the see, the kepynge & the gydynge bothe of their shippe and of them alle that were ther Inne, whiche soone were brought besyde a grete roche, wher vpon their ship smote by suche a force / that she cloued anone in two peces, wher-by alle the mareners and þ^e^ sayde thre score men were perysshed and drowned in the see / And neuere non of them saued, But onely blanchardyn, that couched hym self alonge vpon the mast of the shippe, whiche enbraced & colled sore fast wyth bothe his armes. They were nyghe the lande, as it is sayde, where as the sayd mast and Blanchardyn vpon it was cast of the wawes vnto the shores. whan

His ship sails,

much to the Princess Beatrice's displeasure.

Blanchardyn prays to God to pity him,

and let him see again his love, Eglantine.

A great storm rises,

the ship drives

against a rock,

splits in two,

and all the men are drownd,

save Blanchardyn,

who clings to the mast.

He is cast ashore.

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

blanchardyn felt hym self nyghe a grounde, and fast by the lande, he forsoke his maste, & lepte from hit to the lande; and whan he was come there, he kneled doune right sone vpon bothe his knees, and hauyng his handes heued vp toward the heuens, rendered and gaff louynge and thankes vnto our lord, that thus had delyuered hym from that grete parell where he was Inne / ¶ After that he had made his oryson to oure lord, he toke on his waye all a fote, for to drawe hym self to that aduenturé that god wolde sende hym / And walked so longe tyl that he fonde not, fer wythin the contrey, a right fayre towne, whiche is now called Maryenbourgh, and is in the lande of Pruce / wythin the whiche, at þ^e^ same tyme, was a right myghty kynge that kept ther a grete feste, wher-atte he had called alle his barons and lordes, & alle the gentylmen of there aboute, whiche alle arryued there vpon the daye that to them was prefyxed or poynted for to come / ¶ Blanchardyn thoughte wythin hym self that he wolde make black his vysage, or of coloure suche that the folke of that contrey had hers atte that tyme; he toke and gadred som herbs that serued hym ther to, and rubbed therwyth his vysage all aboute. And in lyke wyse his handes / by cause that of noo body he sholde not be knowen. He coude well speke dyuers langages, and in especyall [1]the hygh duche[1] tonge. He purueyed and dyde ordeyne hym self so, that yf he had ben met of them that had seen hym afore, they myght not thenne haue knowen hym. ¶ Whan he had apareylled hym self well, he toke his way forth on, and folke he met ynoughe by the waye, of whom he asked the name of the towne that he sawe a fore hym / and they tolde hym that it was the city of Maryenbourgh / He went so longe that he cam in to the towne, and asked whiche was the waye to the paleys, for right well he coude

Blanchardyn kneels down,

and thanks God for his deliverance.

Then he walks

to Marienburg in Prussia,

where a great King has gatherd all his lords.

Blanchardyn stains his face and hands with herbs.

He knows the High-Dutch tongue.

He asks the folk

the way to the palace,

[1–1] thioise

speke the langage of the contrey, as it is sayde. Men shewed hym the paleys; and he went in, where he fonde the kynge amonge his barons, to whom he made the
4 reuerence righte humbly & honorable, as ful wele coude he doo it. The kynge thenne demaunded of hym yf he was a yoman or els a squier, and Blanchardyn tolde hym that he was a knyght, & that from his contree
8 that sore ferre was, thens he was departed / for to come & serue hym, for by cause of the grete renommee þat he had herde speke of him, and how thorugh fortune & tempeste of the see his ship was perished, & he only
12 had saued hymsilf. The kynge ful besily behelde Blanchardyn, that semed to hym a full faer yonge man, and wele shapen of all membres / And wyth thys he praysed hym ryght gretly that he was a knyght, and
16 so thought in hymself that he was come of som highe & nobyl extraccion, for his fayr behauore & assured contenaunce that the kynge sawe to be in hym, gaffe demonstracion of the trouble of what byrthe he was
20 come of; wherfore the kynge was right wele content, and receyued hym of his hous. And commanded to his stewarde that he sholde be brought to a chamber, and that all suche thynges that necessarye were to
24 hym / shulde be delyuered wythoute onye gaynsaynge vnto hym: the whiche thynge, after the commaundement youen, was doon / he was ledde in to a chambre fayre & clene, where was raymentes, & full riche clothynge
28 were to hym delyuerd, wherwyth he dyde araye hymsilf. whan he was thus clothed & richely arayed, he semed wele to be a man comen of some nobyl hous. he cam ayen anon toward the kyng, that ful gladli sawe
32 hym and moche plesed him, and so dyd he to all þe knyghtes and other of the kynges courte. The kynge, that gretli desired to knowe of his estate, asked of hym what he was, of what lande and of what lynage. blanch-
36 ardyn aunsuerd þat [1]he was of the lande of Grece, and

and salutes the King.

Blanchardyn asks

to serve the King of Marienburg.

The King likes the look of him,

accepts his service,

has him well clad,

and asks him what and whence he is.

[1] F j.

Blanchardyn says that he is from Greece,

sone to a kynge / 'but, sire, for cause of the right grete renomme and goode fame that renneth of you ouer all the world, is a wylle entred wythin me to departe

which he left without leave of the King, his father.

secretly out of my countreye, wyth a fewe men of myne, wythout licence of the kynge, my fader, and brought wyth me but thre score men / We toke the see, and cam nyghe by the castell of Mocastre, byfore the whiche

A storm drove

a right grete & Impetuouse tempeste rose, that lasted vs thre dayes and thre nyghtes without ceasse / In so moche that fortune, thrugh stormes of wyndes, made

his ship against a rock,

oure vessel to smite ayenst a grete roche, and brake, so

and he alone escaped,

that all my men were drowned, and noon escaped sau onely myself that ye see here. And wyth grete peyne and traueyl, all a fote, I am come toward you hether / Yf I sholde all suche aduentures as I haue fonde by the waye, reherce vnto you, ouer moche myght let you

thanks to Mahoun,

the heryng of hem / but thanked be Mahoum, that this grace hath doon vnto me / I am comen to do you

to serve the King of Marienburg.

seruyse after my powere' / 'Vassell,' sayde the kynge / 'of your commyn vnto me I am right glad / and wel pleaseth me your seruyse, and wyl not reffuse it / And for the grete losse and grete trouble and peyne that ye haue had for to seke me / rayson requyreth / that ye shold haue a goode reward of me / Well, ye are come

The King appoints

to passe for to serue me in a werre whiche to vs is happed of newe, ayenst a kynge whos countrey is not fer hens / And for thys werke to conducte & brynge to

Blanchardyn head captain of his army, to fight his foe.

an ende, I graunte you euen now, and chese you, for to be in oure behalue Conestable and hed captayne of oure present armye, for the grete trust and hope that we haue in your worthynes and personne' /

¶ The xxvij. chapitre conteyneth how a knyght, all sore wounded, cam and brought tydynges to the kynge of Ma-

ryenborugh, that his enmye, the kynge of Poleyne, was entred wythin his royalme.

WHan the kynge had precented this grete worship to blanchardyn, it nedeth not to be asked yf he was therof gladde / or yf he forgate to thanke the kynge for the same; yet he dyde th[e]rin his deuoyer so well, that none coude haue doon it better, sayeng to hym in this manere / 'Syr, sith that this grete honoure ye haue proffred me / euyn now forthwythall I do accepte it, promyttynge you that all my strenghe, myght & vnderstandynge, that the goddes haue gyuen to me, I wyll putte & applie in your seruyse' / The kynge thenne, wyth a right glad chere, receyuyd blanchardyn, and toke hym by the hande, and sayd vnto hym: 'vassel, yf ye serue me well / a grete rewarde shal be redy yeuen to you therfore of me' / Ryght thus as the kynge was talkynge so wyth blanchardyn / cam there a knyghte armed of al peces, that was sore hurt in dyuerse places of his body, his shelde crasyd and broken, and his helmet all to-kutte / he cam byfore the kynges presence, sayeng to hym all an hyghe / 'Alas, noble kynge, where is now becomen the grete prowesses and hardynesse that were wont to be in the, that soo well hast ruled and kept vs of soo long tyme paste, Whan thou suffrest now thyn enmyes to sette thy land al on a fyre, and wymmen & children to be slayn of them, are comen ferre wythin they royalme / And but yf thou putte a prouysyon therto shortly, thou shalt, are thre dayes be passed, see thy self beseged wythin the cyte of Maryenbourgh / & knowe for certayn that the kynge of polonye, thy mortall aduersarye, is there in his persone, whiche hath auaunced hym self for to brenne and waste all the lande, the whiche thynge he shal mowe well doo, yf remedy be not [1]sone putte by the therunto; and alredy

Blanchardyn thanks the King,

and promises to devote his strength and skill to his service.

A wounded knight arrives with tidings that the King of Poland is harassing the land,

[1] F ij

and is near the city;

thou mayste see by me that they be not fer from hens, for as I was commynge towarde the / I dyde fynde

his folk have wounded

thyn enmyes byfore me, whiche haue broughte me to the plyght that thou seest me nowe ynne / and yf wele

and nearly taken the knight.

yhorsed I had not ben / I shulde neuer haue escaped, but other I muste deye or be taken of hem.' Whan the kyng herde the knyght speke, he vnderstode wele by his wordes / that the thynge wente euyll for hym / he asked hym in what countree of his realme he had lefte his enmyes. 'Syr,' aunswerd the knyght / 'hyt is wele xxx. myle from hens to the place where I lefte

Within three days, the Poles will be before Marienburg.

them / but to myn aduyse, or euer thre dayes be past / but yf ye se a remedy, ye shal se them lodged here byfore the toun in their tentys & pauyllyons.' The kynge thenne, after the knyght had thus spoken to hym, he gaff commandement to his styward that he sholde be seen wele to / that he were helyd of his woundes, that were grete, by his owne leches cyrurgyens / the whiche thynge was doon as he had commaunded / [1]The kynge wyth grete haste assembled

The King assembles his Council to plan their defence.

them of his counseyll, for to see how a remedye shulde be had to the grete daunger that lykely was to comme, wythoute a goode prouysion were had.[1]

[Chapter XXVIII.] How the kyng of Maryenborugh toke Sadoyne his sone to blanchardyn, & thre score thowsand men wyth / for to goo ayenste his enmyes to fyghte wyth hem / and to caste hem oute of his realme.

After that the kynge had herde the knyght, that had rehersed to hym the commynge of his enmyes / he sent for his lordes & barouns, whiche cam

The King of Marienburg tells his Council the

to hym in his paleys; & to them he shewed all that he had vnderstonde of the sayd knyghte / prayenge

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

them that they wolde gyue hym counseyll therupon, to thende he myght resyste & goo ayenste the dampnable enterpryse of his enmyes / The barouns and counsellers answerde to the kynge, they that shold speke togyder, for to aduyse the manere & how this thynge myght be conducted. They wythdrewe them self asyde, & assembled them in grete nombre to haue consideracion vpon this matere / the whiche they sore debatyd emonge them self by many & dyuerse oppynyons; but at last they dyde conclude togyder all of one accorde / that the kyng shold sende his new Conestable ayenst his aduersaryes, acompanyed wyth thre score thousaund off the most valyaunt & best chosen men of his royalme / & that he sholde haue wyth hym the kynges sone, that called was Sadoyne, by cause that the barons & knyghtes of the sayd royalme sholde go wyth better wylle wyth hym / They went ayen to the kynge, & proferred and tolde hym their aduyse / Whan the kynge had herde speke his barons, the thynge was to hym right agreable / he called blanchardyn his new Conestable / & tolde hym how, by hym & his barons, was ordeyned to hym the charge & conduyte of his werre / and that wyth thre score thousaund men he sholde go ayenst his enmyes, for to fyght wyth hem & dryue hem oute of his royalme / Whan Blanchardyn vnderstode the kynge, he was therof right glad, & thanked hym of the grete honoure that he dyde vnto hym / Thenne sent the kynge his *lett*res myssyfe[1] in to al the partyes of his royalme, to be directed in all haste to his barons & knyghtes, that they sholde wythout delaynge come hastely toward hym. The messagers were sone redy, that bare the letters to them vnto whom they were dyrected / & so grete a dilygence they made that wythin short terme dyde arryue in the cyte of maryenbourgh, fro the first to the last, wel

news of the Polish invasion.

They advise him to send Blanchardyn, and 60,000 of his best men,

with his son Sadoyne, against the Poles.

The King tells Blanchardyn,

who gladly accepts the task.

[1] *Orig.* mysfyfe

60,000 Marienburgers assemble, well-armed.

thre score thousaund men of werre, alredy prest & well apparelled for to deffende their royalme & to go ayenst their [1]enmyes / & whan the kyng sawe his men that were comme, he was of them right glad / & so was blanchardyn, that had the rule ouer hem all, to whome he gaff in commaundement that they sholde be redy on the morowe by tymes, for to departe in the felaweship of Sadoyne, the kynges sone, & of hym. Whan the morne cam, trompettes and claryons byganne to blowe thourgh the towne, & in the subarbes of the same / They alle departed from their lodgis, & cam wel apparelled, in gode araye to the felde / where they awayted after the counstable, that shold be their ruler & their guyde / the whiche camm toward the kynge, & sadoyne wyth hym, & to take their leue of hym / The kyng, seyeng his sonis departyng, saide to blanchardyne: 'Vassall! vassal![2] to whom I haue taken in hande that thynge most dere to me in this world / that is my sone, my royalme, my knyghtes & my barons. I beseke & praye þ^e^, in the worship of the goddes, that at tyme of nede, for the defense of my royalme, thou wylt vttir & shewe that whiche I see appiere wyth in þ^e^, that callest thy self the sone of a kynge, in whom ought to be graffed [3]& sette[3] the floure of knight-hode, with proesse & hardynesse, [4]wher-with thou art armed, as I holde'[4] / 'Syre,' sayde blanchardyn, 'as for me, thourgh the helpe of þ^e^ goddes, I shal so moche do, that wythin fewe dayes your enmyes shal haue no cause to be glad therof / [5]& in their folysshe pryde I shal succombe & brynge a lowe their corage'[5] / And thenne, wythout mo wordes, sadoyne & blanchardyn toke leue of the kynge /

[1] F iij.

Clarions summon them.

The King prays

Blanchardyn to show himself the son of a King

in prowess and valour.

Blanchardyn says he will lower his foes' pride.

[2–2], [3–3] Wanting in the French.

[4–4] dont Ie te cuide estre arme.

[5–5] Et de la folle entreprinse quilz ont faicte pour lorgueil et oultrage qui les esuient contre vous. vouldroy abaissier leur couraige follastre

¶ The xxix chapitre conteyneth, how blanchardyn & sadoyne & their folke, discomfyted their enmyes, & how blanchardyn toke prysoner the kynge of polonye, the whiche he putte in the handes of the kynge of Maryenbourgh. And of the worship that they made to Blanchardyn /

After their leue taken of the kynge, the two barons mounted on horsbacke, & camen to the felde, where they fonden their folke renged to-gydre; to whome they commaunded to departe, holdyng their waye toward their enmyes, whiche they fonde two dayes after, all redy aparailled for to fyght, for they were aduertysed afore of the commyng of blanchardyn / Whan they two oostes sawe eche other / the noyse & the cry began to be grete on bothe sydes / soo beganne they to marche forth toward eche other in right fayr ordonnaunce, made by blanchardyn, that conduyted the first bataylle; & had lefte sadoyne in the seconde baytaylle, in the kepynge of two noble prynces, that were there comen with hym / The shot beganne to fle of bothe partyes so fast & soo thycke, that the lyght of þ^e^ sonne was kept wythal from þ^e^ fyghters / And syth cam to Ioyne hem self togyder wyth sperys & wyth dartys, and wyth swerdes and axes, wherof they hewe eche other, in so moche that the felde was sone couerd wyth the bodyes ded that were slayne there / The horses went, trauayllyng after theym their owne bowellys, rennyng ouer hylles & dales here & there / And blanchardyn thenne, that in proesse & hardynes was entred, toke his spere doune, & ranne ayenst the brother of the kynge of polonye, that grete damage had done to þ^e^ prusyens / he rought hym so sore, & wyth so grete a strenghthe, that he shoued and passed his spere

Blanchardyn meets his troops,

and in two days they come on their Polish enemies.

Blanchardyn heads his first battalion, Sadoyne the second.

The fight begins.

Blanchardyn runs the King of Poland's brother

right through the body, and kills him.

alle thourgh & thourgh his body, that he fel doune sterk ded, wherof the noyse & the cry rose vp grete thourgh the batall of þ^e^ polonyens. ful sone cam the tydynges therof to the kynge, that grete sorowe made for his brothers dethe / he sware and made his auowe that he shold neuer haue Ioye at his herte vnto the tyme his brothers deth were auenged / Sore an angred & ful of wrath, smote hym self in to the thyckest of [1]the bataylle, where he dyde vpon the prussyens grete merueylles of armes, so that there as he arryued no man durste not abyde nor come nyghe hym. Of that other parte was blanchardyn, that so many fayttes of armes had doon that, or euer his spere was broken, he had slayne and brought to deth, and borne to the grounde more than xxiiij[2] of his enmyes / And syth toke in hande his swerde, wher wythall he brake the grete presses; he kutte & cloue the polonyens by so grete fyersnes that his swerde & bothe his armes were dyed wyth red blode / He semed not to them that sawe hym to be a man mortall, but semed better to be a fende, or a spiryte of the fayrye. he brake þ^e^ arayes of them that were renged, and the grete presses he departed, & made waye byfore hym. Alle fled, & non durste abyde hym, for the grete & merueyllouse faytes of armes that he made there, wherof they of prusse that wyth hym were, gaff hem self grete merueylle. they folowed after at þ^e^ backe of hym, as the yonge lambe do the sheep. sadoyne & his bataylle dyde approche their enmyes; they smote hem self wythin them, callyng a grete crye, wher for they of polonye lepte and reculed hem self abake [3]six passes or moo.[3] But the kynge of polonye, seeyng his folke go backe / was ful sory / he ascryed & dyde calle vpon his mayster Conestable, that he sholde ryde forth vpon his enmyes / þ^e^ whiche thynge he dyde, wherof the batayll began to

The King rushes to the fight,

[1] F iiij.

and slays many Prussians.

Blanchardyn

kills more than 34 Poles.

They think him a fiend or spirit of faery.

All flee before him.

Sadoyne charges with his second battalion.

The Poles draw back.

[2] dix. [3–3] plus de six pas.

be reforced ayen, so that þ^e^ prussyens, wolde they or not, muste lose grou*n*de and goo abak / And sholde haue be full sore dealed wyth all yf they had not be soone socoured of Blanchardyn / the whiche, seeyng his folke recuyelle abacke, gaffe the spore to his hors, & cam ayenst hym that bare the cheff standarde of polonye, to whom he gaaff soo mercueylouse a stroke wyth his goode swerde that he cloue hym vnto the brest, and fell doune emonge the hors feet / ¶ Thenne byganne the noyse and the crye to ryse vp grete of the polonyens, that trowed to haue taken vp ayen their standarde. But blanchardyn, whiche at that owre slept not, smot hym self emonge them / he kutte and cloue them that nother helmet nor shelde coude helpe there / Soo that none was so hardy to approche hym / His folke dyde folowe hym, and putte hem self vpon their enmyes, so that it was force the polonyens to recule abak the space of an acre of lande or more. The kynge of polonye, that sawe his folke recule & fle, and his st*a*ndarde ybrought to the grounde thourgh the valyauntnes and strengthe of one knyght alone, [1]sware his goode goddes[1] that he sholde neuere haue Ioye at herte tyll that the deth of his brother, and the damage that he had receyued were by hym auenged / he smote hym self in to the bataylle, and relyed his folke to gyder as well as he coude / Soo chose he Blanchardyn, that grete slawghter dyde make ouer his men. he toke a bygge spere in his hande, and drewe that part where he sawe hym that so moche of euyll and damage had borne to hym / Blanchardyn sawe hym right well commynge toward hym; he toke also a grete spere from the hande of a knyght of his, that was nyghe hym, and cam ayenst the kynge of Polonye, that soone perceyued hym. They brought alowe their sperys, & ranne sore one vpon the other, and gaff eche other soo

Blanchardyn cleaves the chief Standard-bearer of Poland to the chest.

The King of Poland and Blanchardyn charge one another.

[1]–[1] Iura ses bon dieux

vnmesurable strokes that the kynge of Polonye spere brake al to peces / but that other spere that blanchardyn had, that was of wode right stronge and harde, brake not, But roughte the kynge of Polonye wythall by

The King is unhorst,

suche a strengthe and vertue, that he bare hym from his horse doune to the grounde / ¶ Blanchardyn anon cast from hym his goode spere, & syth tooke his goode swerde in hande, and cam to the kynge for to haue

and, to save his life,

smytten of his hed / but þ^e^ kynge, seyenge that noon of his folke came for to socoure hym, dyde take his

gives himself up to Blanchardyn,

swerde to blanchardyn, yeldynge hym vp vnto hym, & prayed hym to saue hym his lyff / Thenne was the kynge redely taken to mercy of blanchardyn, that toke hym by the hande, & gaf hym to ten*n* knyghtes for to

and is kept in custody.

kepe hym, that had hym out of þ^e^ presse [1]by cause that they sholde be more sure of hym.[1] Whan they of polonye sawe & knewe their kynge to be take, they wyst wel ynough that he was not to be recouered of

The Poles flee,

hem / wherfor gaffe vp the place & fled awaye / And

and are taken or slain.

so fynably were all the polonyens discomfyted, taken, or brought to dethe, that fewe of them escaped / but grete gayne made there they of prusse, whiche was departed by blanchardyn to them that had hit deserued. After this bataylle doon, & that they had chassed their

Blanchardyn

enmyes oute of their royalme / Blanchardyn wyth grete glorye & grete tryumphe, & Sadoyne his trusty felawe

returns to Marienburg,

wyth hym, retourned toward Maryenborugh, and their folke wyth them, where they were receyued of the kynge wyth grete Ioye & praysynge / Thenne cam blanchardyn to the kynge, and to hym sayde: 'Syre, I do yelde and delyuere in to your handes the kynge of Polonye your enemye, whiche I haue taken wyth the helpe of your sone, and of your noble and worthy cheualrye; & ye may now doo wyth hym what youre

whose King

goode plesure is or shalbe' / The kynge, that therof

[1]–[1] Wanting in the French.

was well aduertysed by his sone and by his other barons that the bataylle had ben ouercome, & the kynge of polonye taken, thourgh þ^e^ right excellent & hyghe proesse of Blanchardyn, toke hym in his armes, and syth sayde vnto hym: 'Ha, my right trusty frende & right noble knight, fulfylled with al gode maners and vertues; that hath be the pyler, susteynynge [1]vnder thy swerde[1] bothe my self & all my royalme[2] / I am not a power to reward the after the meryte that ye haue deserued to haue of me. Well ye haue shewed, & doon perfytly [3]to be vnderstande[3] thexcellent vertu of humplite that is in you / and the right hyghe and noble lynage that ye be descended of.[4] But fro this owre now I betake my self, my sone, & my royalme in your protection, & wol that all your commaundementes be obeyed and put to execucyon in all manere poyntes.' The noble Blanchardyn thenne heryng the kynge, that suche honoure made vnto hym, sayd: 'sire, suche a worship apparteyneth not to be doon to me / for I am not to the value therof / And it suffyseth me right well to be symply taken and kept as one of youre knyghtes wyth you and youre soone.' The kynge wyst not to thanke hym ynough, that soo had delyuered hym from his enmyes, and had put in his handes that kynge that moost he hated in this world / Wherfore he sayde vnto Blanchardyn that he had a Cosyn, that was of a right excellent beaulte, whiche he wolde gyue hym right gladly to be his wyff. But Blanchardyn dyde excuse him self, saynge þat in his countrey he was trouthplyght tyl another / The kynge herynge blanchardyn, helde hym therof for excused. right grete honoure was don vnto hym of the kynge & of all his barons / but aboue

praises him,

and puts himself and the realm under Blanchardyn's orders.

The King offers his beautiful cousin to Blanchardyn as a wife;

but he is trothplight to another.

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

[2] de mon people deffendeur / De vefues et orphenins secure garde et droituriere

[3–3] Wanting.

[4] sans nulle doubte et as bien averi fie tes parolles.

al other he was most beloued & dere yholde of Sadoyne, the kynges sone, that was a fayr knyght & yonge, right hardy and valyaunt; and also Blanchardyn loued hym moche, & yet more he wolde haue do yf he had be a crysten man / but nought he durste to hym speke therof / ¶ Here we shall leue to speke of Blanchardyn, & shal leue hym wyth the kynge of Maryenbourgh in prusse, and wyth his sone Sadoyne, that soo dere loued hym that wythout he was alwayes wyth hym, he myght not endure. but what so euer goode sporte & pleysure that blanchardyn sawe ther make for his sake, nothyng coude playse nor brynge hym tyll his hertys ease, But euer more reforced and redoubled his sorowe at alle tymes that he remembred wythin hym self his right swete lady & goode maystres, the whiche he had lefte beseged wythin her cyte of Tourmaday by the vntrewe and crymynel tyraunt Alymodes, kynge of Cassydonye, that had made his othe neuere to departe thens Into the tyme that he had tyl his wyf the right fayre and proude pucelle in amours /

Blanchardyn

always sorrows for his lady Eglantine.

¶ The xxx. chapitre conteyneth how daryus the sone of Alimodes, by fortune of the see, arryued in the lande of ffryse, where he dyde grete hurt, damage, & toke the kynge of ffryse, the fader of Blanchardyn, and had hym wyth hym prysoner vnto Cassydonye.

WEll ye haue herde by-fore how Blanchardyn was taken and had prysoner by kynge Alymodes folke, the whiche betoke hym to his soone Daryus for to brynge hym to cassydonye; And þe manere how he escaped the fortune of the see, and cam & arryued in the lande of prusse; Duryng the whiche tyme

Darius, the son

Daryus, the sone of Alymodes, the kynge beyng in his cyte of Cassydonye, awaytyng after tydynges of them that had forth Blanchardyn toward the kynge of Sala-
4 mandrye. But his awaytyng that he made was in vayne, for they were all perysshed and drowned in the see, as ye haue herde aboue / ¶ Whan Daryus sawe noo tydynges, he coulde not vnderstande of them; he
8 made redy a grete nauye laden wyth men of werre, and wyth artylary, and vytaylles for to goo agayn to the syege of Tourmaday toward his fader / Whan all these thynges were redy, he toke his leue of his suster
12 Beatryse, to whom he betoke his citye to kepe. he syn entred his shyp, made to drawe vp ancres, and began anoon for to sayle, so that wythin a lytil / whyle they were oute of syghte and fer from the hauen. and so
16 longe they saylled wyth goode wynde, that they were anoon nyghe the realme of Tourmadaye; but as they shulde haue taken lande, a storme began to come, grete & horribyll wynde to blowe, that rose oute of the
20 landes, soo that, wether they wolde or not, they must habandoune their barkes & galleys to the wyndes & wawes of the see, wherfor they were ful sore afrayed. The wynde & the see were so horryble to here & see,
24 that they wende all to peryshe anoon / They were full sone y-caste from the realme of Tourmaday / And the wynde brought them in to a lytyl Isle, longyng to the realme of fryse, the whiche was fruytfull & right fayr,
28 and replenyshed wyth all maner of goodes / So that bycause of the grete commodytees of that Isle, Blanchardyns fader, kynge of fryse, went for to sporte hym there thre or four tymes in the yere, that he shulde for-
32 gete ther by the grete sorowe that was atte his herte for loue of his sone Blanchardyn, of whom no tydynges he had syth his departynge from hym / And also for of the grete dysplesure that he had of the quene his wyffe,
36 that suche a sorowe made for her entyerli beloued

of K. Alymodes, waits in vain for the drownd keepers of Blanchardyn.

Darius makes ready his ships,

and sails

towards Tormaday,

but is driven to an isle of Friesland,

where Blanchardyn's father, the King of Friesland,

sone / blanchardin / whiche she wyste not where he was becom / that no body lyuyng myghte gyue her consolacoun / nor brynge her herte oute of trystesse & sorowe. And ther for the noble kynge, wyth a fewe of his folke, was come to the sayde Isle for to dysporte hym there, and to dryue his fantassye away. In the whiche Isle he had do make a fayr paleyce ryghte delectable / Duryng the tyme that he was thus there, the sayd aduenture happed, that daryus, the sone of kynge Alymodes, wyth his grete naue, by fortune of the see arryued there, as it is sayde, euen at that same hauen that was most nyghe to the sayde paleys where the kynge of fryse lay / [1]Daryus, that of his beynge ther was soone aduertysed,[1] came anone wyth his puissaunce of men to the paleys, where they founde but litil resistaunce. whan they were come there, they fonde three[2] of þ^e^ kynge of frysys seruaun*t*es, to whom they asked to whom belongeth that paleys, and how the lande was called. The sayd thre men ansuerd them wyth grete fere, that the paleyce and the ysle was bylongyng vnto the kynge of ffryse, that was come there thre dayes afore that / 'frendes,' sayde daryus, 'what lawe is there kept amonge you in this lande?' / 'Syre,' sayde one of hem, 'we holden on the crysten feyth, & are byleuyng in Ihesu cryste' / Thenne daryus, knowyng that he was fortunatly arryued vpon the crysten peple, enmye of his lawe / co*m*aun*d*ed that they sholde be all slayne & brought to deth / the whiche thynge was putte to execucyon after his co*m*aun*d*ement, except vpon one of hem that escaped, that dyde soo moche, that he went & entred in to the paleys thurghe the wykettes of the gate, that of a custume were alleweyes

happens to be enjoying himself.

Darius and his men come to the palace,

learn that its folk are Christians,

and accordingly kill them all,

save one,

[1—1] Daire et toute sa nauire y vint arriuer et prendre port par vng bien matin Il fist jette les ancres puis saillirent hors tous ensamble moult Ioyeux de ce que hors de la tourmente de la mer estoient eschappez. Mais pas bien ne scauoient en quel pays Ilz-estoient arriuez. [2] *Orig.* there

lefte open. And whan[1] he was come wyth ynne, he made a scrye, and called alowde after the watche / so that euery man cam forth for to doo his deuoyre, [2]eche of hem in his rowme[2] in defending the place after their powere / & whan he was come as ferre as the halle wythin the paleys, he bygan*n*e to reforce his callynge, cryinge wyth a hyghe voyce / sainge þ*at* 'they were all lost, and that þ^e^ sarrasyns were desce*n*ded from their shippes byfore þ^e^ paleyce in grete no*m*bre.' the*n*ne rose & cam they of wythin out of all partyes of the place, armed & arrayed as haste requyred, and no bettre / Soone was the tydynges herof brought to the kynge, that at that owre was at his rest, and slept fast as a man that doubted hym self of noo suche aduenture to be falle / he a-woke out of his slepe thurghe the pyteouse crye that of his men was made. Notwythstandyng he made hym self redy, and made a goode ordynau*n*ce as a prynce of hyghe corage and grete vertue / for in all poyntes he was a right valyaunt and a hardy prynce / but ouer sodaynly he was taken. Neuerthelesse, full nobly, lyke a man of grete corage, he admonested his folke, and trowed to haue goon to the yate of his palayce, the whiche was all redy wonne and taken / And daryus and his folke were entred Inne / The kynge of fryse seynge his paleys wonne, a grete sorowe toke hym at his herte of that he was so take*n* vnbeware / And anone hastely he and his folke went and sought wythin the place where they myght saue hymself best / but ouer sore oppressed they were, and of so nyghe chassed that neuer one of them escaped, but he was taken or ded / The kynge was taken and seasid, the handes yboun*n*de & the eyen yblynded, and sent in to the shippes by daryus, and lykewyse was doon of all his barons that were there / After that this grete myshap was thus falle to the kynge of fryse /

who rouses the watch,

and says the Saracens are at hand.

The King of Friesland wakes,

and hopes to resist, but finds

his palace occupied by Darius;

he is seized, bound, blinded, and sent on board Darius's ship.

[1] *Orig.* wahn [2–2] chacun en son lieu accoustume

The Isle is plunderd by Darius's men,

Daryus & his folke serched the paleys / they robbed alle the richesses and goodes that were ther Inne / & were al brought in to daryus shippes / ¶ Thees pytoyable thynges thus y-happed, they made their horses to be had out of their shippes, and anone ouer ranne all the ysle, & wasted and dystroyed all the countrey, and slewe men, wymen, and children bothe yonge and olde /

and the cattle carried off to the ships.

they toke and rauysshed alle the bestyall, as oxen, kene, and shepe, wherof was there wythout nombre, and had them in to their shippes whyche they charged wyth the praye and gayne that they made there in the

The palace is fired.

sayd Isle. And syn they dyde putte the palayce all in a fire, and toke wyth them grete nombre of prysoners, and entred agen in to their shippes, wyth grete Ioye & gladnes for the goode aduenture that they had fonde.

The King of Friesland sorrows.

all thus in grete dyspleasure & heuynes was taken þ^e^ kyng of frise, and was broughte as a prisoner, sore wepyng & sorowynge his byttirnesses. The poure sorwfull kyng had his herte all replenished wyth sorowe & heuynes, of the whiche the nobel quene his

His wife

wyff shall haue parte whan thees pituable tydynges shall come to her eeris, for she toke in her self suche a sorow & so grete a displesure therfor, wyth þat that she sorowed before for the departynge of her dere sone blanchardyn / that she was constrayned thorugh grete

swoons,

passion & bytternes of hert to falle in a swoune; for her legges nor feete myghte not bere her, and not wythoute a cause, and bycamme so sore febil, & so full of sorowe / that atte the laste, what for her sone blanchardyn as for þ^e^ loue of her goode husbande & her lorde, she toke

and then dies.

suche a sekenes that her soule departed from the body of her / And thus the noble ladye & goode quene of fryse ended her dayes in heuynes & sorowe, [1]for the loue of her lorde that she so myserably had loste.[1]

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

¶ The xxxj. chapiture conteyneth howe daryus arryued in to the ooste of kynge Alymodes his fader, wher he was receyuyd wyth grete Ioye [1]for loue of the vitaylles that he broughte vnto them there.[1]

WHan daryus entred ayen in his ship, he thanked moche his goddes, of aduenture & good fortune that was happed to hym; he made the ancres to be drawen vp and the sayles to be haled a lofte. The wynde & the see were apeased, and a softe wynde goode for them byganne to ryse oute of the west, that droef forth their shippes there as they wolde, and wythoute lettyng arryued on the therde daye byfore the cytye of Tourmaday, where as thoost of kyng Alymodes was lodged / they cast their ancres, & ful sone they were knowen of kynge Alymodes that hastly cam wyth hys barons toward the hauen / for to welcom daryus his sone whiche was com a lande, & fonde his fader / that wyth grete Ioye and gladnes receyued, askyng of hem how he had doon syn his partyng from hym / Daryus al alonge recounted to hym how by fortune of the see they arryued & entred in to an Isle of the see / whiche was crysten / where they dyde fynde a kyng ryght puyssaunt / whiche he had broughte wyth hym prysoner. And also tolde hym how he had dystroyed the sayd Isle, & brente the paleys that was there, & had brought wyth them a grete praye & vytall ynough / as wyne & corne, sheepe & oxen, for to susteyn his oost the space of thre monthes and more / Wherof kyng Alymodes & they of his oost were oute of mesure glad / but & yf god wol kepe the goode prouost of Tourmaday / he shall haue or thys two days be paste his parte of the sayd praye / Wher-

Darius sails from the Isle,

and arrives at Tormaday.

His father, K. Alymodes, welcomes him,

and is glad of the Frisian stores he has brought.

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

of the Ioye shal be renewed amonge the knyghtes & pepyll of Tourmaday, that grete scarcenes had of fleshe & of other vytaylle / After that daryus had thus recounted to his fader his aduenture that to hym was of late happed / they two both to gyder cam toward theire tentes talkyng of many thynges / Daryus demaunded of his fader [1]how they of þ^e^ cytye dyd,[1] & yf hit was longe agoo that they made eny yssue oute of their toun / Alimodes aunsuerd to hym, and sayd that it was more than a monthe ago that they neuer made noo yssue, wherof men sholde take eny hede / and that he thought wele that grete defaulte of vytaylles they had wyth-in, and that they were [2]made full symple, syth that the yonge knyght was taken whiche I betok you for to be brought vnto the kynge of salamandrye / 'Syre,' sayde Daryus, 'I haue doon of hym as ye commaunded me' / But neuer syth that they parted from me I haue herde noo tydynges of hem, nor of hym, nor of thre score men of myn owne that I dyde sende for to make present of the knyght crysten, wherof I haue gyuen me full ofte grete merueylle.' They thenne seased their wordes / he was al nyght wyth his fader Alymodes, vnto the morowe that Daryus made hym self redy by thordonnaunce of his fader to retourne in his cyte of cassydonye. ryght grete Ioye and gladnes made they of the oost, for they made no doubte at all of their enmyes. Daryus, after the feste & Ioyouse talkyng that he had wyth his fader and wyth his barons / He toke his leue for to retourne and take his shippynge. [2]The kynge and the barons dyde conueye hym vnto the ship where he entred ynne,[2] commaundyng hym in the

The Tormadians have made no sally since K. Alymodes took Blanchardyn;

[2] G j.

but of him Darius has heard nothing.

Next morning

Darius sails,

[1–1] comment ceulx de lacite faisoient

[2–2] Desquelz Il auoit fait deschargier tousles vinres pour revitailler lost de son pere / lequel le conuoya en grant Ioye et leesse / et aussi firent tous les barons de lost Iusques a la nauire sur laquelle Il monta en prenant congie du roy son pere et des Barons.

kepyng and protection of all their godes. [1]The maronners bygan to saylle, & seaced neuer tyl that he camen in to the hauone of cassydonye, where he was receyued wyth grete Ioye /[1]

and reaches his home, Cassidonie.

¶ The xxxij. chapitre conteyneth how the goode prouost yssued out of Tourmadaye, and cam to fet bestyall, that daryus had brought in the oost, whiche was brought in to the cyte wyth grete Ioye /

While K. Alymodes is at the sea-side

EVyn at the same owre that daryus toke shippyng vpon the see, and that his fader the kynge Alymodes, and a grete parte of his barons were goon to conueye hym, and were there tyll he was departed from the hauen and ferre fro the cleues, the prouost of Tourmadaye and many other barons of the cyte were vpon the walles beholdynge the manere and the gouernauns of them of the oost, And were alredy aduertysed of a spye / howe that the daye byfore, darius, the sone of kyng Alymodes, was arryued in thoost, and had broughte wyth hym grete plente of vytayles / and that he retorned in to his countree, and toke the see that same daye. And wyth this they sawe the grete nombre of bestes, that toke their pasture in a grete medowe not ferre thens, and that noo body kept hem; for they went to haue be sure thourgh all the ooste, by cause that they of the cyte had not made longe tyme afore that no manere of entrepryse, nor dyde not come out of their towne; and also that the custume of them of wythin was, that they neuer made non yssue but it were in the mornyng, or at euyn. And for this cause the prouost, that thought vpon the same, delybered in hym self, consideryng that

the Provost of Tormaday

sees all the Frisian cattle grazing near the city;

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

whiche he sawe at eye; how all thoost was styll, and
and as the chief besiegers are away, that kyng alymodes, nor his barons, nor his princypal capitaynes were not comen yet from the see syde, where they were all gon for to conueye and see daryus take his shippynge. ¶ Of that other part, he sawe also a fore hym, nyghe by the walles of the towne, the
and the cattle unguarded, grete multytude of bestes, that were wythout kepynge, whiche was the thynge wherof they had most nede wythin the cyte / He, seeng and consyderyng this that he sawe at his eye, descended hastely from the walles,
the Provost goes with his officers to Eglantine. and dyde calle to hym al the capitaynes, barons, knyghtes [1]and noble men,[1] whiche he made to come byfore theyr lady, the proude pucell in amours; and byfore her he declared vnto them all his purpos, and what he entended for to doo. Whan the lady, wyth her barons, had well vnderstande the prouost, they all
With her approval, in generall accorded wyth him for to putte to execucion the wordes afore spoken; & for to do the same, they went preuely & armed them self. & whan they were
2 G ij. redy, they fonde six thousand of [2]hem all a horsebak,
6000 horsemen the whiche were conducte by þ^e^ prouost. And another
and 4000 archers muster. of the capitayns had the charge of the foure thousand archers, fote men / whiche yssued oute at a posterne
The foot go into the pasture where the Frisian cattle are; that was nyghe the see, & lepte anon in to the medowe where the sayd bestes were fedyng / & of that other partye, the prouost & his felaushyp wente oute of the
the horse out of the sally-gates. gate where as they were wonte to goo oute whan they made their Issues. whan the capitayne of fote men was wele aduertysed, and that he wyste the prouost to be come oute of the toun, he made his folke to vaunce hemself forth softly and by order alonge by the toune dyches, whiche were drye at that syde of the toun / and so made them to walke al vnder couerte vnto the see syde all along the dyches, tyl that they cam & saw

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

the bestes, that wythoute eny kepyng were enclosed wyth in a maner of a parke / and after they had putte hemself betwyx the bestes and the oost / they taryed & herkened there after there men on horsbacke, the whiche they herde full sone makyng their cryes in their enmyes tentes, where as they foughte wyth hem / The fotemen thenne entred.wythin the close medowe, where the bestes were pasturyng, whiche they brought all to gydre on a flok, & byganne to chasse them afore hem to the towneward, where they brought Inne bothe oxen, kyen, and sheep, wyth all other manere of bestyall that was there, wherof the peple of the cyte was gretly reioyced. And syth cam and put hym self by fore the yate of the towne in fayre ordennaunce, awaytyng that the prouost and his folke sholde tourne ayen, whiche were wythin their enmyes tentes & pauyllions, whiche they powlyd & brought doune / and slewe many of their enmyes or euer that kynge Alymodes nor his folke coude be garnysshed of their armures / And whan the prouost sawe that it was tyme for to departe, & that the bestes myght well be brought in to the cyte by that tyme, he made his trompette to be sowned, that euery man shold with draw hym self / & so cam ayen wythin the cyte wythout eny losse of his men, to their grete glorye & praysynge / & grete confusion to theyr enmyes / to whom they had born so grete domage, that neuer byfore that they had receyued suche / Wherby the kynge alymodes & alle his oost was right sore affrayed, and in grete heuynes of the grete losse that they had susteyned by the sayd prouost and his folke / And also of that other part, whan they knewe how alle their bestes were / had aweye fro the medowe and brought in to the towne, their sorowe redoubled them full sore / The prouost, that lytyl dyde care therfore, hym self and all his folke, bothe a fote & a horsback, in gyuyng thankes & graces vnto our lord,

The foot get round the cattle,

wait till the horsemen attack their foes,

then drive all the Frisian cattle into Tormaday,

and await the return of the Provost.

The Tormadian horsemen slay many of their foes,

and then retire safely into the city,

to the great damage

and sorrow of the heathen enemy.

entred agayne in to the cyte [1]wyth grete gladnes and Ioye /[1] where they were ful curtoysly receyued of their lady,[2] that graciously thanked theym / The cyte of Tourmaday was purueyed of vytaylles of the same for a hole yere / & their enmyes oost sore dysgarnyshed ther by, wherfor they made emonge hem self grete sorowe / but what so euer Ioye & gladnes that they made wythin the towne, the fayr pucelle and proude in amours myght not seasse nor leue her sorowe therfore, that she contynually made for her right dere frende blanchardyn; that for the loue of her she trowed that he had other be lost or ded, & wyst not what she sholde thynke therof / But sawe wel that yf by proces of tyme she had [not] som socours, that force sholde be to her to yelde vp & deliuer her cyte vnto kynge Alymodes, but rather she wolde deye / than she sholde see suche a sorowe to be falle to her; & for to see a remedy to the same / she dyde sende for the prouost, to whome she sayde thus / 'Prouoste, oure cyte is nowe garnyshed, thanked be [3]oure lorde, both of vytaylles & of artyllerye for a grete space of tyme; and wyth this, for the defence of þ[e] same, hit ys wele & suffysaunly furnyshed of goode knyghtes, & of goode souldyers grete foyson. Wherfore ryght instanly I praye you that ye doo make redy a galleye, & I shal furnysshe her welle wyth vytaylles, & wyth goode artylerye for the defence of your self and of them that shall be wyth you / and ye shal goo as myn ambassatour toward myn vncle, the kyng of grete Norweyghe / to whom ye shall declare & shewe, in my behalf, the estate where presently I am inne / prayeng hym, in my behalf, that now atte my grete nede / he wolde sende me folke for to helpe & socoure me, or els that my sylf & my royalme are in wey of perdycion' / 'Madame,' sayde the prouost, 'wyte ye for certeyn,

Tormaday gets provisions for a year.

Eglantine never ceases sorrowing for Blanchardyn.

She asks her Provost to

[3] G iij.

go to her uncle, the King of Norway,

and pray him to help her.

[1–1] *Orig.* at [2], third line.

that to the pleasure of our lorde I shall doo therin my best, wyth all deligence vnto me possyble / And I hope I shall brynge you good tydynges, & suche a socours that shal not be pleysaunt vnto Alymodes the false kyng' / The prouost, after many other deuyses, toke hys leue of the pucel, & cam to his hous / he made a galee to be dressyd wyth all her apereylle / And whan all his thynges was redy & preste, he went oute of a posterne pryuely wyth suche as he wolde take in his companye toward the see syde; & entred his ship so preuely in the mornyng, that none of his enmyes coude see hym tyl that they were gon awaye from the lande, & wyth oute fere of them / whan kyng alymodes knew the same, he wexed sore angry & wroth, but no remedy he myght not put therto / [1]for or euer he was aduertysed therof, the prouost & his felaushiip were almost oute of syght[1] / well he had wold that they myght be met wythall by daryus his sone / but he oughte not to care for it / for daryus & hys nauey helde their waye toward Cassydonye, wher they arryued in fewe dayes wythout eny fortune / [2]& the prouost saylled & rowed toward the costes of nourthweghe[2] / Whan daryus was come to lande in to the hauen of Cassydonye, [3]where he arryued wythin short tyme wythout ony fortune, as it is sayd[3] / he made the kynge of fryse, & other his prysoners, to be had out from the shippes in to a grete & strong toure, where as was a tenebrouse & derke dongeon; wherin the poure sorowfull kynge, replenysshed and sore beten wyth the flayel of fortune, was cast in pryson, there to consume his olde dayes ful myserably, vnto the tyme that by his right wel beloued sone blanchardyn he be had out from this grete pouerte & myserye. So shal we leue hym thus makyng his sorowfull complaynte tyl that tyme be for to speke of

The Provost fits out a galley,

and sails early in the morning

for Norway.

Darius puts the King of Friesland into a dark dungeon,

to consume his old days miserably.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] Wanting. [3–3] Wanting.

hym / & shal retourne to speke of his sone, [1]the goode yonge knyght[1] blanchardyn / Whiche we haue lefte wythin the paleys of Maryenborugh [2]wyth Sadoyne.[2]

¶ The xxxiij chapyter conteyneth how Blanchardyn made pyteouse complayntes for his lady [3]wythin a gardyne,[3] and of the grete recomforte that was made to hym of sadoyne /[4]

Blanchardyn is

YE haue all ynoughe vnderstande here a fore how blanchardyn had the goode grace of the kynge of prusse, of Sadoyne his sone, & the loue of all the barons of the sayde royalme. And how he had reffused the kynges cosyne for to haue her in maryage; but the grete loue & fydelyte that he had toward his lady, the proude pucelle in amours, kept hym there fro / for rather he wold haue deyed than to haue falsed his feyth

ever thinking of Eglantine,

ayenst her, for whome he had at herte so many a sorowful & hevy thought for to bere / for nother nyght nor daye he dyde non other thinge, but thynke how & what manere he myght departe out of the contrey

and how he can get to help her.

where he was Inne, for to go to gyue socoure vnto the proude pucell [5]in amours his fayre loue, that was his souerayn desyre & his right besy & contynually thoughte, wherof it happed upon a daye amonge other as blanch-

[5] G iiij.

One day, in the palace garden,

ardyn was entred in a gardyne wythin þe kynges paleys alone, wythout eny felishipp, for to complayne the better his hertes sorowes, that in beholdyng vpon the fayre flouris wherof nature had fayre appareylled the gardyne, & amonge other he sawe a rosier tree laden with many

he sees one rose more beautiful than the others,

a fayr rose that had a smel ful swete / emonge whiche one was ther that of flagraunt odoure & of beaulte passed all the other; wherfore vpon her he dyde arrest

[1–1], [2–2], [3–3] Wanting in the French.

[4] En promettant que de tout son pouoir lui aideroit

his eyen, & said in this maner / 'Ha, noble rose, preelect & chosen byfore all other flouris that ben about the / how be it they be right fayre / thou puttest into my remembraunce thurgh the fayrnes that I see in the / [1]the right parfyt & excellent beaulte of myn owne goode lady, the proude mayden in amours,[1] whom god gyue all that whiche her noble herte wysheth & desyreth / I am so ferre from her / that aduyse it is to me, and also I byleue the same / that I neuer shal see her nomore. I can not curse to moche myn vnfortune that hath brought me, whiche was come to haue the goode grace of the most parfyt creature that god & nature wythout comparison wold euer make, in to the grete sorowes where I am now Inne / Now most I be ferre from her: wolde god now that ye, myn owne swete lady, wyst that I am aliue, & how goode a wyll I haue to socoure you, yf it were to me possible;' & in proferryng this wordes, þe teeris fel grete from his eyen in grete habundaunce [2]without ceasse[2] / sadoyne that coude not dure nor be with-out blanchardyn, went him seking in all þe place so longe that at the last he cam & sawe hym wythin the gardyne / & cam there as he was or euer blanchardyn was aware of hym / He fonde him the terres at the eyes of hym makynge his full pituouse complayntes / the whiche sadoyne had herde a part of hem / he cam & set hym self doun besyde blanchardyn, & prayed hym that he wolde telle him the cause of his sorowe & grete lamentacion, promyttyng to hym that it sholde neuer be told noo knowen by him, & saide vnto him: 'My right trusty felawe, ye do sobbe & make grete sorowe, wherfor I true & thinke for ueray throuth / that it is loue that so ledes you' / 'Certes, sadoyne,' sayde blanchardyn, 'ye may beleue well for certayn that the god of loue werreth ayenst me right sore, to holde & kepe me here in[3] this contrey / & to myn

and says it reminds him of his lady's beauty.

Blanchardyn curses his mishap in being separated from Eglantine,

and wishes she could know how he'd like to help her.

Sadoyne (the Prussian King's son)

overhears Blanchardyn,

and says he must be in love.

Blanchardyn confesses he is.

[1–1] madame [2–2] Wanting in the French. [3] *Orig.* herein.

aduyse, yf he wolde be content wyth reason / he sholde suffre that som worde were brought here to me to the comforte of one parte of my grete sorowe, [1]from her for whos sake they be sore grou*n*ded wythin my penseful herte[1] / I loke styl ou*er* the mou*n*taynes & valeye als ferre as my sight can comprehende; but, alas, I can not chuse nor see the toure wherynne she holdeth her self' / 'O my right trusty frende & dere felawe,' sayde sadoyne, 'is it the toure of babylonye where she doth holde her / or of Rome, [2]of spayne, or of Almanye.'[2] 'Certes,' sayde blanchardyn, 'it is not so ferre [3]as ye wene,[3] but syth that ye desyre so sore to knowe myn angwyshe & sorowe, I shall telle you what is me befal / I am a seruau*n*t reteyned wyth the lady of Tourmaday, that is called of euery man the proude mayden in amours. She is beseged within her cyte by Kynge Alymodes, a cruel tyraunt, kynge of Cassydonye, that hath had me as his prysoner here before, but by fortune of the see and the goode aduenture, tha*n*ked be oure lord, j am escaped; he wold haue by strengthe & puyssau*n*ce to his spouse my sayd lady / But by cause that she wil not haue him tyl her lord, he hath purposed to kepe his power me*n* of werre by fore her cyte of tourmaday vnto tyme that he haue her at his wylle.' After the wordes, the teeres ranne doune from his eyen. ¶ And whan Sadoyne sawe his true and feythfull felawe Blanchardyn make suche a sorowe, his herte bygan to quake wythin hymself for pyte that he had of blanchardyn / & sayde thus vnto hym, 'Certaynly, dere felawe myne, yf ye wol do after me, we shal go wyth all pouer & myght to helpe & socoure your lady, for whos loue ye take suche a sorowe, & shal delyuere her from Kynge Alymodes handes' / Blanchardyn, the*n*ne

Blanchardyn laments that he cannot see where

his love Eglantine, the lady of Tormaday, is.

She is besieged in Tormaday by K. Alymodes,

who will persevere till she weds him.

Sadoyne advises

that they shall go with an army,

and deliver Eglantine.

1–1 Wanting in the French.

2–2 patras despaigne ditalie ou dallemaigne.

3–3 ou madame se tient que celles q*ue* vous auez nommees sont.

beholdyng ful pyteously vpon his felawe sadoyne, sayde vnto hym, 'O the right grete recomforte of my sorowful lyf / wolde god it were so as ye saye / for þ^e^ Kyng Alymodes hath a daughter of his owne, whiche is so fayr that god & nature can not amende her, nor in no lande can be choson no fayrer / Certaynly yf we coude bringe this werke at an ende, she sholde be yours wythout faylle' / 'My frende dere,' sayde sadoyne, 'it lieth in the wylle of the goddes. We haue goode men of werre ynough for to furnysshe this enterpryse, whiche I sore do desyre for to gyue helpe to youre sorowes. I wyll go toward the kynge my fader, for to haue leue for you & for me.' Whether blanchardyn of this tydynge was glad / it is not to be asked /

Blanchardyn promises Sadoyne Alymodes's daughter Beatrice, if he will help him.

Sadoyne will ask his father's leave.

¶ The xxxiiij chapiter conteyneth how sadoyne toke leue of his fader the kyng, & so dyde Blanchardyn, & toke the see wyth a grete naue, charged wyth men of werre, for to gyue socoure to the proude pucelle in amours / And of the prouost of Tourmaday, whiche they founde by the waye.

After many wordes proferred & sayde betwene þ^e^ two yonge knyghtes, sadoyne departed & com to fore the kynge his fader, to whome in the best wyse that he myght or coude / dyde shewe vnto him his wyll / requiring of him that it myght be accomplisshed / shewyng vnto hym how that his royalme was in peas & tranquilite that tyme, & that it was not lyke that werre shold happe there to befal; and by cause he was a yonge man, he wolde yet faine excercyse him self in þ^e^ noble crafte of armes, & that a lawfull & Iuste cause he had to do soo, for to gyue socoure & helpe the yonge knyght straunger, 'that thourgh his

Sadoyne asks his father, the King of Prussia,

to let him help Blanchardyn.

who has done so much for them.

prouesse & grete worthynes hathe socoured you, and holpen to putte out your mortal enmyes that were ferre come wythin this your royalme / and hath brought in to your handes as prysonner, your enmye the kynge of polonye, for to do your owne wylle vpon hym / of the whiche good seruyse, he ought of rayson to be well rewarded' / Whan the kynge of prusse vnderstode his son / he gaf to hym-self grete merueylle, & was wel abashed of that soudayne a wylle that was come to him. Neuertheles, whan he knewe, & that he was aduertysed by his sone al alonge of the cause & quarelle of Blanchardyn, he was al ynough content, and graunted hym his request / Wherof his son & eke Blanchardyn cam & fel bothe doune humbly at þ^e^ fote of hym, and thanked him of that grete curtosye. And for to see and furnysshe that this were doon, the kynge dyde make redy suche shippes as apparteyned therunto, and made them to be garnished well of vytaylles and of artyllery nedeful to suche an enterpryse. Vpon whiche nauye he sent wyth his son and wyth Blanchardyn the nombre of twelue thousand knyghtes of the most approued and best chosen of al his royalme / and other men of werre in grete nombre / Al their arraye was made redy, & the daye come that they sholde departe. The kynge seenge the barkes and shippes of his sone to be furnysshed of men of werre and of vytaylles, of golde and syluer, and of alle thynge that were necessary to them / he was therof right glad / And syth dyde doo putte wyth the shippes foure ydoles, his goddes, that were all of fyne golde and garnyshed full richely wyth grete perles and precyouse stones. ¶ And after this he entred hym self wythin the ship & toke his leue of his sone Sadoyne / prayng vnto blanchardyn that he shold haue him for recomended / & toke his leue of them / Whan the kynge was come out of the ship where he had lefte his sone sadoyne wyth blanchardyn / he beganne to wepe /

The Prussian King

consents,

and fits out ships for them,

with 12,000 knights,

and four idols on board.

And after that he was gon from hem / they made to take vp the ancres & to hale vp their saylles, wher-in þ^e^ wynde entred that had them soone ferre from the lande out of syght / & toke the hyghe see assone as they myght, sayllyng by the costes of many a strange regyon wythout fyndyng of eny aduenture that is to be recou*n*ted / & so longe they saylled bothe daye and nyght that they cam nyghe Tourmaday as two dayes Iournay / byfore whiche cyte was yet kyng Alymodes at siege wyth his oost, wherof the fayr the proude pucell in amours was sore displeysaunt. And in espe-cyall she was sore discomfited at her herte for the loue of her frende blanchardyn, that was the same tyme wyth his felawe sadoyne sayllyng vpon the see in grete gladnesse for the wynde & the see that were peasible. And saylled so longe that they perceyued a galeye from ferre, that made fast waye ther as they went hem self, In whiche vessell was the prouost of Tourmadaye & other seruau*n*tes to the proude pucelle in amours, and cam ayen from the oncle, the kyng of the grete Norweghe, whiche they fonde but late ded whan they cam there, where they retourned wyth-out expedicyon of that wherfore they were goon thyder. Whan the prouost & they of the galeye dyde perceyue the shippes of Blanchardyn, they were full sore affrayed, by cause they knewe well anoon that they were all sarrasyns. ¶ And of that other parte, Blanchardyn and sadoyne perceyued sone that they of the galleye were crysten / they made anon after the sayd galleye for to enclose & take her / And whan they cam nyghe by her, they called & asked 'of whens was the vessell, What they were, & fro whens they came;' & then*n*e the prouost, wyth a grete drede & feer of his lyfe, lept forthe & sayde / 'Lordes, we see wel that we can not escape you / but for drede of noo deth I shal not leue to telle vnto you the trouth of all oure affayre / We all that

Blanchardyn and Sadoyne start.

When two days' sail from Tormaday

they see the galley of the Provost of Tormaday,

coming back from Norway.

The Prussians come up with the galley.

The Provost says they're sailing from Norway to their lady Eglantine.

be here, come from the grete north weghe, & were sent toward the kynge of the lande, whiche was oncle to the proude mayden in loue, whiche is oure ladye & maystresse.' ¶ Blanchardyn, right Ioyouse, knewe fulsone the prouost, & thought that sone ynought he sholde here of hym som goode tydynges of that thynge whiche he most desyred in this worlde / But the prouost knewe not blanchardyn the same tyme, by cause he was made blak, disfigured & sore chaunged of face by strengthe of the sonne / but trowed that he had ben a sarrasyne as other were / Thenne cam blanchardyn nyghe the bordours of the galley, & toke the prouoste by the hand, & made hym to come wythin his ship. Of dyuerses thynges he questyoned hym, but the prouost ansuered ferfully, for he doubted them sore. So prayed he to blanchardyn, after he had exposed vnto hym of whens he cam & what he was, that he wolde doo them no harme. Blanchardyn right humbly aysuered hym & sayde / 'ffrende, take no feere at all, for nother damage nor euyl shal not be don to you nor to non of yours, for I shal myself conueye you yf nede be' / the prouost thanketh hym moche & was right glad. 'Sir,' sayde blanchardyn to the prouost, 'ye haue tolde me that ye be of the cite of tourmaday. I pray you that ye wyl telle me in what regyon & what marche it is sette, and who is lord there. I praye you to telle me the trouth of it' / þe prouost thenne seeng þat feabli he myght speke without doubte or fear, he dyde reherce unto blanchardyn al a longe, how þe royalme of tourmaday was come to a doughter full fayre and goode, that made her self to be called the proude pucelle in amours, that neuer wolde wedde kynge, duc, nor erle, how grete that he were; & that for the loue of a gentyl knyght that not longe agoo cam and socoured her in her werre, that she had and yet hath ayenst the kynge Alymodes, that wolde haue her to his wyff. 'But,

He does not know Blanchardyn, whose face is darkened.

Blanchardyn is kind to the Provost,

and asks him about Tormaday.

The Provost tells him of Eglantine,

sire,' sayde the prouost / 'by grete infortune the worthy knyght wherof I do speke to you, and the most valyaunt and most fayre that euer man myght or coude seke noowher in all the worlde, was taken of kynge Alymodes folke by-fore the cyte of Tourmaday; whiche kynge hath sent hym in to exile in ferre landes, that none can not knowe where / But that men saye that of hym sholde be made a present to a kynge sarrasyne, whos brother the sayd knyght had slayen. Wherfor my sayd lady is in grete displaysure, & ceaseth not nyght nor day to wysshe hym wyth her / praying god for his retourne agayne. The sayd kynge Alymodes is alwaye kepynge his siege before her cyte of Tourmaday, & wasteth & distroyeth al the contrey about, for other harme can he not do to her, the towne and the castel are stronge ynoghe and are vytayled alle ynough, so that or euer he coude haue them, my sayde lady sholde be for aaged.' Blanchardyn herde wel gladly the prouost / and sayde to sadoyne his felowe in his ere, that of his lady in amours thees wordes were sayde. Sadoyne dyde here hem gladly, and the deuyses wyth Blanchardyn to the said prouost of many thynges concernyng this matyre. And Blanchardyn coude vnderstande noo thynge by the prouost, but that all was at his auantage, wherby he knewe that he was in his lady's grace as well as he was euer afore / ¶ The prouost thenne seeng soo many fayre men of armes, he pryuely demaunded of Blanchardyn / yff they wolde be souldyours of the fayre, the proude mayden in amours, ayenst the kyng Alymodes, and they shold be right well payed / Thenne ansuered to hym Blanchardyn and sayde, 'I byleue al ynough well that yf she wolde make of one of vs a kyng, she myght of lyght be serued of vs and of oure men.' 'Syre,' sayde the prouost, 'it is no nede to speke more herof / for she shal neuer take, I am well sure, non other man tyl her lord, but that self

and how her lover Blanchardyn was taken prisoner,

and how she sorrows for him.

Sadoyne is let into the secret.

The Provost asks if the Prussians will fight for Eglantine.

knyght of whom I spake right now to you of / nor non shal haue her royalme of her but only hym self.'

Blanchardyn asks

¶ 'How thenne,' sayd blanchardyn, 'thynke ye that her loue be so stedfastly & so truly sette vpon hym that kynge Alymodes hath sent to be presented as ye saye / Is it your aduyse that yf of aduenture he cam ayen to her, that she wolde sette ought by hym / for

if Eglantine is inconstant, like other women,

it is sayde of a custume, that the herte of a woman is mutable and inconstaunt, and not in purpos stedfast' / 'Ha, ha, sire,' sayde the prouoste, 'pleysed god that he myght come to her ayen, Neuer happed so goode a daye to the contrey nor to hym also / for he shold renewe manyfold þe goode grace of her that so truli loueth him.' 'frende,' sayde Blanchardyn, 'I praye

and what the name of her lover is.

you telle me the name of the knyght of whom ye doo speke so moche.' 'Sir,' sayde the prouost, 'the knyght of whom my sayde lady is so sore enamoured vpon, hath

The Provost answers, 'Blanchardyn.'

to his name blanchardyn / Ye may well be sure that she shal neuer forgete hym, nor sette her herte from hym / though she were insured neuer to see hym / for she wol not here nother prayer nor requeste of no man in this world, al be he neuer so grete a kyng or prince.

She dreams of him,

She dremeth often that her frende Blanchardyn cometh ayen, & that they enbrace & kysse each other in recompence of þe right euyl tyme in whiche they haue be longe in grete displaisure one from another / & for to telle you þe trouth[1] of it, It were not possyble to [l]oue

and loves him most truly.

more tenderly nor more truly than she doth hym / so oughte wel þe said knyght to haue her ryght dere, yf he lyue yet.' 'frende,' sayd blanchardyn, 'I doute not but he doth so / and aduyse is to me that wyth al dilygence he shold himsilf come to socoure her at her nede, [2]after his power, yf / he applye him it* to do soo' /[2]

[1] *Orig.* troutghi

[2–2] se en lui estoit de ce faire.

* *Orig.* is

¶ The xxxv chapter speketh of the grete[1] deuyses of þ° prouost & of blanchardyn / and of the lettres that he sent to his lady, the proude pucell in amours / And of the Ioye that she made whan she had red them.

Affter all the deuyses aboue sayd, blanchardyn drew hymsylf aside wyth-in his vessell, and toke both ynke & paper, and wrote a letter with his owne hande vnto the fayer proude mayden in loue / whiche lettres he toke to the prouost for to be presented vnto his lady. The prouoste toke them, promyttyng to do therwyth his deuoyr / And thenne blanchardyn sayd vnto the prouoste / 'frende, all these shyppes & tharmye that is herin are sarasyns; and I am a paynem, & ful well I knowe blanchardyn, wyche is enprysoned in paynems land, where he suffreth grete euyls & grete sorowe / but so moche do I knowe of his doynge / that he doth not care so moche for all that / as he doth of that he knoweth wel that the proude pucell in amours is, for his sake, sore greued atte her hert' / 'Syr,' sayd the prouoste, 'I praye to our lorde that the knyght for whos loue my said lady taketh suche an heuynes atte herte, more than I can tell you / maye retorne ayen wthyin shorte tyme / for the pytyuoes complayntes that she daily maketh for her louer, maketh vs al to lyue in grete dyscomforte' / After dyuerse talkynke don by blanchardyn & the prouost, they sepayred hemsylf, & toke leue of eche other. So went the prouost & entred ayen in to his galee, holdyng goode fortune & a goode wynde, wherby wythin a whyle he was ferre a-fore the shyp where blanchardyn was inne / & so sore exployted wyth sayles

Blanchardyn writes a letter to Eglantine,

and assures the Provost of his joy in her love.

The Provost sets sail.

[1] *Orig.* thegtere

In three days the Provost reaches Tormaday.

& oores, that at thende of thre dayes he arryued wythin the hauen of Tourmaday wyth his felyshyp, wythoute eny lette were don to them / But a lytyl afore, they had be ryght sore afrayed leste they shold be recountred by kynge Alymodes folke / how be yt that there was no ship that waye that coude haue hurte theym. Notwythstandyng this, there were smal rennyng vesselles, that oftymes dyspoyled & robbed theym that cam to the sayd hauen of Tourmaday, aswell by lande as vpon the see. whan the prouost was arryued, or euer he went in / his owne hous nor noo where, he & all his felyship went into our ladyes chirche of Tourmaday, for to yelde vnto her thankes & praysynges of the goode aduenture that was com to hym: they made theyr offrynges, & syn departed / Ye may wele thynke that the prouost was that tyme full well accompanyed of the barons, nobyl men, & bourgeys of the sayd cyte, for the grete loue that they had vnto hym / and also that he was worthy therof / and thus accompanyed, he cam in to the paleys, where he fonde the proude pucell in amours, that welcomed hym & made hym grete chere, and was ryght glad of his commynge ayen / and then þ^e^ pucell asked hym tydynges of the kynge her vncle, & how he had exployted & furnyshed her message. 'Madame,' sayd the prouost, 'I haue ben in the grete Norweyghe, wenyng to fynde ther the kynge your vncle / but thre dayes byfore my comyng thyder, it pleased god that your vncle the kyng termyned his lyff by deth, that then toke hym; wherby the barons of the realme ben in grete troubyl, & haue noo recomforte but in you, that are theyr lady by verey succesyon, as heyre of the land most nexte parent / Wherfore [1]they sende worde to you by me / that after thobsequyes and fyneralles of your sayd vncle be doon / they shall approche, puttyng theymself in ordynaunce for to helpe & socoure you, as they ought for to do

He and his fellows return thanks to the Virgin,

The Provost tells Eglantine that her uncle is dead,

that his Barons look to her as their Sovereign,

[1] H j.

and will soon come to help her.

to their natural lady and souerayn prynces.' Whan the nobyl mayden herde & vnderstode the prouost, she began to make grete sorowe / but þ^e^ prouost sayde vnto her, for to recomforte her / 'Madame, ther nys so grete sorowe, but that it may be forgoton at the laste / and afterwarde cometh som other message, that is cause to reioyse & brynge the creatures into consolacion. I saye this, therfor / that after the pyteous tydynges that I haue brought vnto you of your vncles deth / I shall now telle you one thynge that of reason ought please you well / loke! here ys a letter that a paynem knyght hath taken to me, whiche ful sore prayed me that I shulde dyrecte them vnto you.' The lady, that wepte ryght sore, toke the letter & red yt / wherof the tenore was suche as foloweth. ¶ 'My ryght redoubted lady, the supportans of my poure lyff, the gladnes of the hert of me, and the thynge whiche in this worlde I most desyre, I me recomende ryght humbly vnto your good grace / After the harde fortune that I had to be prysoner vnto kynge Alymodes, god, my swete creatour, whom I yelde praysynges & louynge, hath long preserued & kept me from deth; and hath delyuerd me from the peryles of the see, wherof I all alone am escaped; but myn enmyes that led me forth wyth them, were all drowned and peryshed in the see, and not one that escaped alyue, sauf my self alonely / to whom our lord hath don thys grace, wherof I ought wel to Ioye my self in yeuyng vnto hym thankes & praysynges euermore / After thys fortune I haue ben syn, as force compellyd me therto, seruaunt vnto a kynge sarasyn, as I had ben one of theym; ffro the whiche kyng, to myn worship and wyth grete loue, I am departed; & hath taken me in my kepyng his sone and twelue thousand knyghtis, right expert in armes, and other souldyours in grete nombre, for to come and socoure you, and to take vengeaunce vpon

Eglantine sorrows;

but the Provost gives her Blanchardyn's letter,

which tells her how,

after his capture,

he alone escaped drowning,

and then served a Saracen King,

who has given him his son and 12,000 knights to avenge her on K. Alymodes.

kynge Alymodes the tyraunt, that was the thynge that most I dyde desyre in this world, as of reason my dutye was. And to the surplus, to the playsure of oure lorde, and hym playsed / ye shal vnderstande by mouthe ferthere of myn astate / And by cause ye shall gyue credence and feyth to this, myn owne hande wrytyng, I do now bringe to your remembrance that one onely kyssyng that I toke of yow, not ferre wythout youre cyte of Tourmaday, afore that I was of you reteyned in to your noble seruyse. ¶ My right redoubted lady, I praye to god to gyue you the complyshement of your noble desyres. Wryton vpon the see by the hande of the knyght unfortunate / Thus signed Blanchardyn.'

Blanchardyn reminds Eglantine how he once kist her.

He prays God to fulfil her desires.

¶ The xxxvj chapiter conteyneth and speketh of the Ioye that the proude pucelle in amours made for loue of the commyng of her specyall frende blanchardyn / And of the grete sorowe that she made anone after, whan she see that fortune so lyghtly had hym and his nauye ayen in to the see, ferre from the hauen of Tourmaday /

WHan the proude mayden in amours had red the saide letters al alonge, & wel vnderstand the tenoure therof, the Ioye was not lytyl that she made for the reception of the same. She demaunded of the prouost yf he knewe not hym that had taken the letters vnto hym / he sayde 'nay' / but vnto her he recounted & tolde the manere, & how as by a happe / he had fonde & met wyth a myghty nauey, vpon whiche was a right grete excercyte of folke of armes; but they were alle [1]sarrasyns, & had theyre byleue

Eglantine rejoices at Blanchardyn's letter.

[1] H ij.

vpon their ydolles / & emonge them all was one knyght that coude speke to me / 'Ha, ha, prouost!' sayde the lady / 'well ye haue be deceyued, whan ye dyde not knowe hym that somtyme ye haue lodged in your house wyth you. It was, I ensure you, my moost dere frende blanchardyn, that at my grete nede cometh to socoure and helpe me / how thenne haue ye not knowe hym? [1]a grete merueylle I haue therof'[1] / 'Madame,' sayd the prouost, 'as to the body of hym, he may be lykened well ynough to blanchardyn / but the face of hym was dyed and blake, as all other of his felyship were. Moche grete merueylle I gyue to my self that he dyde not dyscouere hym self vnto me' / The pucelle, heryng the prouost speke, beganne to smyle and lawhe strongly / full sone was forgoton her onclis deth, for cause of the right Ioyfull tydynges that she had herd of blanchardyn, the whiche were full soone knowen thourgh all the cyte, whyche thynge brought a newe Ioye to alle the enhabytantes there. But who someuer made Ioye therof, the proude pucell in amours reioysshed her self aboue all other, by cause that this nyghed her at herte. All ynough she red and ouered the sayd letters, whiche she dyde kysse full ofte, soo sore was her thoughte vpon blanchardyn / The nyght passed, and the fayr day cam. And erly in the mornyng the pucelle rose from her bed; and whan she was clothed, and opened the wyndowe, and loked ferre vpon the see, yf euere by aduenture she myght see ne chuse the nauye of blanchardyn / She behelde so longe on euery syde, that she byganne to chuse and perceyue the saylles of the shippes of hym that so sore moche she had desyred / She was thenne recomforted of all thynges, and remembred her self of non euyl that she had suffred byfore that / An hundred tymes she salued & made obeyssaunce to þ^e^ shippes, prayng to god that

Eglantine chaffs the Provost for not recognizing Blanchardyn.

She soon forgets her uncle's death, in her joy at the news from Blanchardyn.

She often kisses his letter,

and in the morning

sees the sails of his ships.

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

they may arryue sauf & sounde. Atte that hour her maystres was beside her, whiche was ful glad to see her thus mery & ful of Ioye; to whom the lady sayd,

Eglantine says she shall soon have 30,000 fresh helpers.

that sone she shuld haue socours of xxx. thousand [1]knyghtes &[1] souldyors, that ayenst king alymodes shold helpe her. As she was thus talkyng wyth her maystres, and that the vessayls beganne to com nyghe,

But a great storm rises,

and made redy all thynges to take lande, a south wynd rose vp sodanly, horryble & gret; the see beganne to ryse & swelle, and the wawes wexed so bygge & so grete, that they semed to be mountayns / And was the tempeste so perelouse, that they were constreyned to enter into the brode see agayne, leste they sholde haue smytten

and carries Blanchardyn's ships

hemself agrounde / and so wythdrew hemsylf fro lande, they were so sore tourmentyd that the cordes and the saylles breke of all their shyppes, or of the most partye, and were fayne to cutte of their mastes, habandounnynge to the wynde & wawes of the see the

far from Tormaday.

conducte of them alle / and were caste so ferre into the hyghe see, that in a shorte whyle they knewe not in what marche of the see they were / The proude pucell in amours seeng thys grete infortune, wende to haue deyd anone for the grete dyspleasure that she toke of thys cursed aduenture, & reputed her self indygne to haue eny helpe nor socours, whan she see her fortune thus torned ayenst her. She began to crye aloude,

Eglantine laments her loss of Blanchardyn.

sayng in thys wyse / 'Alas, my ryght trusty & feythful louer, I perceyue well that I shall neuer see you more / I am the cause of your Inconuenyent ye were taken in my seruyse' / She made so grete mone and so pytefull complayntes, as any body in thys worlde myghte doo / alwayes dyscomfortyng her owne self wythouten mesure. ¶ we shall leue to speke of the proude pucell in amours, vnto the tyme be comen that her sorowe be lefte, [2]and her Ioye recouered and

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

renewed / and shal shewe you of blanchardyn, and of Sadoyne [1]his feythful felawe.[1]

¶ The xxxvij chapiter conteyneth how blanchardyn and Sadoyne arryued by fore the cyte of Cassydonye, wher they founde daryus, that cam to speke [2]of them /[2]

WEll, ye haue herde here aboue the ryght merueyllouse & horrybyl fortune that happed to blanchardyn and to Sadoyne, that daye they shold haue taken lande atte the hauen of Tourmadaye, whiche were all redy caste ferre frome all costes, & waited but þe hour whan they shold be drowned, wherof they were in a grete fere / Then sayd blanchardyn to Sadoyne, that he doubted ryght sore lest god were wroth vpon theym by cause they had brought wyth theym theys cursed ydolles, and that hym semed yf he wold be baptysed & all his folk, & to byleue in our feith, that the tempeste shold breke, he preched so longe sadoyn & his folke, that they all of one assent & accorde promytted vnto Blanchardyn that they sholde deuoutly do baptyse hem self, and shold byleue in the holy crysten feyth whan they shold come to lande, or in place where hit myght be doon. The whyche thynge euyn so as they promysed it full deuoutly ded accomplyshe hit afterward. They toke awaye the preciouse stones, & the gold & syluer from theyre [3]ydolles & maumetys,[3] and syn cast them in the see wyth goode herte / Soo taryed not long after thys was doon that the tempeste ceassed, and the see became swete and amyable / and be came as a lytyll ryuer. ¶ After the ceasse of thys tempest that had broughte theym so ferre oute of

Blanchardyn says that God has sent the storm because they have idols on board.

If Sadoyne and his Prussians 'll be baptized as soon as they land, the tempest 'll stop.

They agree to turn Christian, and they throw their idols into the sea, which then becomes as smooth as a river.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] a eulx
[3–3] decepuables et dampnables ydolles

The Prussians reach the haven of Cassidonie, where Darius and his sister Beatrice are.

theyre knowleche that they wyste not where they were, fortune ledde theym in atte the hauon of Cassydonye, where Daryus, the sone of Kyng Alymodes, was that daye, [1]and the fayre Beatryx his suster wyth hym, whiche was vttyrly fayre, and replenysshed of all goode condicyons and maners that may be in a creature / Blanchardyn and Sadoyne, seeyng that they were comen tyl a sure hauene, and they and their folke all sauf, they were right glad. They thanked our lord, and had doune their saylles / cast their ancres, and syth lepte a lande and their men of armes wyth them, whiche they renged, and dyde set hem in gode ordonaunce of battaylle al alonge the medowes that were there full fayre and grete, by cause that they knewe not in what marche they were arryued, no whether they of the contrey were frendes or enmyes. Sadoyne wende at fyrst that it had be Tourmaday / but they fonde a man, and asked hym the name of the towne, and who was lord of it. He ansuerd to them that it was the cyte of Cassydonye, wherof Alimodes is lord and kynge of this royalme, that for the tyme beyng was wyth a right grete puyssaunce of men of werre before Tourmaday kepyng there his siege / And that his sonn daryus and the fayre Beatryx his doughter were bothe togyder wythinne the towne of Cassydonye / ¶ Blanchardyn was Ioyfull and glad to here these tydynges, and sayde, all lawghyng to Sadoyne, 'that they were well arryued vpon their enmyes, And that euery man sholde thynke to proue hym self well, for they must assaylle the towne, bycause that the lady that he dyde promytte to hym was within Cassydonye' / And, morouer, he sayde vnto Sadoyne: 'my right trusty felawe, we ben come to a goode hauen / it is to vs force that this cyte be wonne and conquested by oure strengthe / and after that we shal go to the playsure of god for to socoure and helpe myn owne dere lady, the proude pucelle in

The Prussians land,

learn that Cassidonie is K. Alymodes's country,

and resolve to attack the town.

amours' / Sadoyne, heryng Blanchardyn, that sayde
[1]to hym that the fayre Beatryx, whiche he had so sore [1] H iiij.
desyred afore was wythin the cyte of Cassydonye, was
4 right glad that they were arryued there. He toke and
gadred all newe corage wythin hym self / and mounted Blanchardyn and Sadoyne mount,
to gyder on horsbacke, Blanchardyn and he, and alle
theyr folke dyde so, and poynted hemself for to fyght and their men make ready.
8 or for to gyue assawte to the towne. Euyn at that
same houre that the sayde barouns were in the medowe
renged one nyghe another, and redy for to fyght /
Daryus, kynge Alymodes sone, was at a wyndowe
12 of a grete toure wythin his paleys, out of whiche he
loked, and behelde ouer[2] the medowes and ouer the
playne, whiche he see all coueryd with men of armes
that were afore the towne, wherof he was right sore
16 merueylled, and wyst not yf they were frendes or foes.
¶ He made hym self to be armed hastely, & dyde Darius arms,
publishe thourgh alle the towne, and to them of his
house, that all sholde be armed on horsbacke, and redy
20 for to go wyth hym wyth out makynge eny delaye /
for he sayde that he wold go to vnderstande what folke
they were that comen in armes so nyghe his towne /
And after that daryus commaunded was publyshed /
24 ther were tenn thousand Cassydonyens soone redy, and with 10,000 Cassidonians sallies from the town.
right well in harneys, wel appoynted, that folowed
hym, and yssued out of the towne wyth daryus, that
was rydyng before hem all vpon a right myghty
28 courser / And Blanchardyn and Sadoyne that sawe
hym comen made on her bataylles, and cam ayenst
daryus, that sore hyghe byganne to calle, and sayde:
'Ye lordes that are here comen, & haue seased my
32 hauen, and taken lande / and that shewe tokens that
your purpos is for to werre vpon me / telle me yf ye
be sarrasyns.' ¶ Thenne Blanchardyn, his spere in Blanchardyn tells him
hande, [3]and all armed fro top to too[3] byfore his

[2] *Orig.* ouer and ouer [3–3] Wanting in the French.

batayllle, ansuered hym that they were not sarrasyns,

that they are come to help Eglantine against K. Alymodes,

'but we ben,' sayde he, 'crysten men that wyl go to gyue socoure and helpe vnto that mayden, the lady of Tourmaday, where as the tyraunt alymodes kepeth now his siege byfore þ^e^ towne; but I wyl wel that thou know that in an euyl houre he cam euere there / for yf we may fynde hym, we shall make hym to deye a shamefull dethe. And wyth this, yf it pleyseth vnto Ihesu cryst, in whom we byleue / we shal this daye

and mean to take his city of Cassidonie,

take by strengthe his cyte of Cassydonye / And see here by me Sadoyne, the sone of the kynge of prusse,

and give Beatrice to the Prussian Prince Sadoyne.

that shal mary his doughter thy suster, the fayr Beatryx. So shall he rengne in this lande, where he shal soone be obeyed, loued, and dred as a lord souerayne. [1]And we shal not ceasse vnto tyme, that to the playsure of Ihesu cryst / we shall haue all our wylle in this byhalve'[1] /

¶ The xxxviij chapiter conteyneth how the valyaunt blanchardyn slewe daryus, and of the grete batayllle, where the Cassydonyens were dyscomfyted and ouerthrawen, and the cyte taken. [2]And the fayr Beatryx was taken to mercy,[2] & how Sadoyne and the fayre Beatryx made hem self to be baptyzed, and their folke wyth them /

Darius recognizes Blanchardyn,

WHan Daryus vnderstode thees wordes, he knewe all ynough that it was blanchardyn the worthy knight; wherof he gaff hym selff moche grete merueylle of the manere how he was escaped from thre score men, to whom he had taken the charge to kepe hym, and to haue presented hym vnto the kynge of Salamandrye. He wende to haue tourned the brydell of

and tries to flee;

[1–1], [2–2] Wanting in the French.

his horsse, [1]for he was right sore affrayed to see hym there byfore hym /[1]

¶ But Blanchardyn perceyued it anone, and he that well lerned was in all poyntes of werre / kept Darius ther fro. He gaff his hors the spore, and cam and kutte the waye betwene their two batayllles / for he was right well horsed. he folowed daryus of so nyghe that he ouer reched hym with his swerde, as he was fleyng at the right syde of hym, soo that his riche cote of maylle myght not warauntyze hym. But he cutte bothe fleshe and bone, and made in his body a grete wounde mortall, And syth recouered another stroke, so that he smote hym doune ded to the grounde from his horse. Atte that oure were the Cassydonyens sore abasshed whan they sawe their lorde that laye vpon the grounde sterk ded / They wyshed and complayned hym sore, But neuerthelesse they auaunced themself proudely, & ranne vpon their enmyes / ¶ Thenne byganne the batayllle grete and cruell of bothe partes. Blanchardyn and Sadoyne made there merueylles of armes / they brake and cutte Cassydonyens on all sydes. No man was there so hardy that durste approche hem, where al as they came they made þe presse to sprede abrode / Blanchardyn dyde espye a knyght that bare the standarde of the cassydonyens / he ranne vpon hym, and gaaff hym suche an horryble stroke vpon his helme that he all to-brayned hym wyth his swerde. And thus he ouerthrewe doune bothe man & standarde, so that the Cassydonyens had not syth the powere for to haue dressyd it vp ayen, but were slayne and all to-cutte and clouen, that all the wayes were couered of bodyes ded and wounded men. The same tyme was the fayre Beatryx at a wyndowe wythin the paleys lokyng vpon the batayll, that sone perceyued & knewe that the losse

but Blanchardyn

slashes Darius with his sword and then kills him.

The Cassidonians charge the Prussians.

Blanchardyn brains their Standard-bearer,

and many of them are slain or wounded.

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

Beatrice sees that she must yield up the town

was tourned vpon her party. Wherfore she wyst well for certayne that Impossyble was to her for to kepe the towne ayenst so grete a puyssaunce as she dyde see by-fore her / consyderyng that the best defense & the moost worthy knyghtes of the lande were wyth her fader, the kynge Alymodes, at the siege by fore Tourmaday / and that suche as were yssued out there were almost all ouer throwen / Wel saw þ^e^ fayre Beatryx that she muste yelde vp her self. The same tyme passed Sadoyne by-fore the wyndowe, that wyth bothe handes smote vpon his enmyes / The fayre Beatryx called hym, sayng in this manere: 'Alas, right noble knyght, I gyue my self vnto you / prayeng that ye wol saue bothe me and my cyte, And to take vs in to your mercy and pyte / hauyng compassyon vpon a yong mayden that yeldeth her self vnto you' / Sadoyne, lokyng toward the wyndow, heued right soone his hand vpward and sayde, & promysed her that he sholde warauntyse her from all harme; he was right glad of these tydynges. It was not longe after this that blanchardyn and Sadoyne dyde mete to gyder, hauyng their swerdes in their fystes, all dyed wyth the blode of their enmyes that they had al to-hewen and clouen, and fynally dyde so moche by their prouesse that wythin a whyle they made the Cassy donyens to fle, and discomfyted them / & so nyghe they chassed them that they entred in to þ^e^ cyte wyth them. It was grete horrour to see the horryble occy-sion and slawghter that was made in the playne byfore the towne, where the bodyes lay by ded, grete hepes here and there in many places / whan blanchardyn saw that they were com to their aboue of their enmyes, And that no resystence at all was made ayenst hem / He made by a trompette to be proclamed that the slawhter sholde ceasse wyth in the [1]towne, syth that they were lordes & maysters of the same, the whiche

and herself.

She surrenders both to Sadoyne.

Blanchardyn and Sadoyne

put all the Cassidonians to flight, and enter their city with them.

thyng was don as yt was commaunded. Sone after thys blanchardyn & Sadoyne cam to the paleys wythoute to fynd eny body that wold hem lete or gaynsey thentre therof. they went into the hall, where the founde the fayer Beatryx, that cam ayenst them & yelded herself to them, prayng that they wold haue pyte vpon her. Blanchardyn toke the mayden by the hande, sayng to her: 'ffayer damesel, god forbede that euyl nor harme sholde be don to you!' he cam toward sadoyn, & sayd vnto hym / 'My ryght trusty felawe / the promysse that byfore this tyme I made vnto you I wol now quyte my self therof toward you. Take thys pucell, I geue her to you / by suche a condycoun that ye shal helpe me to socoure the proude pusell in amours.' Sadoyne, ryght glad, all laughyng, aunsuerd to blanchardyn: 'ffrend myn, yt is wel reson that I do so, and wyth ryght a good hert I shal goo to helpe you, for wel I am bounde therunto / your promysse ye haue ryght wele acquyted vnto me, & an houndred thousand thankes I gyue you therfor.' sadoyne behelde þ^e^ pucell beatryx, [1]þ^e^ so gentyl was, & so odly fayr[1] he enbraced & kyssed her, sayeng: 'ffayr dameseyll, ye & I my self shal be babtysed, and after that I shall take you to myn own dere spouse & wyff / for I woll that thys false lawe & vnabyl byleue, & thys peruerse sacryfyces, that ben to this false Idoles, ye leue & forsake.' ¶ She aunswerd full mekely, that she shulde so do wyth ryghte a goode wylle. ¶ wythin the same cyte of Cassydonye were the same tyme certeyne crysten men that dwelled there vnder trybute, that were ryghte glad whan they sawe by the crysten men the town was take. But by the comaundement of Blanchardyn the preeste of the crysten men that were dwellynge there assembled anone, and made redy many tubbys and other vesselles full of fayre water, whiche he blessed and halowed ther[2] ynne.

Blanchardyn and Sadoyne are met by Beatrice.

Blanchardyn gives her to Sadoyne.

Sadoyne kisses Beatrice.

They will both be baptized, and then marry.

The Christian priest gets plenty of tubs,

[1–1] qui tant estoit belle et gente

[2] *Orig.* thher

and baptizes all the Cassidonians.

Sadoyne and Beatryx, and all their people, made hem self to be baptyzed. And namely,[1] all the people of that contrey were conuerted into our holy feythe.

Then Sadoyne weds Beatrice,

After these thynges thus happed and doon / Sadoyne wedded the fayre Beatryx, the doughter of kynge Alymodes / The solemnytez of the wedlok were made grete and notable, where the knyghtes and ladyes of the lande were all of the noble clothyng, wherof þ^e^ pucelle was ornated wyth all, it is no nede to telle you of it. But wel I dare saye, that neuer in thoo dayes, nor an hondred yere afore, men had not seen eny quene nor pryncesse more richely arayed; for so many a ryche Iewell, so grete haboundance of precyouse stones, and so grete a tresoure was ther wyth-in the paleys, ygadred by the kyng Alymodes, that it was a thyng Infynyte, by cause that all the dayes of his lyff he had be a grete tyraunt / Soo had he taken and rauysshed, & by stronge hande vpon his neyghbours, bothe ferre and nere, all that he fonde of grete value. ¶ Thre dayes hool lasted the feste / And syth after Sadoyne byganne to enquyre of the gouernaunce and astate of the lande, as to hym was nedefull to be doo. The euyll custumes he dyd brynge doune, And sette vp the goode / and syth putte goode prouysyon for the Iustyse, and dyde stablysshe prouostes, ballyffes, and rulers of the lande / and putte sure watche in all the townes and castelles. And by all the counseyll and goode aduyse of Blanchardyn, that was right wyse /

who wears many rich jewels.

Sadoyne then reforms the ill-customs of Cassidonie,

and sets the land in good order.

¶ The xxxix chapiter conteyneth how blanchardyn fonde his fader, the kynge of ffryse, that was prysoner wythin Cassydonye, and of the pyteouse deuyses that the fader and the sone had to gydre.

[1] mesmement

After these tydynges don and brought at an ende, It happed that one a day blanchardyn, Sadoyne, and his wyff the fayer Beatryx, were sittyng at the bord takynge their recreacyon / The same tyme herde blanchardyn a voyce of a man that full pyteuosly [1]lamented hym self;[1] wherof he toke grete merueylle, for he alredy had herde hym crye by whiles thre tymes / he demaunded of theym that were there byfore the table, who myght be that wayled and cryed so pyteously / ¶ Ther was a knyght that ansuered hym, and sayde: 'Syre, it is not long a goo that Daryus made a coursse in to ffryse, wyth a grete nombre of shippes, in so moche that by tempeste of the see he was cast in to an hauen of the see of the sayde lande, where he made grete wast, toke and slewe many men, and many he dyde brynge wyth hym prysoners / wherof emong other is one that called hym self lord of them alle / and the same is he that ye haue herde crye so pyteously' / Whan Blanchardyn herde speke of ffryse, he doubted hym well sone that it was som man of his lynage and sybbe, and was sore dyspleased for the dystruction of his lande, & wel glad to be auenged wyth his owne hande vpon the personne of Darius, that the said distruction had commytted and don / Sadoyne thenne dyde sende incontynent toward the pryson, and made to be brought out of it the noble kynge of fryse / The tables were alredy taken vp whan he was brought into the halle / Whan blanchardyn sawe the noble kynge his fader, he knewe hym anone, how wel that he was ryght sore chaunged of face, for grete sorowe and hardnesse of the pryson. ¶ Blanchardyn coude not kepe hym self, but that the grete teerys dropped fast out of his eyen, for grete pyte that he had of his fader [2]/ and myght kepe his counteynaunce, nor behaue hym self.[2] And whan he was

Blanchardyn hears a man lamenting.

and is told that

it is the captive Lord of Friesland.

Sadoyne sends for the prisoner,

in whom Blanchardyn recognizes his father.

[1–1] se lamentoit [2–2] Wanting in the French.

com ayen to his manere / he demaunded of his fader
The prisoner says he was once King of Friesland, what lande he was of / The goode kynge ansuered
hym, and sayde: '[1]I am a power caytyf kyng, that
somtyme regned in fryse lande / But thourgh fortune
chan*g*eable my lande hath be wasted and lost by
darius, the sone of kyng Alymodes; and after that he
had vttirly dystroyed a grete part of my royalme, he
was captured by Darius, and cast into a dark dungeon. brought me wyth hym to be here his prysoner, lyuyng
full pourly wythin a derke dongeon / and wold neuer
putte me to noo raenson / A fayr sone I had somtyme
He once had a son, who left him. of myn owne spouse, my wyff, whiche I helde & had
full tenderly dere; but bycause I wolde not make
hym a knyght / yongthe mouid hym & departed from
me. And syth, as I haue tolde you / my self, my
royalme, & my folke haue be thus dystroyed and
wasted. what wol ye doo of me? I am but a man
He asks for death rather than re-imprisonment. lost for euer more / I requyre you that ye wyl slee me,
for to brynge my grete myserye at an ende / And nought
to putte me ayen in to the [1]harde and[1] tenebrouse
pryson, where I and my knyghtes haue be so longe,
[2]shortyng oure dayes in suche pouerte, as ye may
see'[2] / The goode kynge thenne, that thus reherced his
angwysshe and displaysirs, byganne to wepe & sobbe
Blanchardyn tells his father right sore / Blanchardyn asked of the kynge, yf he
sawe his sone / whether he sholde knowe hym. 'Alas,'
sayde the kyng, 'wel I am sure / that I shall neuer see
hym.' Blanchardyn myght not conteyne hym self,
and sobbed full sore in his herte. And syth sayde
that he knew his son, vnto the kynge his fader: ¶ 'Syre, I spake wyth your
sone not longe a goo, whan he departed from vs / We
two felawes, this gentyllman & I, haue ben a longe[3]
espace wyth hym / & nothyng was partyd amonge vs,
lyke as the one of us wold haue yt / that other was
therof content / he loued me as he dyde hymself, & I
heeld hym as dere as my self. we were long tyme

[1–1], [2–2] Wanting in the French. [3] *Orig.* alonge

to gyder, in somoche that for grete loue that he had to me, he gaff me this rynge of gold, that ye now see [1]on my fynger.'[1] The kyng loked vpon the rynge, & knew yt ryght well; but he knew not the fynger, [2]nor the hande that had yt on[2] / 'Certaynly,' sayd the kyng, 'I see & knowe right wel by the tokens that ye shewe vnto me, that ye haue seen hym / Wherfore, sire, I requyre & praye you, for the recomforte of me, that am a poure olde man, & replenyshed wyth bytternes / that ye wol telle me where my sone blanchardyn may be' / Then blanchardyn, wyth grete payne, spake wyth a lowe voyce, aunswerde him & sayd: 'Syr, ye muste knowe that he that ye askd for is ded.' Whan the nobyl kyng vnderstode hym, from a hyghe as he was, he lete hymself falle doun to the erthe all in a swoun before all them that were there / for the grete dys-pleasure that he toke atte his hert whan he herd that bytter & pytous tydynge, that of new Ioyned vnto his olde trybulacions / And then blanchardyn, seeng the sorow where the kyng his fader was ynne, toke repent-aunce of that he had so longe hyd hymself / and wyth eyen all tempred wyth teerys, dyde put hymself vpon his knees by-fore the kynge his fader, & ryght swetly cryed hym mercy, sayeng in thys wyse / 'My ryght doubted lord & fader! byfore you ye maye see your sone blanchardyn, that from you did departe wythoute your knowyng & lycense; wherof he asketh of you mercy & grace / and thoffence that I dyde take & brynge wyth me your good courser, whiche ys wythoute pyere amonge al other, wyth your good swerde, of whiche I haue brought to deth daryus your enmye' / whan the kyng of ffryse, that alredy was come ayen to hym sylf, herde his son blanchardyn speke, the whiche he knewe not atte that tyme well / for his sighte, that was sore troubled of the derkenes of the pryson, in

who gave him a ring,

but he is now dead.

The father, the King of Fries-land, swoons.

Blanchardyn repents,

confesses that he is the King's son,

and begs his pardon for being ungrateful to him.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] ou elle estoit

whiche he had suffred grete peyne & grete sorow,
No tongue can tell the King of Friesland's joy at regaining his son.
there nys no tounge of no creature mortall, that vnto you coude telle, wryte, [1]or do to be rehersed,[1] the grete Ioye that the same howre entred into the hert of that nobyl kyng prysoner;[2] and of all thassystens that were there the same daye, for theyr terys were parted among them. And in especyal, Sadoyne & his wyff had of hit their parte, in suche a wyse that the teerys fell from their eyen al alonge their faces, in so grete habondaunce that theyr ryche raymentes that they hadde on that
Blanchardyn kisses his father,
daye, were all wete wythall. The nobel kyng of fryse was enbrased & kyssed of his sone blanchardyn. the reuerence and honoure that sadoyne & his wyff made, for loue of blanchardyn, to his fader, sholde be longe for to be recounted here / Wyth [r]yght grete Ioye and gladnes they had hym in to the chamberes, where was
has him bathed
a bayne redy made, where they made hym to be
and royally clad,
washed clene; And syth toke hym clothyng, accordyng to hys royal astate. And in lyke wyse they ded to all þ^e^ knyghtes that had be prysoners wyth hym, euery man after hys degree. ¶ Blanchardyn thenne, seeng the aduenture that was happed to hym, came toward the kyng hys fader, and sayd vnto hym: 'My ryghte
and asks after the Queen.
dere and honoured lorde and fader, I bespeke you that ye woll / telle me howe the quene my moder dyd byfore your harde Infortune?' 'My ryght dere sone,'
She never had joy after Blanchardyn left her.
said the kynge / 'knowe now, that neuer syth thy departyng, thy sorowfull moder had no Ioye at her herte; and noon was there, my self nor noon other, that myghte recomforte her / wherof thou mayst thynke wele, that after that greuouse sorowe that she hath had of my takynge, and that she had neuer no worde from
3 I j.
me [3]syth that I was take and broughte here of the sarasyns, Wherby I knowe certeynli, as I fere me / that she ys rather ded than a lyue' / After thees

[1]–[1], [2] Wanting in the French.

wordes, the kynge byganne full sore to wepe / and so ded blanchardyn, so that Sadoyne nor Beatryx his wyff coude do no thynge to stynte them. Blanchardyn and his father weep.

¶ The xl. chapytur conteyneth how Blanchardyn and sadoyne and the good kynge of fryse toke the see wyth a grete excercyte of folke / for to gyue socours vnto the proude pucelle in amours.

After their teeris and pytuable reconyssaunce were past and chassed, they taryed the space of a moneth wyth in the cyte of Cassydonye / abydyng that the kyng of fryse, fader vnto blanchardyn, were hole, and brought ayen in to the astate of his owne strength / that was yet that tyme of resonabel age for to suffer the excercise of armes / Blanchardyn, that all his hert and his thought had sette vpon his ladye, the[1] proude pucell in amours, ryght sore desiryng to haue her oute of thraldom and power of Alymodes the kynge / and also seeng his fader broughte vp ayen in good conualescence and helth, cam by-fore Sadoyne and seyd: 'my feythfull felawe and ryght trusty frende, god and fortune hath helped you, so that ye be come to that thynge that ye moost dyd desire by-fore this tyme / for þ^e^ whiche thynge to be complete / accordyng to my promyse, I haue holpen you the beste that I coude, so thanked be our lord, ye are therof come to your aboue. Wherfore I praye you that in lyke case ye woll do so to me / as in you ys my verey truste and parfyte confydence. ¶ Whyche certaynly I knowe welle that ye woll doo. It ys soo, that I beseke you now that ye woll helpe and socoure me now ayenste the kynge Alymodes, that by his grete crueltee and

They stay a month in Cassidonie.

till Blanchardyn's father is well.

Blanchardyn prays Sadoyne to help him fight K. Alymodes,

[1] *Orig.* lady ethe

tyrannye kepeth shette & closed that thynge that I oughte moste to be desirouse of in thys worlde / for to haue her oute of seruytude into franchyse. It is my ryghte doubted ladye, the proude pucell in amours.' Whan Sadoyne vnderstode the wordes of blanchardyn, all smylyng he ansuerde vnto hym, and sayde: 'My ryghte verey frende and goode felawe, your desyer and your wylle is myn own; and [1]neuere whyle I am man alyue, nothynge shall be parted, for, bytwene vs* / your wylle and my wyll is but one wylle so stedfasteli knytted,[1] that hit shall be lefte for an ensample / to them that shal come herafter / in perpetuall memorye. ¶ And your commaundemmentys and myn shalbe wyth vs two persones but one thynge / Late oure shyppes be made redy and appareyled / so shall we thenne goo for to gyue socoure and helpe vnto her, whos presence we so sore do desyre' / Thenne blanchardyn, heryng the gracyous ansuer of Sadoyne his feythful felaw / he thanked hym right moche / And syn afterward, by ordenance of Sadoyne & blanchardyn, the nauey was apparelled & redy made, stored & garnyshed wyth good men of werre, & wyth artylarye / as was perteynyng to suche a thyng, & made hemself redy in fayr araye for to goo to socour & helpe [2]her that passed all other of beaute,[2] that beseged was by kyng alymodes [3]& his folke wythin her cyte of Tourmaday[3] / after this that blanchardyn & Sadoyne sawe their shyppes redy & well stored wyth vytaylles & of other thynges

and free Eglantine.

Sadoyne at once agrees, and says nothing shall ever divide them.

The ships are

stored and manned.

[1–1] Iamais entre nous et moy ny a riens party. Vostre volonte et la mienne est vne telleque

* ? shall be parted betwene us, for your wylle, &c.

[2–2] lorguilleuse damours

[3–3] le quel par sa cruaulte est cause que le Royaulme de frize auoit este degaste par daire son filz / dont le bon roy pere de blanchandin auoit grant desir de sen vengier / tresconuoitant de soy trouver en lieu ou Il lui peust porter dommage car il estoit encorres de bon eaige pour porter et excercicer les armes

necessare to fynyshe their enterpryse to the socours & helpe of the proude pucel in amours, Sadoyne toke leue of his wyff, the fayre Beatryx, and so dyd blanch-
4 ardyn / whiche they shall neuer see tyll that she & her husbonde Sadoyne haue ben in grete peryll of their lyues / as here after ye shall mowe here / ¶ Sadoyne, thorugh the counseyll of his felaw blanchardyn [1]lefte
8 wythin his cyte of Cassydonye foure thousand of goode knyghtes, chosen for to defende and kepe it ayenste kynge Alymodes, yf by eny aduenture he cam thider ayen / as he dyd afterwarde. After their leue thus
12 taken of the fayr Beatryx, they departed & toke the see, leuynge behinde theym the fayr Beatryx, that made so grete sorowe for her goode husbonde Sadoyne / Whan the barons were vpon the see the
16 maryners made saylle. The wynde was ryght goode that broughte theym forth by suche a wyse, that wythin a whyle they were ferre fro the lande / And were togyder xxx[2] grete shyppes and four score galeys
20 subtyl / Duryng the tyme that the goode kynge of fryse, Blanchardyn and Sadoyne, and their folke shall be thus saylynge towarde Tourmaday / We shall retorne to speke of the tyraunte, the kynge Alymodes,
24 and the proude pucell in amours /

Sadoyne and Blanchardyn take leave of Beatrice,

[1] I ij.

giving her 4000 knights to defend the city.

The expedition sails:

30 big ships, and 80 galleys.

¶ The xlj chapyter sheweth how Blanchardyn recounted to his fader & to Sadoyne the beaulte and the godnes of his lady,
28 the proude pucell in amours, And of the prouoste that cam ayenste hem /

WE haue herde here tofore howe kynge alymodes
32 had beseged the nobel cyte of Tormaday, where was the nobel lady, the proude mayden

K. Alymodes still besieges Tormaday.

[2] xxxij

K. Alymodes continually cannonades Tormaday.

in amours, byfore whiche cyte he made gounes & other engynes to be caste ayenste the walles bothe nyghte and daye, for to brynge hem adoun; and wyth the same he made the toun sawte ofte tymes ful sore, where he made grete losse of his folke / But yt is all ynough to be byleuyd for a trouth that it was not donn wyth oute slaughter and damage to theym of the towne / The proude pucell in amours, seeng herself so sore expressyd[1] / her knyghtes and her men slayne, was ryght sory / And of that other partye she had no hope of eny socours / but only of Blanchardyn, in whom was al her trust / but by no manere she myght not knowe in to what parte of the worlde he was dryuen, and was in a grete feer lest he had ben drowned in the grete tempeste of wyndes that had reculed them in to the hyghe see from the costes of Tourmaday; and full often nyght and day she wyshed hym wyth her / and was so sory for hym that she wyst not what she sholde doo, and noo playsure she coude taken in no thynge / but was euer more sorowyng at the herte of her / In so moche that one daye amonge other, erly in a mornyng, kynge Alymodes made the towne to be assayled, and was there made grete alarme & grete fray, so that the noyse and the callynge that was made of bothe partyes cam vnto the eerys of the proude pucelle in amours. Wherfor she rose out of her bed and bygan to wyshe sore after blanchardyn / ¶ She cam toward a wyndowe whiche opened her self; and as she dyde cast alwayes her syght toward the see, she trowed to haue seen a grete nombre of shippes that were appyeryng vpon the water / and cam sayllynge, as her aduyse was, toward Tourmaday / She seeng that thynge, for grete Ioye that she toke, she wyst not what she sholde saye or thynke therof, whether she was a wakyng or a slepe. An[1] [illegible]o be better in certaynte of the trouth, she

Eglantine grieves, and has no hope, save in Blanchardyn.

One morning

she sees ships

[1] oppresse

went vp at a hyghe wyndowe, and loked so longe tyl
that she myght perceyue clerly that they were shyppes and vesselles of werre / 'Ha, god,' saide she, 'myght som
4 socours come to me of eny souldyours? for of noo man of my sybbe I awayte for none, syth that the kynge of the grete Nourthweghe, myn oncle, is decessed, that wold helpe me ayenst the tyraunt kynge Alymodes.'
8 Atte the same houre Blanchardyn was vpon the borde of his ship, and talked wyth the kynge of fryse his fader / [1]And as they were thus in deuyses / blanchardyn loked on the see, and byganne to espye the
12 toures of the paleys of Tourmaday, and shewed them to his fader and to sadoyne his felawe. He recounted to his fader, the kynge of ffryse, the beaulte, goodnes, and other goode vertues and maners that were in his
16 lady, the proude pucelle in amours, And how he was in her goode grace, and she lyke wyse in his; & that yf god gaff hym that hap, that he myght come to batayll ayenst her enmye the kyng alymodes / he sholde shewe
20 to hym the beneuolence that he ought to his lady / And the grete malyuolence or euyll wylle that he had for her sake toward the tyraunt, that by so grete wronge and wythout laufull cause made to her suche force and
24 Iniurye. ¶ Thus talkyng of many thynges, they exploytted so by a goode wynde that they had, that they cam so nyghe the lande, that they see playnly the tentes and the pauyllyons of kynge Alymodes, the
28 whiche Blanchardyn dyde shewe vnto the kynge his fader, and to his felawe Sadoyne. The proude pucelle in amours, that at this houre was lenyng vpon her wyndowe, sent hastely for the prouost, that he sholde
32 come and speke wyth her / whiche cam anone to her / he entred in to her chambre, and right humbly salued the pucelle / she called hym nyghe her, and shewed hym the right myghty nauye that cam to arryue there /
36 the prouost, that was right wyse and subtyll, perceyued,

of war approaching, and hopes they are to help her.

Blanchardyn

[1] I iij.

points out Tormaday to his father, the King of Friesland, tells him of Eglantine's beauty,

and hopes he may meet K. Alymodes in battle.

They see this King's tents.

Eglantine

shows her Provost Blanchardyn's navy.

and knewe full sone that they were crysten, and sayde to his lady that he sholde go to them to wyte what folke they were, and yf he coude doo so moche by eny wyse, that they wolde take her wages and serue her. He toke his leue, and went oute of the chambre, and cam streyght to the hauen, where he toke a bote, prest and garnyshed wyth eyght goode felawes, eche of them an ore in his hande, whiche wythin a short whyle brought the prouost nyghe to the galleyes / & so wel they stered that they cam and borded the ship wherin blanchardyn was, that desyred sore to knowe what they were that so fast rowed toward his vessel / Thenne the prouost, seeyng hym self arryued where he wolde be / Right highly he salued theym that were wythin þ^e^ ship / Blanchardyn, that lened vpon þ^e^ borde of it, rendred to hym his salutacion / The prouost thenne al on hyghe exposed & sayde the charge that he had of his maystres byhalue, the lady of tourmaday / Blanchardyn, that wel knewe the prouost, ansuered, demaundyng of hym yf his lady was so sore oppressed by her enmyes as he sayde / & whether she might holde the towne longe ayenst them that had layde siege to it by fore her / The prouost ansuered to hym & sayde / 'ye, right wel / but one thynge there is, that she may not haue nother helthe nor Ioye, but alweyes she most be [1]chaunged vpon her bed,[1] where she can not haue rest nor noo goode slepe by night nor by daye.' 'frende,' saide blanchardyn, 'wherof may come this dysease vnto her that so traueylleth & tourmenteth her? for myn aduyse is this, that at all endes she ought to force her self from her bed, for to shewe her self, admonestyng her folke to do wel, bycause they sholde take a better corage for the persone & sight of her' / 'Syre,' sayde the prouost, 'be ye sure, & knowe for a trouthe, that so moche I knowe by my lady, that

The Provost of Tornaday takes an eight-oar, and rows to Blanchardyn's ship.

Blanchardyn asks about Eglantine.

The Provost says she can never rest,

[1–1] couchid

she shal neuer haue no parfytte Ioye at her herte, for loue of a knyght of whom she is enamored, whiche she weneth to be peryshed & ded / but my hope is in god, that he shall yet come ayen hyther; for men sayen comynly, that he whome god wyll haue kept, may not be peryshed / Syre, I saye the same for the knyght, that is the most parfyt in all beaulte & condicyons / that his lyke can not be founde. how be [1]it that not long ago we herde tydynges of hym of a pylgryme that passed here byfore, that sayde to vs for veray trouth, that he and his felawe Sadoyne were arryued in to the cyte of Cassydonye, whiche they had taken & goten by force of armes / for the whiche tydynge my sayde lady hath be wel asswaged of her dysplaysure, trustyng in god that shortly she shal vnderstande more playnly the certaynte therof.' Whan blanchardyn vnderstode the prouost / he sayde vnto hym, that this whiche the pylgryme had sayd was true, & that blanchardyn had sent hem there for to socoure and help his maistres. but som men wyl saye that he shal wedde the doughter of kynge Alymodes, whiche is lady of the lande where he is, & that he shal maynteyne & kepe the contrey with her / 'Ha, ha, sire! what is that / that ye saye? / what a grete synne & vntrouth it were to blanchardin, to take nor haue to his wyf another than the proude pucell in amours, þat loueth him so truly / & that so longe hath wayted & taryed after hym / & that for þe grete loue that she hath to him, she hath reffused so many kynges & so hyghe prynces that dayly do requyre her. Certes, who someuer brought her this sorowfull & pyteuose tydynge / I doubte not but that she shold slee her self for grete displaysir / for suche, & so true, I knowe her. Now, god for-bede that I be the brynger of thys tydynges / that so sore displaysaunt shalbe to me for to vttir & declare hem, that I had almost as lief to deye as to reherce them vnto my said maystresse.

for love of a knight whom she thinks dead.

[1] I iiij.

But he is said to be alive,

and to have taken Cassidonie.

Blanchardyn

suggests that he is to wed K. Alymodes's daughter.

The Provost declares that Blanchardyn will have no other wife than his love Eglantine.

But, sire, syth it is therof as ye saye, & that ye come from Blanchardyn, I praye you to telle me yf he

Has he sent any letter to her?

wryteth or sendeth eny wordes to my sayde lady by you / for nothyng coude make me to byleue that this grete & lothely vntrouthe sholde be in blanchardyn / to leue & for-sake her of whom he is so parfytly beloued for to take the doughter of a kynge her enmye.' 'frende,' sayde blanchardyn, 'as for wrytyng or eny worde that he sholde sende, I knowe of none.' 'that

No, says Blanchardyn,

rewyth me,' sayde the prouost, 'so am I wel sore abashed how he can haue a wylle to chose another lady than þ^e^ proude pucelle in amours, whiche is the most fayr, and the most noble & the most complet a lady, & most plesaunt of all the remenaunt of the world / how thenne doeth not he remembre hymself of the courser, & of the sleue of clothe of golde that she dyde send vnto hym after the fyrst acqueyntaunce? Certaynly, my herte can not Iudge to me that euer of suche a knyght as is Blanchardyn, shold growe suche a wille [1]to be do.'[1] 'Ha, ha! madame,' sayde the prouost, 'see here sore harde tydynges, that shalbe cause to brynge at an ende full myserably your laste dayes' / Whan

and smiles.

blanchardyn herde the prouost speke thus / he bygan to smyle. Thenne the prouost behylde hym ful entenly-

The Provost then recognizes him,

fly, and knewe hym, wherof he had so grete & so parfyt a Ioye that it can not be recounted / And after many wordes of reconyssaunce / the prouoste tolde to

and tells him how truly Eglantine loves him.

hym of all, how he was euer truly byloued, & how his lady, the proude pucelle in amours, had borne, & as yet bare suche a displeasure for & by thoccasyon of hym; & that neuer syth that she receyued the letter that he dyde sende to her by hym, she had no Ioye at her herte, nor shal neuer haue vnto the tyme that she see you ayen. Blanchardyn sayde to him: 'lat her take no care of nothing, nor no doubte of my parte;

[1–1] de faire

for as to me, I haue alwayes be, and euermore shall as longe I shall lyue, her true and feythfull louer / And shall neuer fayle her of noo thyng that is or shalbe in my power to doo for her, as to her that I more desire to complayse than al þ^e^ worlde / ye shal recomende me to her gode grace, & from me ye shal presente vnto her this rynge of golde / & as to þ^e^ faytte of our men of werre that ben here, we haue brought hem alle hyther only for to gyue vnto her helpe & socoure; we shal kepe our self wythin our vesselles, bycause it is as now to late; & to morwe erly, whan we see houre & tyme goode, & alle redy, we shal do sowne oure trompettes, horses, & busynes / and ye that shalbe wythin the cyte / see that ye be redy & appareylled for to yssue out at the same owre, for to come ayenst oure enmyes; for from oure syde we shal assaylle them so quykly that they shal cursse the owre of oure co*m*myng / and thus they shal be fought wythal of bothe sydes by suche a manere, that wyth grete peyne they shal haue leyser to graun*t*e on to vs the victorye, [1]yf god woll'[1] /

Blanchardyn says he ever loves her;

he sends her a ring, and says he

will debark his men next morning, by sound of trumpet,

so that they and the Tormadians from the city may attack Alymodes front and rear.

[2]¶ Here foloweth the xlij chapiter, that conteyneth in hit self,[2] & speketh of the grete Ioye that the proude pucelle in loue made whan she herde reherce, by the prouost, the gracyouse tydynges of the co*m*mynge of here frende bla*n*chardyn /

THe prouost, herynge blanchardyn speke [3]so truly & benyngly,[3] he ansuered vnto hym, & sayde that as to their[4] parte, suche a dyligence salbe made therupon, [5]that their enmyes shal knowe soone by grete strokes the grete corage of them of þ^e^ towne.[5] & then*n*e right ioyouse he departed from Blanchardyn, & toke

The Provost promises that the Tormadians will do their part.

[1–1], [2–2], [3–3] Wanting in the French. [4] *Orig.* thier
[5–5] que de nul tort nen seront reprins

leue of hym, sore desyryng of all his herte to fynde hym self byfore his sayde lady, for to announce & telle to her this glad tydyng: & wend neuer to haue come

The Provost of Tormaday hurries back

[1]tyme ynoughe[1] there. He exployted so, and made suche a dilygence, that wyth grete Ioye and gladnesse he entred wythin þe hauen of tourmaday, without eny delaye nor lettyng by no maner; & cam to þe towne,

to Eglantine,

where he fonde þe noble mayden, right nobly accompanyed of her knyghtes / ladyes, & gentyl women, that were wyth her in grete nomber / ¶ She, seeng the prouost com a land out of his bote, makyng a mery contenance / was sore desired to / know of hym som gode tydynges, for her hert iudged her that he brought som / so taryed she not tyll that the prouost were com toward her / but a grete pas marched ayenst hym / The

kneels to her and tells her that the navy brings her helpers,

prouost made vnto her the reuerence, puttyng hymself vpon his knee / and sayd to her: 'My ryght redoubted lady, knowe ye for certayn that I haue be wyth the ryght puyssaunt nauye, wyche is laden wyth men of armes, that are come to helpe you / Of the whiche ben

Blanchardyn and his father and friend,

conducters & chieff rulers, the kyng of fryse, þe nobyl knyght blanchardyn his sone, & Sadoyne his felaw / Madame, see here a rynge of gold, that blanchardyn sendeth to you by me, wyth recommendacyons many-fold / knowe, madame, that a grete Ioye ought to be encresed wythin you / whan suche a socours is come to your grete comforte, for thes thre hyghe pryncys haue brought wyth theym grete nomber of folkes. And

who will take vengeance on K. Alymodes

they haue a ryght perfyte desire to avenge your quarell vpon Alymodes, the tyraunt / and ye maye byleue for certeyn, that the goode kynge of fryse hath noon other desire than to auenge hymself whan he shall com to the feelde, for the grete hurt, Iniurye, & damage that hath be doon vnto hym by daryus, the sone of kyng Alymodes. To morowe, by the mornyng, shall the

[1–1] a tans

batayll bygynne; wherfor Blanchardyn prayeth you, by me / that ye commaunde your captayns & men of armes that they be redy, all to the ende that whan the houre shall come that þ^e^ trompettes & bussynes of þ^e^ oost of blanchardyn shall begyn to soune / that your folke be redy forto take the feelde, and that quyckly they assaylle your enmyes of all sydes / And as to that parte of the prynces that come to your socours, they shalbe redy atte the same owre / And by all, thus, your enmyes shal fynde hem self oppressed both byfore & behynd, wherof kyng Alymodes shalbe in grete affray / & ye shalbe auenged vpon him, to the playsure of god, for he shal haue a double displaysure; & in especyall whan the tydynges shalbe recounted vnto him of daryus his sone, that hath be slayne & brought to his deth by the handes of blanchardyn. & wyth this he shal fynde his cite of Cassydonye & all his grete royalme conquested & goten / & his doughter wedded / whiche by blanchardyn hathe be yeuen vnto his felaw, sadoyne.' That tyme that the proude pucelle in amours had herd & vnderstande the prouost / neuer in her dayes had she so moche of displeasire, but that these tydynges dyde redouble her ioye ouer mesure: & thanked god of this goode aduenture. So is there non that coude telle nor wryte the ioye that the same tyme was in her, & emonge all the people of the towne. She went ayen in to her paleys, replenysshed wyth ioye & gladnesse, & made to be cryed thurgh all the stretes & common places of the towne, that all the stretes of the cyte sholde be hanged wyth clothes the next day folowyng / & that at the comyng in of blanchardyn, euery man sholde were his best clothyng / & that myrth / & melody sholde be made thurgh al þ^e^ cyte þ^e^ same night, where-as were al maner of musical instrumentes: whiche thing was don, for suche noyse & suche sowne was there made al that night, what of

by battle next morning,

the Tormadians assailing him in front,

and Blanchardyn attacking him in rear.

Eglantine rejoices and thanks God

She orders the city to be hung with clothes next day,

and mirth and melody made all that night.

Merriment of the Tormadians.

tambours / trompettes, claryons / harp / lute, clauicordes, & other diuerse instrumentes / wyth þe swete voyces of the ladyes & gentyl women, that sange there, that it semed that god had descended among them from heuen / & so grete was þe ioye wythin þe cyte, that the sowne therof was herde vnto kynge Alymodes oost. Merueylles it was to here the thankes, the louenges, and the praysynges. ¶ And the ryngyng of belles, that were don in all the chirches of the towne, yeldyng graces vnto oure lord.

K. Alymodes wonders at the festivities in Tormaday.

¶ The kynge Alymodes, that was that same tyme wythin his tentes wyth his barons, gaff hym self grete merueylle of the Ioye & feste that he herde don wythin the cyte. he wyst not what he sholde thynke, & doubted lest they had herde eny tydynges of som socours comyng vnto them / for by no meanes he myght not loke ferre toward the see syde. & also blanchardyn & his nauye, after that the prouost was gon from hym, wyth-drewe hem in to the see, wherfor Alymodes nor his folke coude not see hem nor here them, for the grete reuyll & Ioye that was made by them of the cyte, that made grete noyse / And at that self houre blanchardyn, wyth all his shippes & galeyes, cam and arryued wythin the hauen, & descended on lande wythout their enmyes were aware of hem; for the Ioye & noyse [1]that wythin the towne was thus grete[1] /

Blanchardyn and his army debark at night in peace.

¶ The xliij chapiter followeth,[2] whiche conteyneth & speketh of the grete beaulte[3] that was by fore Tourmaday, ayenst the kynge Alymodes, that was discomfyted / And of the takynge of Sadoyne, wherof

[1—1] Wanting in the French. [2] *Orig.* followed [3] bataille

Blanchardyn was right sory, as rayson was /

WEll ye haue herde here to fore the grete Ioye & gladnesse that was made wythin the cyte, for the goode tydynges that the proude pusell in loue had vnderstand of Blanchardyn her louer, whiche that nyght made grete diligence for to accomplysshe that whiche blanchardyn had sent her worde of; for she was her self that nyght in the towne house, where she made to come al her captaynes to fore her, to whome by þ^e^ prouost she made to be tolde and related al alonge that was charged vnto her by blanchardyn. the captaynes & hedes of her werre were all glad of thees tydynges, right [1]desyryng to putte it in to execucyon. at the commaundement of ther lady, they made hem all redy, & putte hem self in araye for to sprynge out the next mornyng vpon their enmyes, as by blanchardyn was sent worde / ¶ Of that other part, kynge Alymodes, that was in grete affraye to knowe the cause and occasion wherfore they of the cyte were makynge suche a gladnesse, assembled his barons for to haue aduyse & counseyll vpon this matiere, & sette the scout watche wyth grete nombre of men that he sholde not be ouertaken vnbeware / And that same nyght he sent for his shippes that were two mylle thens [2]wythin an hauen for to haue theym brought nerer his oost / that he myght entre in them yf eny infortune happed to hym /[2] & to wythdrawe his folke therinne yf nede were / Thus passed kynge Alymodes the nyght ouer tyl the fayre daye came, that the sonne byganne to ascende, castyng his bemes a brode vpon the erthe; & as he

Eglantine

sends for her war-captains,

and the Provost gives them Blanchardyn's instructions.

[1] K j.

K. Alymodes

calls a Council of War,

and sends for his ships

in case of disaster.

[2–2] qui pour securete estoit en vng port pour ce *que* la endroit ou Il estoit logie ny auoit quelque perilaige de la mer Si la fist venir auprez de lui ancrer po*ur* ce q*ue* le temps estoit douls et la mer quoyt Il le fist affin q*ue* ne aucune malle aduenture lui aduenoit

was musyng vpon þ^e^ werke, lokyng to & fro vpon the
K. Alymodes sees with dismay Blanchardyn's navy, and his troops in battle array,
see, he perceyued a right myghty nauey, wherof they
that were come vpon lande, he sawe hem in grete
nombre, al redy renged in a fayr ordeynaunce of batayll
for to fyght nyghe by þ^e^ see shoris, a lytyl beyonde his
ooste, wherof he was not awar afore that; & he was
sore abashed, & gretely merueylled how they were so
soone landed wythout that he knewe therof / So fered
he soone of this that was true, that it was blanchardyn
& his folke that were come there. ¶ The worthy knyght
in three battalions, led 1. by Blanchardyn, 2. by Sadoyne, 3. by the King of Friesland.
Blanchardyn had ordeyned his folke in three battaylles,
wherof he led the formest / the seconde he be-toke to
Sadoyne his felawe, & the thirde he gaf to be conducted
to his fader the kynge of ffryse. ¶ Whan Blanchardyn
had al this thynges redy, and all his ordeynaunces y-
Blanchardyn's trumpets sound.
made, he made his trompettes / hornes, olyfauntes, and
busynes to be rongen & blowen so highe that it was
wonder to here them. They of the cyte thenne that
The Tormadians sally out,
herde the sowne therof, yssued anone out of their
towne by commaundement of their lady, the proude
encouraged by Eglantine.
mayden in amours, that sore admonested and prayed
them to do wel / to thende that som goode tydynges
might be reported by them. alimodes, seeng his enmyes
K. Alymodes
cam a lande, and in so fayre ordonaunce y-sette of that
one part / & of that other syde he sawe them of the
cyte that cam wyth a grete puyssaunce vpon hym
and his folke, It is well ynough to be byleued, that he
was not wel assured. But nought therfore, as a sharp
and hardy knyght as he was, the best wyse that he
arranges his battalions as best he can.
myght or coude / he ordeyned his bataylles, whiche he
toke to be conducted and guyded to theym that semed
The hosts draw nigh one another.
hym worthy therof. The oostes beganne to approche
eche other / the callyng and the crye arose so grete &
hyghe betwyx them, what by the sowne of trompettes /
hornes and bussynes / as of the stour dynnyng and
noyse that their horses made treddyng and wallopyng

hyghe and harde vpon the grounde, that it semed that all the foure elementes had fought there to-gyder. The duste byganne to ryse so hyghe aboute them and so thykke, that it toke away the bryghtnes of the sonne / so that they that were wythin the cyte sawe nother frendes nor enmyes. They went to the chirche in grete deuocyon, makyng their prayers to our lord, that he wolde helpe their frendes; And, namely, that noble lady, the proude pucelle in amours, alle barefote, went from one chirche to another, prayng god that he wold graunte þe victorie to her true loue blanchardyn, & to them that were with him / & syth cam ayen to her paleys / & mounted vp to a highe toure for to see & beholde þe batayl þat was alredy bygonne. right grete murdre & slaughter was ther made at settyng vpon of bothe partyes / many a knyght ded, & brought to the grounde, that neuer syn had power to releue hemself / the horses of whom went rennyng vpon the playn, & in to the medowes, the raynnes of their brydels hangyng & drawyng up on the grounde. blanchardyn, at his comynge on that he made, [1]recounted a duke,[1] cosyn germayn to kynge Alymodes, vpon whom he sette the sharpe hed of his spere by so grete force, that he perced his body thorugh and thorugh, so that the spere was seen from the breste to the backe of hym more than thre fote longe / and syn cam to the second / to the thyrd, & to the fourth / & neuer he rested nor ceassed hymself as long as the spere abode hole, whiche was sore bygge & oute of mesure grete, to slee & ouerthrowe his enmyes to the grounde / And or euer his spere was crased or broken / he ouerthreu & slew seuen of theym, that deyd myserable ther amonge the horses fete / Then toke blanchardyn his good swerde into his fyste, [2]wher-

The dust darkens the sun.

Eglantine goes barefoot from church to church, praying for victory for Blanchardyn.

Blanchardyn runs thro' Alymodes's cousin

and seven others, till his spear breaks.

[1–1] rencontra ("a duke" wanting in the French).

[2–2] (next page) dont il detrenchoit piez braz et Iambes et les pourfendoit Iusques es ceruelles

Then Blanchardyn hews foes with his sword till the ground is red with blood.

of he brak salletes & helmettes of fyn stele / and to brayned ther many one / he al to-hewe* his enmyes, & made legges, armes & fete to flee from the body of theym / that all the grou*n*de aboute hym was dyed in red wyth blode of his aduersaryes[2] / he dyd so moche of armes, that wyth in a while his swerde was wele beknowen among his enmyes / In so moche that they made hym waye, fleeng. [3]they dyd so moche by their ryght excellent proues, that they made to recule theyr enmyes vnto their tentes / and sore yll yt had ben wyth theym / yf kyng Alymodes had not socoured them, that cam of freshe wyth ten thousau*n*d of his men / and to them he began to call & saye / 'forth, forthe, nobel barons / haue thys daye reme*m*berau*n*ce of your wyues & chyldren that ye haue lefte at home in care & myserye! for dred that they haue to lese you / take ayen wythin yourself a good and vygoryus corage in shewynge of your force and vertue ayenste your enmyes.' ††They began than to caste a crye amonge hem sore grete & wo*n*derfull, tournynge their faces toward their enmyes†† / bla*n*chardyn smote hymselfe wyth-ynne theym fyrst of all / whom they knew full wele, by cause that by hym & thorughe his cause they had receyued all the most losse that they had done there. wherfore all their desire was for to close hym all aboute, & slee hym yf they myghte haue doon soo. And they, seenge that he had embated hymself amonge theym, dyde putte hemself togyder, & enclosed hym rou*n*de aboute, lau*n*chynge and castyng to hym speres & dartes, in somoche that they wounded hym ful sore in many places of his body, and vnder hym they slew his horse / but as a prew knyght ryght valiante & hardy / lepte lyghtli on his fete, enbrasyng his shelde, his swerde heued vp in his fyste, wherwyth he smote

K. Alymodes brings up 10,000 fresh men.

Blanchardyn attacks them,

but they surround him, and cast darts at him,

and kill his horse.

He fights on foot,

* *Orig.* alto hewe [3–3] next page = [5] next page.
†† Wanting in the French.

& hewe bothe legges & armes from the bodyes of theym by suche a myghte & fyersnes, and thorughe so grete strokes of hym,[3] so that noon was so hardy of all his enmyes that durste abyde a full stroke of his handes / Of that other partye was the kyng of fryse & Sadoyne, that made the bataylles of hys enmyes to trembel full fast, & made roume where grete preses were. Ryghte preu & valiant was the kyng of fryse; for whom soeuer he aryued vpon, he dyd shewe suche a puyssaunce that he had no power to escape, but that he slew hym or wounded hym full ylle. Sadoyne, that was of grete corage & full of brennyng desire to acquyer to hymself the name of famouse proesse, chose corbornaunt, the brother of kyng Alymodes, to whom he gaff suche a grete stroke wyth his swerde vpon his helme, that he ouerthrew hym from his horse doun to the grounde / and had kylde hym & broughte to his ende lightly / yf he had not ben ryghte sone socoured by king Alymodes [4]his brother, that cam vpon Sadoyne, acompanyed wyth six thousaund of his folke, wherof the battayl beganne of fresshe to be sore fyers and grete / right grete was the effucyon or shedyng of blode there of bothe partyes, but more of alymodes parte, that was assaylled and befought on eythre syde, bothe behynde and before. Blanchardyn made there ryght a wondryng of worthines and goode conducte. The kyng, his fader, folowed hym nyghe / and so dyde his felawe Sadoyne, for to confounde and ouercome their enmyes /[5] ¶ The

and none dare abide his stroke

The King of Friesland fights valiantly.

Sadoyne nearly

kills Corboraunt,

but his brother Alymodes

[4] K ij.

rescues him with 6000 fresh men.

Blanchardyn

[5] Lesquelz trois vaillans et haultains princes firent tant par leurs tresexcellentes proesses que Ilz firent reculer leurs ennemis Iusques en leurs tentes ¶ Ia leur fust la chose mal tournee se le roy Alimodes ne leur fust sourvenu qui les vint secourir a tout dix mille hommes des meilleurs de ses gens Ausquelz Il commenca a crier et leur dire ¶ Auant barons au Iour dhuy vueillies auoir souvenance de voz femmes et enfans que auez laissie en douleur et misere pour la paour quilz ont de vous perdre / Reprendes en vous vigoreux et bon couraige en monstrant votre force et vertu alencontre de voz ennemis ¶ Blanchandin qui dedens eulx sestoit feru le premier lequel Il cong-

cuts thro' every helmet he can reach.

Sadoyne

spurs to rescue Blanchardyn,

followd by 10,000 knights,

and the King of Friesland,

and the Provost of Tormaday, with his townsmen.

Sadoyne remounts Blanchardyn.

whiche sawe hym fyghtyng and destroyeng, and[1] sleynge his enmyes in suche wyse that he raughte noon vpon the salate, how stronge that he was / but that he claaf hym doun vnto the tethe / But his grete corage and grete prouesse had ben but lytell worthe to hym, yf he had not be socoured anone of Sadoyne his true felawe / that had herde the cry and the noyse that they made aboute blanchardyn, that trowed to haue slayne hym / sadoyne seeng his true felawe blanchardyn that faught on fote ayenst his enmyes, broched his hors wyth the spore, full of anger & of wrathe, his swerde in his hande, dyed & all blody of the blode of his enmyes, smot hym self in to the presse, where he dyde see it moost thyk, accompanyed wyth suche knyghtes as he well trustyd vpon, callyng hygh after his baner, wherby x. thousaund men of his feliship folowed right soone the bak of hym / and, namely, the noble kynge of fryse, that ful quykly cam to the rescue of his son blanchardin / So smot they hem self all at one weyght vpon kynge Alymodes folke, and byganne to hewe and slee them, so that wythin a short tyme they brake the presse, and made grete occycyon vpon their enmyes. To the rescue of blanchardyn cam also the gode prouost, & wyth him were they of the towne, that ful wel dyde, & bare hem self right wel; for so moche they deyde, that in a lytyl while, wolde their enmyes or not / that Sadoyne gat the place, & brought a right myghty courser vnto his felow blanchardyn, vpon whiche he mounted vp anone. The kyng of fryse seeng his son blanchardyn / rescued & on horsbake ayen / brought his horse

noissoit assez pour ce que par lui et sa cause Ilz auoient receu toute la plusgrant perte quilz eurent faicte Pourquoy tout leur desir estoit de lenclore et occire se faire leussent peu / et eulx veant que dedens eulx estoit embatus se mirent ensamble et lencloirent en lui lanchant lances et dards tant que en pluseurs lieux le naurerent et lui occirent son cheual.

[1] *Orig.* dna

nere hym, & demanded of hym / [1]how he dyde,[1] & yf he felt hym self wounded or hurt in ony place where eny doubte were of his lyf / 'Syre,' sayde blanchardyn, 'no sore at all I fele wythin my body, that can let me to kylle & sle myn enmyes & yours.'[2] They thenne, wythout eny moo wordes, entred ayen bothe to gyder into the bataylle toward them of the towne, where Sadoyne was wyth them, fyghtyng ayenst Alymodes & Corboraunt his brother / Blanchardyn, seeng them of the towne by the baner that they bare, in which was portrayed a fygure in lykenes of a mayde that represented the proude pucell in amours, he dyde shewe it vnto his fader & to [3]his felawe[3] Sadoyne. he thenne toke corage & fyersnes more than euer he had don afore, admonestyng his fader & sadoyne to do wel their parte / Soo putte them self in to the thyckest of the batayll, where they ouer-threwe & casted doune alle that founde hem self by fore them / Wherby kynge Alymodes folke reculed abak more than is the lengthe of an acre of lande / Alymodes seeng his folke lese grounde, & were smytten ded doun right by the hyghe prouesse & grete worthynes of blanchardyn / desyred sore wyth al his herte to joyne hym self wyth hym; & so cam he at the one syde of blanchardyn, his swerde in the hande, for to slee hym yf he myght. but blanchardyn, that ware was, & wel taught of all poyntes of werre, perceyued soone his manere of commyng ayenst hym, & tourned brydel, and went hym self vpon kynge Alymodes, & suche a stourdy stroke [4]he gaf him vpon the helmet, that he brought him doune from his hors all astonyed / [5]the whiche blanchardyn had taken right sone the hed from þ^e^ body of hym,[5] if socours & help had not come to hym of his folke, that brought his hors to him ayen,

Blanchardyn and his father renew the fight,

rush into the thick of it,

and drive back Alymodes's men.

K. Alymodes tries to take Blanchardyn in flank;

but Blanchardyn wheels,

[4] K iij.

and unhorses Alymodes,

who is rescued and remounted.

[1—1] comment Il se faisoit
[2] les vostres
[3—3] Wanting in the French.
[5—5] le quel blanchandin eust occis

& remounted him on horsbak. whan he see hym self on his hors, he cam ayen vpon Blanchardyn, the swerde in his hande, requyryng to blanchardyn that he wolde drawe out of the prese, & that he had grete desyre to proue hym self vpon hym / Whan blanchardyn vnderstode kynge Alymodes, he was right glad, & right lyberaly graunted to hym his requeste / They two drewe them self out of the bataylle, & byganne to bete & smyte one vpon other so ofte & so thyk that the fyre came [1]out of their armures, that were of fyn stele.[1] but blanchardyn dyde serue hym wyth so peysaunt & heuy strokes, & so horryble, that alymodes sholde neuer haue departed from the place quyk, yf he had not be socoured of corboraunt his brother. The batayll of theym two, dyde see playnly þ^e^ proude pucell in amours that was vpon her highe toure, where she praied god for the prosperyte of blanchardyn / She called a yong knyght [2]a seruaunt of hers,[2] to whom she toke a sleue of whyt damaske, & commaunded hym to presente hit hastely from her behalue vnto blanchardyn / prayng hym that for her sake & loue, to dye the whyt coloure in to red wyth the blode of her enmyes / The gentyl man, sore desyryng to accomplyshe his maystres commaundement, toke of his lady the sleue of whyt colour. he departed & made suche diligence, that a present was therof made to blanchardyn, rehersyng vnto hym that that his lady, the proude pucelle in amours, had charged him to saye vnto blanchardyn / [3]whiche was right glad of the saide present, more than he sholde haue be yf the messenger had brought to hym a mylyon of fyn golde[3] / and thanked moche his lady, the proude pucelle in amours, that behylde hym from her tour[4] as ferre as she myght chuse hym, and

K. Alymodes then challenges Blanchardyn to single combat.

They fight fiercely,

and Alymodes has to be rescued by his brother Corboraunt.

Eglantine sends her white sleeve to Blanchardyn,

bidding him dye it red in the blood of her foes.

He thanks her.

[1–1] hors de lachier qui en leurs heaulmes estoit.
[2–2] son seruiteur
[3–3] blanchandin ful moult Ioyeulx
[4] fenestre

enforced his power for to parfurnysshe her request. he smote vpon his enmyes as it had be the thonder, confoundyng and ouerthrowyng them ded to þ^e^ grounde; for who that was that tyme yrought of hym, his dayes were fynyshed. fynably, the batayll lasted so longe that kynge Alymodes & his Cassydonyens were rebuked, wold they or no, to their grete losse, hurt and dammage / for of thre score thousaund, the remenaunt that myght be saued wythdrewe themself wyth kynge alymodes, that toke hastely the waye toward his shippes for to entre, and saue hym self ther Inne / But sadoyne folowed hym of so nyghe at bak of hem, that with grete peyne gaf them leyser to saue hem self / And so ferre he folowed and chassed them, that he ouer toke kynge alymodes brother called Corboraunt, to whome he gaff a reuerse wyth his swerde so grete that he made fle bothe the helme and the hed from the body of hym.[1] Kynge alymodes seeng his brother slayne of a knyght alone, was full sory and an-angred / he ascryed to his folke that traytoure that had slayne his brother Corberaunt sholde be taken by them, for he hath doon to vs this day so moche of euyl, bothe he and his felawes / that I shal neuer haue Ioye at my herte tyl that I haue hym ded or taken / They thenne from al sydes tourned vpon Sadoyne, and slewe his horsse and enclosed hym rounde aboute, so that his defendyng had nought proffyted to hym nor holpen but that he shold haue be there slayn, yf kynge alymodes had not ascryed & commaunded to his men that they sholde not sle hym, but sholde take hym quyk, [2]whiche thynge was don of hem. Grete crye, noyse, and houlyng made the sarasyns at the takyng of Sadoyne, in somoche that blanchardyn herde them, whiche cam rennyng there as the medle was wyth a grete nombre of folkys. But the kyng Alymodes seeng

Blanchardyn strikes his foes like thunder.

K. Alymodes and the remnant of his men withdraw to their ships.

Sadoyne cuts off the head of Corboraunt.

He is surrounded,

and taken.

[2] K iiij.

[1] et chey mort.

hym comyng wyth puyssaunce, for fere that he had of
Sadoyne is carried by Alymodes on board ship.
hym, he departyd, & went hastely wyth suche as wold be saued wyth hym / and entred hys shyppes, and brought wyth hym Sadoyne / for blanchardyn coude neuer come tyme ynough to the rescue of hym; but or euer they were entred in to theyr vessels they made grete losse of their men / but the sorow was ryght grete of Blanchardyn and of hys folke, whan he wyste that the paynemys had wyth hem his trew felawe Sadoyne / wherof he was so dolaunt, & so replenyshed wyth sorow and heuynes, that no body coude pease hym by eny manere. He smote his hors wyth the spore, alonge by the shores of the see, escryeng as loude as he myght vnto kyng Alymodes, that he wolde take to hym ageyn his
Blanchardyn's offer of ransom for Sadoyne
felaw Sadoyne / and that for his raensom he shulde geue hym thre score thousand pound of fyne gold, wyth six thousand men of his folke that he had prysoners / Alymodes ansuerd, that yf he wolde delyuer the proude pucell in amours to hys wylle / that he shulde take hym ayen Sadoyne / blanchardyn ansuerd that he was content, and that whan he sholde haue ayen Sadoyne / and had delyuerd the proude pucell in amours in his hande / he shold rather slee hymself than that she shold abyde wyth hym no while. ¶ After these wordes / Alymodes, the kyng of Cassydonye, that was ryghte sore an-angred, rose vpon his fete and sayd to blanchardyn / that he
is refused.
loste his wordes / And that he sholde neuer see Sadoyne, but sholde haue hym wyth hym in to Cassy-
Sadoyne is to be hangd.
donye, where he sholde make hym to be hanged byfore Beatryx his doughter, sayeng that suche sholde be the rewarde of his folyshe loue, and that noon other raenson he sholde take for hym. And the sorowefull / Sadoyne, that was that tyme vpon the wale of the ship, sore harde ybounde wyth yrons, bygan to calle, and sayde wyth a hyghe voyce / 'far wel, my true felawe blanch-

ardyn / Ye shall neuer see me more, as I byleue.' And thus they departed wythout eny more speche. The wynde was goode for them, that sone brought them ferre from the coste of Tormaday, [1]and drewe towarde Cassydonye /[1]

Sadoyne calls farewell to Blanchardyn.

¶ The xliiij. chapiter conteyneth in hit self how blanchardin made hym self redy with his folke and nauye for to socoure and helpe his felawe Sadoyne / that kynge Alymodes brought prysoner [2]to Cassydonye /[2]

WHan blanchardyn dyde see that to hym was Impossyble to haue ayen by raenson his true felaw sadoyne, he was right sory therfor, and none was there so grete frende wyth hym that coude recomforte hym. sore pyteously he byganne to wyshe hym ayen, sayng in this wyse, 'wo me, sadoyne, my veray true felawe! for my sake ye haue lefte your fader, your royalme, landes, lordshippes, and kynrede, and your frendes, and haue exposed the body of you and of your men to the socoure and help of me / & nowe for myne owne cause ye be prysoner, ought not I wel to enforce my self that ye were delyuered from the euyll where ye be in at this tyme for the grete loue that ye haue vnto me / ¶ Certes I ought to do it / and yf god be playsed, I shall acquyte my self therof' / ¶ The pouere folke of prusse, that is to wyte, the barons and knyghtes that Sadoyne had brought wyth hym / were sore dyscomfyted and full of sorowe for thabsence of their maystre, that they sawe was brought prysonner of the paynems / But blanchardyn ryght humbly dyde recomforte hem þe best wyse that he coude / after that the gayne was

Blanchardyn laments the capture of his friend Sadoyne, and resolves to set him free.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] auec luy

parted emonge them that therof were worthy / Blanch-
Blanchardyn orders all the ships at Tormaday to be victuald.
ardyn gaff commaundement, that alle the shippes and other vesselles that were al aboute Tourmaday, sholde be made redy and garnysshed wyth vytaylles suche as apparteyned / and that his wylle was vttyrly sette for to goo to gyue socoure and helpe vnto his felawe Sadoyne / ¶ The fayr yong lady, the proude pucell in
Eglantine meets Blanchardyn,
amours, was alredy come ayenst her true louer, Blanchardyn. So may ye well ynough thynke and knowe for certayn that teerys were there shed and wepte of her parte [1]in grete habondaunce[1] / ¶ Whan the two
and kisses him.
mouthes met kyssynge eche other, the noble mayden was well recomforted of all her euylles past. But ouer moche dysplaysed her to see her feyth-full frende Blanchardyn that wolde goo ayen out of the lande / They cam wythin the cyte, where they were receyued wyth grete feste and gladnesse. And syth, after the owre of mydnyght was past / Blanchardin cam to the paleys, where he fonde his loue, the proude pucelle in amours, that
She sorrows for his going.
sorowed right sore for the departyng of her frende blanchardyn. But the best that to hym was possyble
He promises to return soon.
he dyde recomforte / her, promyttyng to her, that alssone as he godely myght, he sholde retourne ayen toward her / ¶ Ther wythin was a knyght wyth her in whom she had a grete confydence, whiche had be noryshed in her
In her Court
paleys from the first tyme of his yonge age wyth the kynge of Tourmaday her fader, that recomended hym at the owre of his deth vnto his doughter / ¶ A full
is a knight of low birth,
fayr knyght he was, but he was descended of a lowe kynrede, for his fader & his moder had be seruauntes wyth-in the place, [2]the whiche knyght by his subtyl engyne and gode seruyse that he made, came to be soo

1–1 Wanting in the French.

2–2 (next page) Le quel fut par son subtil engin et seruice quil faisoit *que* le Roy de tourmaday pere de la pucelle auoit plus de foy

pryue famylier wyth the kynge, the proude pucelle in amours fader, that he added and gaffe more feyth and truste,[2] and more credence vnto hym & his wordes, than he dyde in eny other knyght or baron of his royalme, wherfore atte his decesse he had him moche recomended / But men saye in a comyn langage that 'neuer noo wodewoll[3] dyde brede a sperhawke' / ¶ I saye this for the knyght of whom I doo make here mencyon, whiche had to his name Subyon / for he was soo proude and so hawten, that aduyse was to hym for the grete auctoryte that he was ynne, that non sholde haue compared wyth hym / ¶ And therfore I saye that 'of churles, bothe man and wyff, can departe noo goode fruyte.' ¶ And it is Impossyble that yf eny grete lord, prynce / or baron gyue auctoryte or lene his eeres for to herken to a churles wordes / [4]But that he shall be at last deceyued by hym, wythout more happe be[4] / ¶ for men sayen that 'of a kerle may nought come but poyson and fylth, [5]that maketh the place to stynke where he haunteth ynne[5]' / as [6]the same[6] Subyon dyde / Blanchardyn, seeng this knyght to be in grete auctoryte in the court of the proude pucelle in amours, and well honoured and gretely set by of all thoffycers of the places / He dyde chuse the sayde knyght subyon, wythout eny counseyll of other, for to playse the better the pucelle therby, and betoke vnto hym the kepynge of the proude pucelle in amours noble personne, wyth the charge and gouernaunce of an hundred knyghtes, that sholde wayte vpon hym, and made hym seneshall of all the royalme of Tourmaday, & rewler of all the lande, wherof the noble mayden was right glad, that knewe not what vnto her sholde befall therby afterward, as herafter ye shall mowe vnderstande playnly /

who was much trusted by her father.

His name is Subyon.

To him, Blanchardyn

entrusts Eglantine,

and the realm of Tormaday.

[3] bruhier

[4–4] merueilles est si en la par fin nen est deceu

[5–5] que en bausme le lieu ou Il repaire [6–6] Icellui

¶ The xlv chapyter sheweth how Blanchardyn toke the see for to go socoure his felawe Sadoyne.

Blanchardyn takes leave of Eglantine.

After that Blanchardyn had put prouysion and kepyng for his lady and her lande, he toke his leue of her, whiche was wel sorowfull of eyther partyes. But the grete desyre that blanchardyn had for to socoure & helpe his true felaw sodayne, to haue hym out of the thraldom in to franchise, retarded wythin his herte many sobbynges / The kyng of fryse came toward the proude pucell in amours / And sayde to her [1]in this maner of wyse,[1] 'madame, It nede not to you to make eny sorowe / But be of goode chire and alle recomforted, for, to the playsure of oure lorde, we shal not haue so soone accomplysshed oure enterpryse, But that I shal brynge to you ageyne my sone blanchardyn.' The proude pucelle in amours thenne ansuerde full mekely, and sayde to the kynge, fader vnto Blanchardyn, 'sire, of that ye promytte to me I thanke you moche; I pray god that it may be soo, and gyue you and hym grace to retourne wyth Ioye wythin short tyme / for the waytyng and tarying therof shalbe so renoyouse to me.' The kynge of fryse and the other barons thenne toke their leue of the pucelle, and folowed blanchardyn that had taken his shippyng alredy. Whan the proude pucelle in amours sawe her frende blanchardyn departed from her chambre, where she lened vpon a wyndowe that loked vpon the see / makyng full pyteouse rewthes for her loue that she sawe, nor neuer thens she wolde departe aslonge as she myght see the shyppes that were sayllyng / ¶ Whan blanchardyn had taken the see wyth many shippes & galleyes, he had grete Ioye at his herte for the grete excercyte of folke that he conducted, And that wyth hym was the

His father comforts her.

Blanchardyn, his father and men, embark.

They have many ships,

[1–1] Wanting in the French.

kynge his fader, of whom he was well recomforted / as of thre score thousand good men of warre that wyth hym were wele appoynted, [1]what of Sadoynes folke as of hem of Tourmaday,[1] whiche had all a goode wyll & grete desire to rescue their lord Sadoyne, and to haue hym oute of the handes of king Alymodes: The weder was fayr and clere, and the see peasyble & styll; the ancres were drawen up, and the sayles alofte, wherin the wynde smot & blew softe & good, that sone brought them a goode waye fro the lande. Grete bruyt & reuyl they made at their partyng; the see was couered wyth their sayles, that sore brode were spred vpon their vesselles / many an horne, many an olyphaunt, [2]& many a claryon & trompettes were blowen there, that made a Ioyefull noyse.[2] ¶ We shall here leue to telle of blanchardyn & of his ryght puyssaunt excercyte, that wyth force of saylles & oores goon saylyng on the see, fulsore thretnyng kyng Alymodes his enmye / And shall retourne to speke of subyon, and of his lady the proude pucelle in amours, for to telle of their aduenturys, of the trayson of hym, and the grete comstaunce & feythfulnes of that other noble pucelle, in manere as here foloweth:

and 60,000 men.

Their trumpets make a joyful sound.

The xlvj chapter sheweth how Subyon, to whom blanchardyn atte his departyng had lefte the gouernaunce & kepynge of his lady, the fayr proude pucell in amours and of all the royalme: made conspyracyoun ayenste her for to take her and haue her to his wyff: And of that that whiche happed afterwarde.

[1–1] tant des gens de sadoine comme de ceulx de tormaday.
[2–2] et maintes tempestes de trompettes en y oy bondir. Et sonnerent plus de deux grandes lieues de mer pour prendre leur estour.

Subyon, being left in command of Tormaday,

and having charge of Eglantine,

YE haue well harde here afore, whan blanchardyn dyd departe from Tormaday, how he dyd ordeyne Subyon, & made hym seneshcall & his leeftenaunt generall of the royalme of Tormaday / takynge to hym the rewle and the kepynge of the pucell, vnto tyme that he were comen ayen. Subyon, seeyng hym self in suche an auctoryte, [1]and so hansed in worship[1] / toke in his herte an vnconstaunt pryde of the moeuable[2] godes of fortune, [3]& wolde clymme vp yet in to a more hyghe astate than he fortunably was comen vnto / whiche myght wel haue suffysed a better man than he was; for hym semed that the tyme was now come that he best myght bryng it aboute.[3] He sawe that he was obeyed thurgh all the royalme / & that nothyng was don wythout his leue or commaundement, whiche euery man kept & obeyed. So dyde he so moche, that wyth the

bargains with the Chiefs of the land,

most grete of the lande he made conspiracion, in so moche that, by grete gyftes and promesses that he made to them, they promysed hym for to serue hym in accomplyssyng of all his wyll, & to make him kynge of the lande / To this dyde consent many a traytour of the house of the pucell. Subyon sayde vnto them all / 'Lordes, ye knowe me al ynough, and the grete auctoryte and power where I am now ynne / Wherby I may make yow all riche yf ye wyl helpe truly to brynge

that if they'll help him to wed Eglantine,

my desyre at a gode ende / and that ye helpe me so moche that I may haue to myn espouse the proude pucelle in amours and wedde her; of alle the godes and riches wherof she is endowed and well garnysshed, that

they shall share her wealth.

nothing therof be parted / ¶ But ye shalbe perteners to the hool as my self, & to me shal suffyse the name to be a kynge, and to haue the pucelle to myn owne wyf / & for þ^e^ seruyse that ye shal do to me in this

[1–1], [2] Wanting in the French.

[3–3] lui sembla que en plus hault estat quil nestoit lui conuenoit monter et *que* heure estoit venue *pour* ce faire /

byhalue, ye shal haue þ^e^ reward suche as I haue promysed vnto you; & wyth this, I shal kepe you ayenst al other that wold trouble or greue you by eny maner of wyse; for moche better it is to you to haue a lord borne of this la*n*de / tha*n* to haue a straun*g*er; & ye may byleue certeynly that Blanchardyn shal neuer come ayen at thys syde; kyng alymodes is to myghty a lorde in his lande, [1]that shall sone ouercome bla*n*chardyn.[1] And yf so be that he wolde be so ouer proude to come hyder ageyn, I shall make hym to be hanged wythoute eny respyte.' Then the false traytours & vntrew men to whiche Subyon made thys promyse / ansuerd to hym all wyth one voyce, that they shulde helpe to bryng thys werke aboute, that he shulde be kyng / & Incontynent dide geue vnto him their feyth, makyng a grete & a solempne oath that they shulde be trew to hym of their promesses. Alas, the good knyghte bla*n*chardyn was not aware that tyme of the grete treason that machyned was ayenst hym. The ryght vntrew subyon was therof ryght glad / & sore desirouse to accomplysshe his da*m*pnable enterpryse at an ende; he & his co*m*plices in grete nombre went vp to the paleys hall, where he fonde the proude pucelle in loue was, that but a lytyl afore was com fro the wyndowe, where she had conueyed wyth her eye her trewe louer blanchardyn / & co*m*mended hym & his fayer companye in to the kepyng of our lord, prayeng hu*m*bly that a goode retorne & a shorte he myght make. Thenne whan she sawe that she myghte no more see hem, she went awaye from the wyndowe as halfe in a swone, sore tenderli wepynge / And euyn at that tyme entred subyon in her halle, and toke her by the hande, and had her vp fro the grou*n*de, and syn sayd: 'Madame, dyscomforte you not thus for a stra*n*ger that fleeth from one la*n*de to a nother, but gyue me wythoute mo wordes your loue

K. Alymodes will kill Blanchardyn, or Subyon will.

The Chiefs agree to this treachery, by oath.

The traitor Subyon and his accomplices go to Eglantine,

who is mourning for Blanchardyn.

[1—1] Wanting in the French.

Subyon asks her to love him.

& goode wylle, and ye shall doo as a wyse woman & well counseylled.' Whan the noble mayden vnderstode Subyon, ryght fyersli she began to loke vpon hym, drawyng herselfe to the vpperhande of hym, and sayde :

She scorns the infamous churl.

'O thou ryght enfamouse churle and olde myschaunte, How hast thou ben so hardy to speke thus of the sone of a kynge, the most preu and the most valyant that euer gyrded eny swerde? [1]how thenne, arte thou now dronke, or folyshe, or from thy witte that thou haste dare utter or profere suche wordes oute of thy mouthe'/[1] Thenne subyon al a hyghe ansuered and sayde: 'lady, speke nomore of hit / for ye shal neuer haue non other man to youre husband & lorde but me, and tomorowe wythout lenger abydyng, wyl ye, or not / I shal take & wedde you to my wyf, and shal beslepe your bed wyth you' / And the traytours & felon conspiratours sayde vnto their lady al togyder atones: 'Madame, take and wedde subyon! he is a man that shal kepe yow right wel, and al your royalme, lordshipys, and landes' / The good lady thenne hering the cursed and false traytours speke / saw wel that she was trahyshed of all poyntes, but yf god of his grace purueyed not for her, she was lyke to be vttirly lost. To see that noble pucelle dyscomforted as she was / ther was noo man but ought to haue compassion & pyte of her / She wyst of noo comforte to take vnto her, but to loke out at the wyndowe, callyng after blanchardyn that alredy had saylled ferre / & knewe nothynge of this adoo;[2] for yf he had knowlege ther-of the same tyme, he sholde neuer haue had Ioye at his herte tyl that she had be delyuered out of that grete heuynesse. The noble mayden made grete sorowe & tourmented her self ful piteously. Thenne cam her maystresse sore discomforted, that wyth grete

He declares he'll wed her by force.

She is betrayd by her Chiefs,

and sorrows bitterly.

[1–1] Comment doncques es tu fol ou yure ou esragie dauoir oze dire telz motz

[2] affaire /

peyne brought her in to her chambre. ¶ The rewthe & doleaunce that this right parfit & true lady made, ought certeynly to styre and moeue all noble hertes to pyte & compassyon of her infortune / Whan at the best tyme and most entier of her age [1]she had euer more sorowe / care, & grete displeysure.[1] The night was to her sore long, whiche she & her maystres passed all wayes wepyng wythout onye ceasse. And the next day subyon, that to the nobles of the lande had assigned an owre for to be at the paleys / cam wyth theym that helde part wyth hym in the halle, hauying their swerdes al naked vnder their mantelles / And whan the nobles of the lande were come there at his sendyng, subyon dyde expose vnto theym the cause wherfore he had called hem, and tolde them that he wolde be made kynge of tourmaday / & that he wold wedde the proude pucelle in amours, for many causes & raysons that were to long to be reherced.

Next day Subyon summons the Nobles, and

demands to be King, and to wed Eglantine.

¶ Here foloweth the xlvij chapter, that sheweth how therle of castelforde, the goode prouost, and the knyght of the fery, wyth their folke, toke and bare awaye the proude pucelle wyth them in to Castelforde, magre Subyon, that besieged them wythin the sayde place / [2]as ye shal here.[2]

WHan the nobles of the lande that were there assembled vnderstod Subyon, they had therof grete merueylle, and loked vpon eche other al abashed / Of that other part, they marked well that wyth subyon were grete fuson of men, al in harneys vnder their

The Tormadian Nobles, seeing

Subyon's men armd,

1—1 elle nauoit que desplaisir.
2—2 Wanting in the French.

are obliged to yield his demands.

gownes, wherfore they see wel that / force it was to them to consent his wyl at that owre, & ansuered vnto hym / 'Syth that his playsure was so, they were

But Lord Castelford, the Provost, and the Knight of the Ferry, refuse,

content.' but the olde erle of castelforde, the goode prouost, and the knyght of the fery, sayde al thre togyder, of one accorde / that they sholde neuer be consentyng of that infydelyte and grete trayson; but cryed vp alowde, that men sholde taken Subyon, for to be brought to pryson vnto the tyme that blanchardyn cam ayen. subyon thenne called vpon his folke, & saide that they sholde avenge hym vpon thees treytours / The gode erle, the prouost, & the knyght of þ^e^ fery called ayen in lyke wise vpon their folke / so bygan̄e

fight Subyon's men,

þ^e^ medle to be grete & fyers Betuyx the two partyes, whiche were not equal / for ouer moche were the traytours in grete multytude / So were constrayned the thre knyghtes and theyr men to wythdrawe themself togyder awaye. Whan the proude pucell in amours sawe therle departed, she ded call after hym ryght pyteousli, 'Ha, ryghte nobel knyght, haue pyte & com-passyon [1] vpon thys pore chylde, whiche is now all alone amonge wolues famyshed, be redy to deuoure me.'[1] The goode erle, then, the prouost, & the knyght of the fery, their swerdes in thier handes naked, toke &

and carry off Eglantine.

seysed her by force, & broughte her doun the stayers of the paleys, where they founde their horses, that bode there after hem; and lepte a horsbak, and, by the

They mount her on horseback,

helpe of their frendes & kynnesmen, they sette the lady vpon a myghty palfray, magre Subyon & all his complyces. The prouost guyded her horse by the reyn, that was made faste to the brydell, and the good

and guard her.

erle & the knyght of the fery cam behynde hem wyth their folke, that had their swerdes al naked. And somoche they dyd, by their highe proesse, that magre their enmyes they conducted & broughte wyth them

[1–1] de ceste poure doulante et exillee

the pucell oute of her cyte of tourmaday / that was not wyth oute grete rewth, & pyteouse clamors of the peple / for they were all in a grete dyspleasure for their noble & good lady, that so pyteousli they sawe departe the town. The noble erle, the good prouost, & the worthy knyght of the fery exployted[1] so longe, that wythoute eny let or combrauns they & þe proude pucelle in amours arryued in sauete wythin the fortres of Castelforde, where they were receyued of the countesse wyth hertly loue & grete humylite. The proude pucell in amours thanked and rendred graces onto oure lord, that she was thus escaped oute of the handes of her enmye / Wherof she thanked ryght moche the goode erle of Castelforde. And Subyon, seeng that the pucell was thus caryed awaye, he was ryght wrooth and sory that she was scaped soo from hym. he made all hys folke to lepe on horsbak, & folowed hem that had her awaye, by the markes of their horses steppes. but at thentree of a forest that was there, they loste their trayne, and went oute of ther waye / wherby they myght not folowe nor ouertake the pucell, nor they that brought her wyth theim / [2]And thus subyon & his complyces inordynate purpos was tourned, chaunged,[2] & fayled of their false & vntrew enterprise. the ryght wycked & false Subyon had not refreyned nor fulfylled his peruerse & vntrewe corage / but sent hastyly to Tourmaday for folke & engynes, ladders, and other habylymentes of warre, and made theim com afore Castelforde, where he dyd laye his siege; and sware that he shulde neuer departe from afore the place vnto the tyme that the Castel were take, and theym[3] of wythin at his wyll / But it ys sayd often, in a comyn langage / that 'moche abydeth behynde that a fole

Eglantine's protectors conduct her safely to the fortress of Castelford.

Subyon pursues them,

but loses their track.

He sends to Tormaday for munitions,

and besieges Castelford.

[1] *Orig.* fe expryloyted
[2–2] Par quoy leur desordonne propos en fut mue
[3] ceulx

thynketh' / for the good erle, the prouost, & the knyght of the fery, wyth theyr folke, ordeyned & prouyded theym self soo, that they fered but lytyl subyon or nouȝte; And had more lette & care to comforte the noble lady [1]Eglantyne, otherwyse callyd the proude pucell in amours,[1] than they had of Subyon. Castelforde was a stronge place, and well appoynted to the werre / for that yt was Inprenable, and fered not the shotte of the engynes / nor of bombardes. ¶ It was purueyd ryghte well of vytaylles, and of good men of werre. ¶ [2]Here we shall tarye styll oure penne, to wryte of them[2] that be byseged, and of Subyon, that kepte his seege byfore the fortresse of Castelforde; And [3]shalle wryte[3] of Alymodes, the vntrew kynge, that ladde wyth hym the goode knyghte Sadoyne, felawe to blanchardyn, [4]toward the cyte of Cassydonye /[5]

Eglantine's place of Castelford is impregnable,

and well mand.

[4] L j.

¶ Here foloweth the xlviij chapter, that conteyneth how kyng Alymodes arryued before the cyte of Cassydonye / And how he spake to his doughter, the fayr Beatryx; and how for to doo to her a more grete despyte, made a gybet to be dressed vp, for to haue hanged there, afore her eyen, hyr goode husbonde[6] Sadoyne.

K. Alymodes and his prisoner Sadoyne

YE haue wele vnderstonde here afore, how kyng Alymodes toke his shippyng hastely after the batayll that was afore Tormaday, and brought Sadoyne prysoner wyth hym; and saylled toward Cassydonye, where they arryued wythoute lettyng or perell. whan they were comen in to the hauen, Alymodes made his

land in Cassidonye.

[1—1] qui auec eulx estoit
[2—2] Atant vous lairons a parler deceulx [3—3] parlerons
[5] la ou Ilz arriuerent sans peril auoir
[6] *Orig.* husboode

ancres to be cast, and toke lande there wyth his folke; and syth made their horses to be had oute of the vesseles, wheropon they mounted, and spred theymself vpon the playn in a fayr ordenaunce of batayll. There beganne the trompettes, the hornes, the olyphauntes, & the busynes to blowe, that suche a noyse made, that the see & the erthe retentyssed wyth alle / The same tyme was the fayr Beatryx, the doughter of kynge Alymodes, lenyng [1]wyth bothe her armes[1] vpon a wyndowe wythin her paleys, that loked toward the see syde. ¶ She sawe there in the playne a grete nombre of men of armes, wherof she was right glad, wenyng to her that it had be Sadoyne, her true louer and welbeloued husbande, that had retourned ageyne wyth Blanchardyn. hastely she made her stywarde to lepe a horsbak, and sent hym for to knowe what folke werre arryued, and landed in so grete nombre; whiche taryed not longe after that he was goon out of the towne, that he sawe Alymodes and his folke, that cam toward the towne [2]a softe paas[2] / he asked hem what they were, and yf they wyst not som goode tydynges of Sadoyne / Thenne cam kyng Alymodes forthe, and demaunded to the styward whiche his lady had leuer to see, other her fader or her louer Sadoyne. The styward ansuerd and sayde: 'Syre, I knowe not your persone, what ye be, nor to whom I speke; but wel I dare telle you, that she careth not of her fader, and that yf he cam ayen, [3]he sholde not entre nor come ayen he[r] nor come wythin the towne' /[3] ¶ And he tolde hym that they of the towne, and of alle the lande of Cassydonye, were becomen cristen; and had crowned Sadoyne [4]to their kynge,[4] & had made their homage vnto hym, and helde hym for their lorde souerayne / Whan Alymodes vnderstode the styward, he was sore dolaunt,

The noise of the trumpets makes Beatrice

send her steward for news of Sadoyne.

The steward tells Alymodes that Beatrice cares not for him.

The folk have turnd Christians, and elected Sadoyne king.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] le petit pas
[3–3] Il nentreroit pas en la ville [4–4] a roy

K. Alymodes & tryste of that he sawe hym self thus vnfortunable as to haue lost his knyghtes, and trowed to haue come to reffut in his lande, that he fonde tourned to another lawe than his owne; The gates of the cyte and castell shet / And theym of wythin rebell ayenst hym; his right dere sone daryus slayn and ded. Of that other part, he sawe his only doughter, that denyed and defended hym his comynge in to his cyte of Cassy-

bids the steward donye. He sayd full angerly to the styward, that 'to an euyll owre hath your lady ben so madde as to mary her self to a ladde, a straunger, wythout my lycence and knowlege. She hath styred suche a thynge, wherof she shal haue yet at her herte grete sorowe and heuy-

tell Beatrice that he'll hang her husband Sadoyne next day. nes. ¶ for thou shalt mowe telle vnto her / that wyth me I doo brynge her yong ladde Sadoyne, whiche I shall to morowe make to be hanged in despyte of her, byfore my cyte of Cassydonye /' ¶ Whan the goode styward vnderstode hym that to hym spake, and knewe

[1] L ij. certaynly [1]that it was kynge Alymodes / wythout eny moo wordes departed from hym, and cam hastely, brochyng his horsse wyth the spore, vnto the cyte / he went in to the paleys, where he fonde his lady, and

On hearing this, recounted to her how it was kyng Alymodes and his folke, and what he had sayde; wherof she entred in to a bytter displaysure, and hertely sorowe. ¶ Not wyth-

Beatrice has her walls mand. standyng this, as a vertuose lady, made alle her folke to be redy in their harneys, whiche at that syde off the towne made to goo vp vpon the walles and towres, for to deffende the towne. And charged them that they sholde not late her fader come wythin, and that non

Her father of them sholde speke wyth hym. Kynge alymodes came rydyng toward the cyte wyth his bataylle / And aryued afore the castell, where he sawe and knewe his doughter, that loked out of a wyndowe / wyth hym he brought Sadoyne, to thende that she myght see hym, for to make to her a gretter dispite. Thenne called

kyng Alymodes alowde, and sayde vnto his doughter, that anone hastely she sholde make to hym and his folke openyng of the gates of the castel and towne; sayng to her / that ouer grete haste she had made to mary her self wythout his wyll, and that in an euyll oure she euer wedded Sadoyne; that for this cause, for to doo to her a grete dyspite, he shal to morowe make hym to be hanged / ¶ The fayre Beatryx, heryng her fader speke that she sone knewe, ansuered vnto hym swetly, and sayd by grete humylyte, full of sorowe, and of compassyon and pyte, for to refrene and brynge to swetnes the harde corage and cruel wylle of kynge Alymodes her fader / And namely for her goode husbande sake / trowyng to eschewe his deth therby: ¶ 'Ha, ha, my lorde, my dere fader, pardone your Wrathe and euyll wylle to my lorde my good husbonde, and to me your only doughter; & be you sure my lord, my dere fader, that whiche I haue don*n* in this behalue, I haue don*n* it for the best. and yf ye woll byleue me / ye shall leue your folishe credence [1]that ye geue vnto your false goddes,[1] and shall byleue the fader, the sone, & the holy goost / [2]one onli god,[2] that shalle make you to come to the blysse[3] perdurable, that neuer shall fayll; and ye shall accorde wyth blanchardyn & wyth sadoyn, [4]of whom[4] ye shall be serued and dred of all your neyghbours / and shall lyue in grete worship & goode prosperyte alle your dayes; and I shall well doo wyth theym, that all that whiche I saye [5]shall be made sure' /[5] ¶ Whan thenne kynge Alymodes herde thus speke his doughter, as a cruell man from his wyttes, sayd vnto her: 'Ha, [6]false and renyed strompet, I were me leuer ded,[6] than that I sholde byleue nor doo

K. Alymodes reproaches her, and threatens to hang her husband.

Beatrice tries to appease him, and appeals to him to turn Christian, and agree with Blanchardyn and Sadoyne.

Alymodes abuses her.

1—1, 2—2 Wanting in the French. [3] gloire
4—4 desquelz 5—5 Ilz feront
6—6 mauuaise pute et renoyee Iameroye mieulx que Il fusse mort

K. Alymodes says he'd rather be torn in bits than turn Christian.

thi cursed counseyll; and that euer I sholde byleue in that same god of the crystens, that thou now preysest / I sholde me leuer soffer to be drawen wyth horses /

He will hang and burn Sadoyne.

and in despyte of hym & of the, I shall doo to be executed in thy presence that that I haue sayd / and after I shall make hym to be brent, and to deye an euyl deth.' ¶ And whan she sawe that by [1]no manere of meanes[1] she myght not tourne ne chaunge the corage of her cruel fader, And that she herde hym saye blame of her god, her creatoure in whom she had sette her byleue and her herte / she by grete wrath sayd to hir

Beatrice taunts her father,

fader: 'O, full ryght false and olde tyraunte, that worshypste false and desceyuable [2]goddes and[2] ydoles, that canne not helpe the nor theym selfe, ¶ What sekest thou here, nor what moeueth the to come in to this marche? Thou haste noughte to doo here, for thou shalt not sette thy foote wythin my towne / goo

[3] L iij.

ayen [3]to Tormaday to see the noble lande of that lady,

ridicules him as a worn-out old fool for pretending to Eglantine's love,

she of whom thou arte amorouse soo moche, that thou arte a fole become therfore / Olde vnfamouse mys-chaunt / how arte thou soo folyshe and so ouerwenynge / as for to wene to haue her / [4]thou haste that berde of thyne ouer whyte therto / thy face is to mykel wonne / and that olde skynne of thyn ys ouer mykel shronken to gyder;[4] put thy selfe in to some fayr hermytage, And medel thou nomore wyth loue / leue this thoughte, and make no more thyne accomptes for to entre wythin my cyte; for yf ye haue taken and bunde my husbond,

and says that God will restore Sadoyne to her.

that I see ther by the, I shall haue hym ayene, to the pleasure of our lorde my creatour, some daye, that shal be to your euyll aduenture' / Whan Alymodes vnderstode the reproches and the rygorouse wordes of his doughter / he wende to haue lost his wyttes, and to

1—1 nullement 2—2 Wanting in the French.
4—4 vous auez la barbe trop grise, la face trop vsee et le cuir trop retrait

haue deyd for anger and sorowe / Incontynent, wythoute delaye, he made his trompettes to be blowen, And commaunded that the towne sholde be wele assaylled of all partyes / His men made hem redy after his commaundement / and came and sawted the towne full proudely / they that were wythin defended theym vygoryously, as men of highe facion[1] / [2]They kylled and slue and hurte sore many one, Deffendynge hem selfe soo strongely ayenste their enmyes, to theyr grete losse and damage, & to wythdrawe them self ayen /[2] wherfore kynge Alymodes, sore angry and full of wrathe [3]for the deth of many of his knyghtes that had be ther slayne[3] / [4]made his ryche pauylyons to be dressed & hanged byfore the towne[4] / and commaunded thorugh al his oost that they sholde reioyse hem self, and that they sholde make grete reuell, in sygne of Ioye / to thende that þ^e^ noyse therof shold come to the eeres of his doughter / for to gyue a more grete cause of dysplaysure and sorowe: Also he commaunded that Sadoyne sholde be beten / And syth to morowe, in the mornyng, as soone as the daye byganne to appiere, kynge alymodes commaunded expressely to the mareshall of his ooste, that he shold doo make and to be sette vp a galhouse, euyn byfore the castell / to thende that his doughter myght better see hange at her ease her frende and louer Sadoyne. He ordeyned and comaunded that he shold be hanged / After this comaundement made by kynge Alymodes, his mareshall dyde the kynges wyll to be accomplyssed; and accompanyed wyth fyue hundred men of armes, brought

K. Alymodes assaults the town of Cassidonye,

but his men are beaten back.

Alymodes bids his Marshal set up a gallows,

that Beatrice may see Sadoyne hangd.

This is done.

[1] facon

[2–2] maint en naurerent et occirent en eulx deffendant / tellement q*ue* leurs ennemis a leur grant perte et dom*m*age sen retornerent arriere sans gaires prouffiter par moult en yolt de mors et de naures [3–3] Wanting in the French.

[4–4] fist sonner la retraite et fist tendre son pauillion et ses tentes.

Sadoyne is brought to the gallows,

sadoyne euyn at the place where the gybet was made redy / Whan he cam there, and sawe [1]a payre of gal-house[1] dressed vp, where he trowed certaynly to haue fynysshed hys dayes, þ^e^ teerys habondantly fell doune from his eyen so byttyrly[2] that they wette al his face / He byganne to make grete rewthe and pyteouse com-playntes, sayng [3]in this wyse[3] / 'O, my right true felawe and right dere frende blanchardyn, this day shall the seperacyon be made of the amyte that is bytwene vs bothe.' and syth loked vp toward the castel, where he

and sees his wife Beatrice in the castle.

sawe his lady & wyf, the fayr beatryce / And whan he dyde perceyue her face, he fyl doune in a swone alonge the erthe / The sarrasyns, that saw this / lyfte hym vp,

The Saracens beat him.

and gaf to hym [4]grete and heuy strokes wyth staues[4] / [5]He byganne yet ayen to make rewthe and complayntes, wyshyng after blanchardyn;[5] and sayde how that he was come out of his contrey, whiche was ferre thens, for to helpe hym to socoure his lady, the proude pucelle in loue; & syth that he shold neuer see hym, that

He hopes Blanchardyn will avenge him,

he at the laste wyste yf he wolde auenge hym of this shamefull dethe or not, [6]that he most nowe suffre.[6] and syth he saide, ful sore sobbyng / 'Alas! yf nedes

[7] L iij.

I shal dey, I were of it all well [7]content / soo that it were in the absence of her, that maketh all my sorowes to encreace for her tendre loue. Alas! myghte not fortune aswell hurte or greue me by a nother manere of wyse, than for to mak me deye shamefully by-fore my owne true loue, my goode wyffis presence / Alas! wo to me, vnhappy man, and more than myschaunte that I am / ys ther non other remedye? muste I nedes deye

as he cannot defend himself.

thus shamefully, wythoute eny deffence makynge?' After thees wordes of complaynte that Sadoyne made,

[1–1] "les fourches" as above.
[2] Wanting in the French. [3–3] Wanting.
[4–4] de moult grans cops et ourbes
[5–5] De rechief commenca a regretter blanchandin
[6–6] Wanting.

the cursed and felon paynems peyned hemselfe sore for to make redye suche thynges as serued to make hym deye vpon the galhouse, [1]that was sette vp byfore the castell.[1]

Alymodes's men make ready to hang Sadoyne.

¶ The xlix chapter conteyneth / How the fayer Beatryx sente her folke for to socoure her husbande sadoyne / and was rescued from deth, and brought wythin Cassydonye, malgre his enmyes /

WHan the fayr beatryx, that at her wyndow was lenyng her hande ouer her brestes, & ful sore wepyng for loue of her husband, þat she sawe in peryl of hys lyf / she lefte asyde her femenyn wyll, & toke wythin her the corage of a man vertuose in manere & faccion of a hardy byfyghtresse[2] / so ascryed she highe, & sayd / 'O my ryght good & trewe knyghtes / this daye I doo praye you & commaunde / that ouer all the best knyghtes that are now reynynge in the wyde worlde / ye woll socoure the comforte of my Ioye, And that most is of all my lyffe, that goeth to perdycyon, wyth oute it be by youre benyngne grace: And vpon all the gode socoures and seruyces that euer ye woll doo to me / That at this tyme and owre / atte my requeste and prayer, Ye woll enforce yourselfe to rescue oute of daunger of deth, my lorde [3]& youre[3] / my gode husband sadoyne, that I see yonder in grete parel of his lyf, but yf he be socoured right soone / ¶ And, therfore, yet ayen to you, myn men, my true vasselles I do full instantly pray, that your naturell lorde ye wyll help, to haue hym out of his harde enmyes handes, yf it be vnto you possyble' / The barons and knyghtes thenne of a right gode wyll, wythout answer nor replye

Beatrice, seeing her husband's danger,

appeals to her knights to

rescue him.

[1–1] qui la estoyent [2] batailleresse
[3–3] Wanting in the French.

The Cassidonian knights forthwith

makyng, in grete hast and wythout delaye, enflamed wyth yre & of cordyal wrath, for loue of their lord, that the sarrasyns wolde doo deye thus pyteously [1]so shamefull a deth[1] / ¶ And also for the loue of their

arm, sally out

lady that they had full dere / went & armed hem self, and hastely in grete nombre of folke, all a fote, lepte at a posterne out of the towne, and cam al vnder couert

through the dry ditches,

from wythin the dyches of the castel that were drye at that syde, wythout that they were a-spyed of no man /

and are seen by Sadoyne,

except of sadone, that soone perceyued theym comyng, bycause he was alredy brought vpon the ladder / Whan he had seen them, he that was as half ded a lityl afore, toke ayen his strenthes and corage wythin hym self; he

who bursts his ropes,

wrang his fystes and brake the cordes al a sonder that he was bounden wyth / And syth lept from the ladder, whiche his legges enclosed to gyder, lokyng vpon a sarrasyne that in his handes helde a grete guysarme, [2]whiche is full goode and deffensable.[2] he toke hit from his fystes, and gaf to hym suche a merueyllouse stroke

kills four of his guards,

wythall, that he cloued hym vnto the breste / and quykly gaf asmoche to another, & syth to the thirde &

and scatters the rest.

to the fourthe, And scatered them abrode, soo that none so hardy a paynym was there that durste come nyghe for to hurte hym / ¶ Whan the mareshall of

K. Alymodes's Marshal

kynge Alymodes oost sawe Sadoyne, that all alone bare suche damage ayenst them alle, he wexed full of

reproaches his men.

wrathe in his herte, he ascryed on his men, and sayde that gretly and well they ought to hate hem self, and to prayse hem selff full lytyll. ¶ Whan for one man alone they fled / and that it was a grete shame vnto them that he had endured so long ayenst them all / He approched hym self toward Sadoyne, his swerde in his hand for to smyte hym. But Sadoyne that was sore quyk and pert[3] sawe him wel come, and gaf hym wyth his guysarme suche an vnmesurable stroke that

[1–1], [2–2] Wanting in the French. [3] appert

he cloue his hed vnto the tethe and slewe him. Euyn at this owre the cassydonyens that come were out of the cyte, smotte hemself emonge the fyue hondred sarrasyns by fore that they were aware of them / they beganne to slee doune right in euery side / and stroke and smote vpon the paynemys, so that they delyuered lightly þ^e^ place of hem, and none of them abode there, but that he was ded or taken / excepte som that fled awaye, that this tydynges brought to Alymodes, that was full sory whan he vnderstode this tydynge / Quykly he mounted a horsbake, and ranne as a mad man toward the gybette, where he fonde Sadoyne and his men that fought togydre. And whan Sadoyne saw hym come, he cam wyth a grete corage ayenst him, and leued vp his guysarme vpon him, where wythall he smote hym suche a stroke vpon his shulders, that he cloue[1] and ouerthrewe hym to the grownde, and sholde haue take the lyf from him right soone yf he had not be socoured of his men. But they came so fast by and by / And by so grete tourbes and hepes, that force it was to sadoyne to wythdrawe hym self & his men wythin the towne of Cassydonye, where he was receyued as ye may thynke right well wyth grete Ioye & gladnesse of [2]my lady[2] his wyf, the fayr beatryce / And of that other part, the kynge alymodes was so sore brought as to dispeyre him self bycause that he had thus lost his prysoner Sadoyne, and that he sawe his maresshall of his ost slayne, and sawe hym self bannyshed and chassed out of his towne and royalme, and also his doughter that was wedded to his mortayll enmye / ¶ Of that other part, he harde the reuell and the Ioye that was made wythin the cyte, that gaff a cause to renewe his sorowes and heuy fortune ouer many folde / The same tyme that Alymodes the kyng was in suche h[e]uynes, Blanchardyn came sailynge

Sadoyne cleaves him to the teeth.

The Cassidonians charge,

and clear the place of Saracens.

Sadoyne unhorses K. Alymodes,

but his men come up,

and Sadoyne withdraws to Cassidonye,

to Beatrice's great joy.

K. Alymodes grieves at his bad luck.

[1] clove his helmet. [2–2] sa dame

Blanchardyn hopes to be in time for the fight.

vpon the see, sore desiryng forto com in tyme that he mygte fynde his enmye the tyraunt Alymodes, whiche he fonde [1]as ye shall vnderstond by the historye, whiche is folowyng.[1]

¶ Here foloweth the l. chapter, whiche sheweth how blanchardyn arryued in the hauen of cassydonye, before whiche towne he fonde Alymodes the kynge.[2]

Blanchardyn and his father the King of Friesland

WEl ye haue herde here afore, how blanchardyn & the kynge of fryse his fader departed from Tormaday, wyth a gret excersite of men of armes, for to come towrade Cassydonye for to rescue his felawe Sadoyne / they exployted soo long and made suche a dylygence, thorugh helpe of god and of goode wynde, that they arryued all hole & sounde wythin the sayd hauen of Cassydonye /.

land their horses and men at Cassidonye.

Whan they were arryued, they caste theyr ancres, and had horses oute of the shippes / they descended on lande & mounted on horsbacke / Blanchardyn loked towarde the cyte, byfore the whiche he perceyued clerly

They find K. Alymodes encampt there.

the tentes & the pauyllyons of kynge Alymodes ryght well sette there in gret nombre, wherof he toke in hym selfe a ryght parf[i]t Ioye / he dyd shewe hem vnto his fader, and sayd: 'Syre, ye maye espye & see byfore you oure enmyes, as I wene.' In thes wordes talkyng togyder, dyd arryue there foure of their men, that were gon to clere the waye afore theym as ferre as kynge Alymodes ooste / whiche as they came ayen, recountred[3] a peynem, whiche they toke and broughte hym before Blanchardyn, that ryght dylygently examyned hym; of whom he knewe for veraye trouth that it was kynge

[1–1] comme cy apres pourrez oyr.
[2] et se mist en ordonnaunce pour le combatre.
[3] recontrerent

Alymodes that lodged was byfore the cyte of Cassydonye wythin his tentes and pauyllyons, wherof he was ryght glade. he made hys folke hastely to putte theym selfe in ordenaunce of bataylle, and syth beganne to marche fourth ayenst his sayd enmyes / that alle redy were aduertysed of his comynge, Insomoche that bothe partyes cam ayenste other, wherby kyng Alymodes knew full sone that it was blanchardyn / wherof he had no grete Ioye / but became pencefull / Neuertheleſſe, as a knyght preu and hardy as he was, toke corage in him selfe, admonestynge his folke to do well / And of that other parte, Blanchardyn, [1]whan he wyste that his felawe Sadoyne was escaped oute of kynge Alymodes handes al hole, and sounde of all membres thorugh the goode remedye & ryght grete prouesse that had moeued the herte of the fayr B[e]atryce his wyffe & treue loue / wherof she canne not be praysed al ynough [had right grete Ioye].

They put their men in battle array.

Blanchardyn rejoices at Sadoyne's escape.

¶ The lj° chapter speketh of the grete batayll that was bytwyx blanchardyn and kyng Alymodes byfore Cassydonye. And how Alymodes was ouercome / take & broughte prysoner in to the cyte. And of the coronacyon of sadoyn and of his wyff Beatryx.

WHan sadoyne, that was the same tyme [2]lokyng out at a wyndowe[2] wyth-in his castell of Cassydonye, & his wyf the fayr Beatryx by hym / sawe the two oostes þat they wold Ioyne to-gyder to batayl, he

Sadoyne sees the two hosts fighting.

[1] la lance au poing venoit cheuauchant deuant ses batailles priant et exhortant ses gens de bien faire et eulx efforchier a abatre et pourfendre et confondre leurs ennemis qui deuant eulx venoyent ¶ Moult Ioyeulx estoit.

[2–2] appuye aux fenestres

gaf hymselfe gret meruayl, for he had seen them take lande / but he knew hem not / so hadde he gret desire
Sadoyne to know what they wer. he saw them com to eche other, makynge grete cryes & callynges, so þat emonge other he harde call Tourmaday; he dyde set al his entent for to know the baners and tokons of the lady
at length perceives that one of the armies is Blanchardyn's. of Tourmaday, so that incontynent after this he perceyued and knewe that it were they, that by blanchardyn his felawe were conducted and guyded. hastely he made and comaunded to be publisshed thorugh all the cyte, that all men shold be in harneyse / whos commaundement they full dyligently acomplyshed / Sadoyne, armed of all his armes, mounted vpon his
Sadoyne musters with 15,000 knights, and charges Alymodes's army. courser and lept out of the towne wyth xv. thousaund gode knyghtes, valyaunt & hardy, that al at one poyse[1] smot hem self wythin Alymodes folke, wherof at their comyng on they slewe many one / Of that other part was blanchardyn, that made thynges wonderful vnto
Blanchardyn slays and hews his foes, men, of sleeyng / hewyng, [2]and gyuyng horryble strokes vpon his enmyes.[2] And who had seen hym at that tyme / he wold not haue trowed that he had be a man mortal; he crauented & ouerthrew al before him, cleuyng them [3]to the eerys & to the brestes of hem[3] / [4]he had be there longe,[4] whan his swerde was ryght well knowen [5]in euery of the ooste[5] / he brake & departed the grete preesses / so that his enmyes made waye byfore his swerde, for grete drede that they had of hym: and they all fled, [6]that none durst abyde the peyse of his heuy
and is soon joind by Sadoyne. strokys.[6] sadoyne, his trewe felawe, cam that tyme & [7]Ioyned his horse beside his.[7] Of their reconyssaunces [8]and thankes[8] that they made [9]tyll eche other,[9] I make no mencyon at al / by cause at þ^e^ tyme ther was nother of

[1] feris [2–2] confondre et abatre ses ennemis
[3–3] Iusques es cervelles [4–4] Gaires ny ot este
[5–5] de tous costez [6–6] *que* nul ne losoit attendre
[7–7] se vint joindre empres luy.
[8–8], [9–9] Wanting in the French.

them bothe / but that he had grete besynes in hande / notwythstandyng [1]what a doo[1] that they had, they embraced [2]& colled[2] eche other, & made grete [3]know-
4 leg, gyuynge thankes to othre.[3] And syn, both togyder smote theym self amonge theyr enmyes al atones / to whom they solde ful dere ther acqueyntance / And wyth theym was the kynge of fryse, that of new had
8 cast doune to the grounde that bare the chief standarde of kyng alymodes, wherof their enmeis made grete cries & grete noyse for their baner, that laye vpon the grounde. They forced hem self as moche as they
12 coude to haue it vp ayen; but the right grete prouesse of the forsaid thre princes kept them ther fro. ¶ for they dyde so moche, that wythin a whyle they bracke the presse, and putte to flyght theyr enmyes. The
16 kynge Alymodes, seeng his folke that fled / his cheff standarde ouer thrawen and layng vpon the grounde, His barons all [4]to-bet adoune[4] / and also[5] sawe that Impossyble it was to hym to escape hym self quyk
20 [6]from the batayll[6] / wherfore assone as he myght, or euer that a more grete myscheff sholde happe vnto hym, cam & yelded hym self in to the handes of blanchardyn and of Sadoyne / prayng them right humbly for mercy
24 and grace, & that they wolde saue his lyff. ¶ They toke hym as their prysoner; and after that the werke was ended, and that all their enmyes were taken or slayn, they brought hym, and entred wythin the cyte
28 wyth grete tryumphe and glorye / ¶ Yf the Ioye, & the fayr welcome and honourable recepcion that of the fair Beatryx was made vnto theym, I wold reherce and telle, I sholde ouer longe tary my self / But the Ioye
32 and the feste was there so grete, that suche another was

The King of Friesland unhorses the chief Standard-bearer of K. Alymodes.

Alymodes, seeing that he cannot escape,

gives himself up to Blanchardyn and Sadoyne.

They take him in triumph into Cassidonye,

to Beatrice's delight.

[1–1] quelques affaires
[2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3–3] recoignoissaunces. [4–4] abatre et detrenchier
[5] dautrepart [6–6] Wanting.

not seen byfore that tyme, [1]duryng this grete Ioye and feste[1] / The barons and lordes of the lande, that were there alle to gyder, of one accorde and one wylle

Sadoyne is crownd King.

crowned Sadoyne, and receyued him to their kynge and to their lord. And the fayre Beatryx his wyff they also dyde crowne as heyre of the lande. the feste begaune ayen to be right grete, [2]for Ioye of this coronacyon[2] / The barons of the lande made their homage vnto sadoyne, and toke and releued their lordshippes of hym / and obeyed hym as their lorde[3] naturell as longe as they lyued, and that Sadoyne and their ladye were

He holds the land united,

to gyder wythout eny rebellyon / ¶ Sadoyne helde and kept the lande all his tyme in goode vnyon: they that were about hym rebell / he dompted [4]and subdewed[4] them, and brought them to his obeyssaunce. Well and truly he loued and maynteyned Iustyce / The cuyll

sets up good customs,

customes he brought doune, and areysed and ordeyned other that were goode and most proffytable, that he & his counseyll coude aduyse: And by especyall all that

and does all that Blanchardyn advises.

was told hym, ordeyned and aduysed by blanchardyn / He dyde and acomplysshed. ¶ After that Sadoyne was crowned to be kynge, and that he had achyeued and made alle his ordonnaunces for to gouerne and holde his royalme in gode peas [5]and vnyon,[5] Blanchardyn, his felawe, dysposed him self for to retourne ayen toward Tormaday, to the proude pucelle in amours, his lady, that he desyred sore for to see. So made he

Then Blanchardyn makes ready to go home to Eglantine.

to be apparelled his nauye, for to make his retourne ayen, leuyng Sadoyne his felawe wyth the fayre Beatryx his wyff. he wyst not of nothyng that he sholde haue eny more to do / for he knewe not of the [6]venymouse malyce of the false traytoure Subyon, that wold haue

[1–1] Apres que la solempnite des nopces fut passee
[2–2] et y furent fais pluseurs esbatemens durant laquelle
[3] *Orig.* lordes [4–4, 5–5] Wanting in the French.
[6–6] nouvelle *que* par subien auoit este procedee alencontre de sa dame.

attempted a grete trayson ayenst hym and his lady,[6] the proude pucelle in amours /[1]

¶ The lij chapiter conteyneth how the proude mayden in loue sent the prouost toward blanchardin, whiche after thees tydynges exployted sc sore, that he arryued wyth alle his excercyte nyghe to the oost of Subyon /

WEll ye haue herde here afore, that atte departyng that Blanchardyn made fro Tormaday, [2]for to goo rescue hys felawe sadoyne,[2] he lefte his lady, the proude pucelle in amours, in the gouernaunce & kepyng of subyon / the whiche, as ye haue vnderstonde afore, made conspyracoun ayenst her / for to haue her to his wyff, and to make hymself kynge of Tourmaday, [3]to thende that blanchardyn were kepte ther fro[3] / But thorugh the prudence & worthynes of the noble erle of Castelforde, of the goode prouost, & of the knyghte of the fery / [4]a remedy was had ayenst his wycked malyce,[4] by suche a wyse that, wold subyon or not, & all his helpes, the noble lady, proude of loue, was taken oute of his power, and was brought by the forsayd two knyghtes & erle to the castel of Castelford / wherof subyon was ryght sory. he cam & layde his seege, trowyng for to haue taken her; but the place was soo strong that it had no doubte of no seege / for it was garnyshed of good knyghtes for to defende it / and wele furnyshed wyth [5]all manere of vytaylles[5] necessayre to suche a fortres. The lady, that was shette wythin, was full sore & wroth for her frende blanchardyn, that he was soo ferre from her / and ryght moche desired his

Blanchardyn had left Eglantine in the charge of the traitor Subyon,

who tried to wed her.

But she was rescued and taken to Castelford,

where Subyon besieges her.

[1] comme y apres porrez oyr. [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3–3] afin de en debouter blanchandin [4–4] y fut pourveu
[5–5] tous viures

Eglantine asks the Earl of Castelford and the Provost of Tormaday to send to Blanchardyn.

comyng ayen. she dyd calle to her therle & the prouost, to whom full swetli she prayed þat they wold sende toward Blanchardyn, for to reherse & shewe vnto hym the tydynges of the seege that byfore them was. 'madame,' sayd therle, 'I am redy to do your pleasure / & me semeth it ought to be doon as ye saye / ye most aduyse & see by whom your message shalbe made.' the good prouost then rose on his feet, & sayd: 'madame,

The Provost undertakes to go,

yf your wyll be, I shall gladli tak this vyage in hande / and I shall neuer rest noo where tyl that I haue founde blanchardyn.' 'prouost,' sayd the pucell / 'of this seruyce that ye profer me, I thanke you moche / for no better messenger I can not send / nor that can better recounte [1]& telle[1] the danger where we ben now in' / The prouost made a galley to be redy, that was atte an hauen there nyghe / he made her to be garnyshed wyth men and vytayllys; and syth, whan al thynge was redy, he toke his leue of the noble mayden his

secretly sets sail,

lady, and of the eerle / and sone after the houre of mydnyghte he departed pryuely oute of the castell, and went and toke his shyppyng wythin his galley so stylle, that of ony bodye of the siege he[2] was not aspyed. So moche exployted the prouoste, sailynge nyght and daye ouer the see, that by good wynde that he hadde / he arryued in a mornynge in to the hauon of Cassydonye / where he fonde many shyppes, that made theym selfe redy by the ordonaunce of blanchardyn. The prouoste asked them after blanchardyn / they tolde hym all that they knew of hym. The

and lands at Cassidonye.

prouoste descended a lande, and cam in to the towne / and / syth mounted to the paleys, where he fonde the barons, that talkyd to gyder. He salued blanchardyn & Sadoyne, that welcomde hym and made hym grete chere. ¶ Then spake blanchardin to the prouoste, and asked hym of his tydynges. 'Syre,' sayd the prouost,

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2] *Orig.* has

'ye shal knowe that tydynges I brynge / but they be not pleysaunte.' He thenne rehersed [1]and shewed[1] vnto him [2]al alonge the grete vntrouthe and false treyason,[2] that by Subyon hadde be made and machyned ayenste him and his lady, þ^e^ proude pucelle in amours. ¶ Blanchardin, heryng thees tydynges, was sore dolaunt. [3]He called to his felawe Sadoyne,[3] And recounted to him alle that the prouoste hadde reported and sayd; [4]Wherupon they fulsone, wythoute eny other inspecte / concluded togyder / that they sholde departe the nexte daye towarde Tormaday, and that they sholde neuer ceasse vnto the tyme they[4] had socoured the proude pucell in amours. ¶ [5]Their shyppes were rede, and were garnyshed of folke and vytaylles.[5] They toke their leue of the quene [6]Beatryx, that was ryghte sory whan she sawe the departynge of her husbande sadoyne / and entrynge in to their vesseylles / saylled wyth so grete dilygence, by the goode wynde that they had / so that they came wyth out eny lette or aduenture, that ought to be tolde, and arryued wythin the hauen of Tourmaday. ¶ Whan they were come there, blanchardyn sent the prouost, for to wyte of theym of the cyte yf they wolde gyfe vp the cyte peasybly vnto hym, and he sholde receyue them [7]to mercy[7] / ¶ The prouost descended a lande, and cam in to the cyte; And exposed vnto the burgeys and comynalte the charge that he had of blanchardyn. ¶ The cytezeyns & comon people of the towne, that vnderstode the prouost, were full glad of Blanchardyns comyng / And ansuered in this wyse, al wyth one voyce, that his comyng was to theym right pleysaunt and agreable / and that whiche had be doon

The Provost of Tormaday tells Blanchardyn the treason of Subyon against Eglantine.

Next day, Blanchardyn and Sadoyne set sail,

[6] M j.

and soon reach Tormaday.

The citizens say they will give up the city to Blanchardyn.

[1–1] Wanting in the French. [2–2] la desloyaulte et trayson
[3–3] Il appela sadoine son compagnon
[4–4] Si conclurent ensamble de partir lendemain et de non Iamais arrester tant quilz
[5–5] Ils firent hastiuement apprester et garnir leur nauire de tout ce que mestier auoyent. [7–7] a mercy

ayenst hym and their lady, wythin the cyte, was doon of force / ¶ Whan the souldyours, that Subyon had lefte there in garryson, herde and vnderstode the wylle of the people of the towne, They ansuered all, that they sholde not suffre this, and that the cyte sholde be kepte for Subyon. Wherfore all the comynaltye of the towne went and armed them hastely, and came vpon the market place, where they byganne to fyght ayenst the souldyours of the towne, that wolde haue kepte it for Subyon / ¶ Ryght grete slawghter was doon there / But the maystrye & strengthe abode wyth the peple; soo that they kyld or hurted sore all them that were of subyons folke. And syth toke the bodyes ded, and caste hym ouer the walles of the towne in to the dyches / ¶ And after this they opened the gates of the towne, and in grete reuerence, and in token of humylyte cam the burgeys and the people, all barefote, in maner of a processyon ayenst blanchardyn, and receyued to their lorde / And after that he & al his folke were entred wythin the cyte / he sent a spye vnto the castel of Castelforde, toward his lady, þ^e^ proude pucell in amours; whiche spye dyde soo well, that he entred in to the sayd fortresse, that he was not seen [1]of theym that were atte the syege[1] / He recounted [2]and tolde[2] vnto the lady & to the erle, how blanchardyn & his felawe Sadoyne came for to socoure them, and that they were entred wythin Tormaday. Thise tidynges were to them moche pleysaunt, for they were in a grete daunger of Subyon, that domaged theym ryght sore, and their place, wyth their bombardes and other engynes of warre, that he had do brynge there. And whan they of Castelforde vnderstode by the sayd spye that blanchardyn was comen wythin Tormaday, and that he came to gyue them socours and helpe ayenste Subyon,

Subyon's soldiers refuse to give up Tormaday to Blanchardyn;

so the citizens kill or wound them all,

open the gates,

and receive Blanchardyn as their lord.

Blanchardyn's spy tells Eglantine the good tidings.

[1–1] Wanting in the French; et quant leans fut entre.
[2–2] Wanting.

they beganne to make grete festes and grete Ioyes for his comynge, and called and songe so highe that the noyse therof came vnto subyons eeres / [1]that gaff hemself grete meruaylle why they ded soo.[1] On the morowe erly, blanchardyn and Sadoyne departed from Tormaday, and lefte there the good kyng of fryse, and foure thowsand goode men wyth hym, for to kepe the towne / Whan blanchardyn and his ooste were yssued oute of the cyte, he made two bataylles, euery one of ten thowsand men / The fyrst bataylle he betoke to be ledde by sadoyne his felawe, And [2]that other[2] bataylle he conducte himself, and prayd & admonested his folke to doo welle: And syth toke their waye toward Castelforde, takyng a waye whiche was not moche haunted. ¶ And alle at one peyse cam and spored their horses nyghe vnto the [3]ooste of Subyon, or euer he was aware of hem / Nor he had not knowen nothynge of theyr commyng, but of a yoman of his owne, that came from foragynge [4]and sechyng of heey and ootes for his horses[4] / that aduertysed hym; whiche came re*m*nynge all his myght towarde Subyon, and toolde hym on highe that blanchardyn came wyth a grete felyshyp, for to fyghte wyth hym / And that yf he putte not his folke lyghtly in ordonaunce for to receyue hym / he was in pereyll to lose hym selfe and all his ooste. ¶ Whan subyon vnderstode that yoman, he chaunged coloure in face, and was sore abashed. Wyth ryghte grete haste he made his folke to putte hemselfe in araye / & prayd them that they wold helpe hym at his nede, promyttynge theym for to make hem all ryche. They ansuerd that he sholde make therof no doute, and that they were stronge ynough for to resyste ayenste blanchardyn, ¶ And promysed hym to yelde vnto hym

Next day, Blanchardyn and Sadoyne

march from Tormaday with two battalions of 10,000 each,

and suddenly come on Subyon's host.

[3] M ij.

Subyon, warnd by a yeoman,

arrays his men.

[1–1] qui moult sen donna grant merueille et ne sauvoit la cause ni pour quoy Ilz se esioyssoient ainsi fort

[2–2] la seconde. [4–4] Wanting in the French.

Subyon's men promise to give him Blanchardyn and Sadoyne, alive or dead. They number 30,000.

blanchardin, other quycke[1] or ded / or euer that the euen sholde be come: and his felawe Sadoyne also. They were a xxx thowsand men ther, that helde wyth subyon, that thus thretened blanchardyn that they sholde smyte his hed of / but it ys sayd in comyn / that 'who soeuer rekeneth wythoute his hoste, he rekeneth twys [2]for ones.'[2] ¶ [3]Thus hit happed wyth Subyones men / as it foloweth.[3]

The liij chapyter speketh how Blanchardyn and Sadoyne dyscomfyted Subyon / And of the grete bataylle / and manere how he was taken ¶ [4]And what folowed after.[4]

Blanchardyn's and Sadoyne's battalions charge Subyon's army.

WHan Blanchardin and Sadoyne sawe hem nyghe Subyons ooste / they[5] caste a ryghte highe crye / and smote hemselfe in to their enmyes by suche a force & vertue that [6]their comynge on[6] they owerthrewe many[7] of theym to grounde / that neuer syth releued hemself / but / deyd myserable there bytwyx the horses feete. ¶ So grete and horyble bygan̄e the batayll. The ayer was derke wyth [8]shotte of arowes, quareylles & dartes[8] that flowe bytwene bothe partyes. The dust[9] and the brethe of men and of the horses was so thycke, that wyth peyne they knew one from a nother / Then came they to fyghte wyth sperys, axes, guysarmes, and swerdes, wherof they kylled and slew eche other. Blanchardyn & Sadoyne sette all their entent to slee their enmyes / whan theyr speres were broken they sette hande to their swerdes, wher wyth they parted the grete presses / and wythin a while they had dyed themself in rede wyth the bloode of their enmyes, that made vnto them waye [10]to passe by them.[10] ¶ And Blanch-

They slay their enemies.

[1] prins [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3–3] ainsi comme cy apres pourrez oyr. [4–4] Wanting.
[5] *Orig.* thay [6–6] alaborder quilz feirent [7] *Orig.* nany
[8–8] por le trait [9] *Orig.* durste [10–10] Wanting.

ardyn that ceassed not to renne here and there as a mad man, loked and sawe byfore hym a knyghte / whiche was nyghe of sybbe vnto Subyon,[1] that bare the cheff standarde. he tourned brydell to hym ward, and wyth his goode swerde smote hym suche an horryble stroke that he cloue him doune to the chynne / and feell ded wyth the standarde to the erthe that was not after reysed vp ayen / How be it that Subyon and his folke putte hem in peyne for to haue hit brought vp ayen / But blanchardyn and Sadoyne kepte hem ther fro / Of that other parte, the good erle of Castelforde, the prouost and the knyght of the fery yssued out of the castell wyth a thousaund knyghtes, that brake vpon their enmyes, castyng a right hyghe crye, wherof Subyon and his men were sore affrayed,[2] for he sawe his cheff banner ouer thrawen, & hym self enclosed of al sydes, his men that fled, & awayte non other but after the stroke of deth. Wherunto he sawe hym self to be brought, yf he fonde not som [3]waye or meanes for to saue hym self[4] / He putte hym self to flyght, for hym thought / the best manere for to flee / was for to departe by tyme. ¶ Blanchardyn and Sadoyne, that alwayes made watche ouer hym for to take and slee hym, Sawe hym go out of the bataylle / and set vpon a myghty courser / they ranne anone after hym and chassed hym sore / ¶ He was well mounted vpon a goode horse, Wherfore they coude not ouertake hym bycause the nyght byganne to comen, and myght no lenger see him: he toke and entred wythin a forest that was nyghe by / the remenaunt of his folke were al take by blanchardynes men; grete gayne they made there, & a grete foyson of prysoners: they had / grete Ioye and gladnesse they made of their victorye / But the erle of Castelforde and the barons merueylled them muche, bycause they wyste not where their lordes blanch-

Blanchardyn

cleaves Subyon's Standard-bearer to the chin.

The Castelford knights sally out,

and attack Subyon's men.

[3] M iij.

Subyon flees.

Blanchardyn and Sadoyne pursue him,

but lose him in the night.

His troops are conquerd.

[1] *Orig.* Sadoyne. [2] *Orig.* affyerad [4] et mettre a garant.

ardyn and Sadoyne [1]were drawen.[1] they soughte and / serched them all aboute / but they fonde them not. ¶ And for the recounte of their aduenture, they chased

Subyon's horse saves him.

Subyon that was horsed at a vauntage better than they were: he walopped soo longe that he came in to a

He reaches a valley of thieves

valey where theues were, whiche were ten or twelue in nombre, that were all grete murdrers, wherof the pryn-

led by Sylvain,

cypall and the mayster of them all was named syl- uayne / that knew well ynough subyon, whiche came vnto theym, & sayd that he had grete nede of theym; And that two knyghtes chased hym for to slee him.

and tells them of the booty they'll get if they kill his two pursuers.

And that yf it so happed that they myght catche and gete hem [2]there wythin their caues[2] / they sholde haue of them so grete a butyneue, and so grete goodes, that they all shall euer more be ryche / ¶ Whan the theues vnderstode subyon / they were sore desirouse to lodge theym wythin their streyngthe preuely wythin a secrete chambre: whiche thyng they ded, but they had not so soon doon so, that blanchardyn & sadoyne came there, and asked the theues [3]yf they wyste not to speke[3] of a man that was mounted on horsbacke, and armed as they were. They ansuerd that they wyste no tidynges of hym, nor of none suche; but wel they said to blanch-

The thieves offer to lodge Blanchardyn and Sadoyne,

ardyn & to sadoyne, that yf they wolde be lodged there wythin for the nighte that was comen / they sholde make theim gode chere of suche goodes as god had lent hem: By cause they semed to be knyghtes, and that it was sore late to ryde eny ferther, & that noo housyng nor no retrayt was nyghe [4]by syx myles[4] where they myght be lodged. The two barons, heryng the theues speke, consented for to lodge hem selfe for that nyght

and they go into the thieves' stronghold,

wyth them / They entred in to their strengthe / And whan they were comen in, and that they had seen the dysposicoun of the place / they Iudged in hem selfe,

[1–1] estoient vectis [2–2] Wanting in the French.
[3–3] se Ilz scauoient nouuelles [4–4] Wanting.

[1]that al thys meyne were murderers and theues.[1] Wherefor they concluded with in them selfe, that they sholde lye al nyghte in their harneys, and that they sholde not be dysgarnyshed of their swerdes. Whan Sylueyn, the chief mayster of the theeues, see that they had not putte off their harnes / he came toward them, & said that they were in pease & in a sure place / & that they myght wele putte of ther habilyme*n*tes of werre. bla*n*chardyn the*n* ansuerd vnto him & sayd / that it was the costome of theire land, not to putte of their armures for the fyrst nyght that they cam to a new lodgyng / the theues that sawe blanchardyn & Sadoyne so fayr, so grete, and so wele armed, durste not assaylle them; but Subyon, that was hidde wythin a cha*m*bre, and that wele had herd theym / lept oute of it & gaaff them corage, And sayd that they were all wery of the batayl, And that a grete shame were to them xiij in nombre / yf they durste not sette vpon two men. ¶ Thenne came [2]syluayn, his felawes wyth hym,[2] And ascryed[3] the two barons to [4]dethe: Thenne saide blanchardyn to sadoyne / 'we must defende oure self now / yf we thinke to scape quyk out of this place, & euer see oure ladyes paramours.' They left their wordes, drewe their swerdes, & set their sheildes afore theym, so bigan they to smyte amonge their felon enmyes / they all tohewe & cleue them in so moche that eyght of theim fell doun ded to therthe; the other foure trowed to haue fled in to sauete, but they were pursued so nyghe of blanchardyn & of sadoyne that they ouertoke & slew thre of theim; the fourth that was maister of hem all fled wythin the place for to haue saued hymself, in to the chambre where subyon was[5] / but of so nyghe he

but will not disarm.

Subyon persuades the thieves to murder Blanchardyn and Sadoyne.

[4] M iiij.

The two knights draw their swords,

kill eight thieves,

then three more,

and follow the chief, Sylvain, into the chamber where Subyon is.

[1–1] *que* cestoit voie larronniere et *que* eulx toux estoyent larrons et murdriers a la facon quilz veoyent deulx.

[2–2] siluain auant auec ses compaignons [3] escrierent

[5] ne Ia neust este trouue se par aduenture neust este siluain leur maistre qui leans se cuidoit bouter

was folowed that Blanchardyn ouer toke hym, and
Blanchardyn kills Sylvain. smote hym suche a stroke wyth his swerde, that he made his hede to flee fro the sholdres of hym / and fel ded euyn atte the dore of the chambre / [1]that he had opened all redy for to haue saued him there wythinne,[1] wher subyo*n* was in grete fere & drede, & not wythout
Subyon knows his days will soon end. a cause, for he well ynough byleued and knew that his dayes were come atte an ende / syth that he was fallen into Blanchardynes handes ¶ I shall here leue to speke of Blanchardyn, of Sadoyne, and of Subyon / that in grete fere was of his dethe, And shal retourne to speke of the proude pucelle in amours, [2]and of the barons that were wythin the castell of Castelforde.[2]

¶ The liiij and last chapter conteyneth how blanchardyn wedded his loue, the proude pucell in amours, And of the grete Ioye that was made there / [3]and of þ^e^ kynge of fryse deth.[3]

After the battle against Subyon's army, After that the batayll was fynysshed, and that the folke of Subyon were all ded and taken, the proude pucelle in amours cam dou*n* from the toure / where she & the cou*n*tes of Castelforde were mou*n*ted
Eglantine comes in hope to welcome Blanchardyn. for to see the batayll / and cam to the castel gate for to welcome bla*n*chardyn and sadoyn. wha*n* they were com there / they fonde the erle of Castelforde,[4] [which

[1–1], [2–2] Wanting in the French.

[3–3] et de la mort de subien.

[4] Lord Spencer's copy of Caxton ends here. The text following is supplied from the 1595 edition of the romance.

Comment Blanchandin espousa s'amie lorguilleuse damours, et de la grande Ioye qui y fut faite, et de la mort de subion.

Apres ce que la bataille fut finie, et que les gens subion furent tous mors et prins, lorguilleuse damours descendy de la tour ou elle et la comtesse de chasteaufort estoyent montees, et vindrent a la porte du chasteau, pour estre audeuant de blanchandin et sadoine.

(euen then) was come to the Castell with many prisoners and rich booties of the rebels, she demaunded where *Blanchardine* and *Sadony* were. 'Madam,' answered the old Earle, 'it is not long since they were both heere in our companie, and we supposed that they had bene alreadie entered the Castell before our comming.' When the faire Queene perceiued that no tidings could be heard of them, fearing some mischaunce, she fell into a sounde, wherin she continued the space of an houre and more; but being recouered, she began most pitteously to weepe and exclaime against fortune: the old Earle and the Countesse recomforted her as well as they could, but nothing could sort to her content. then they laid her on a sumptious bed, hoping by sleepe to make her forget sorowe; but neither sleepe nor quiet could harber in her head, fearing least *Blanchardine* were

[ed. 1595]

When Eglantine can hear no tidings of Blanchardyn, she swoons.

¶ Quant la furent venues, elles trouverent le conte de chasteaufort et les autres barons, qui grand foyson de prisonniers amenoyent avec eulx, por Iceulx bouter en la place.

Alors lorguilleuse damours, veant *que* son ami blanchandin nestoit point venu, elle appella le conte, et luy demanda ou estoyent blanchandin et sadoine ¶ 'Madame,' ce dit le conte, 'nagaires *que* sy estoyent avec nous, si ne scay quelle *part* Ilz soyent tournez. Car bien cuidoit *que* ceans fussent entrez vers vous.'

¶ Quant la noble damoiselle oy le conte et le preuost qui la estoit, qui nouuelles ne sauoyent des Barons De si hault quelle estoit chez *par*terre en jettant vng moult hault et piteulx cry. Donc eulx qui la furent *prins* eurent moult grant douleur. Car tous cuiderent *que* mort fust ce ce que que en elle ne sentoyent ne poulx nalaine ¶ Pitoiable chose estoit de voir la gente contesse et les autres gens que la estoyent / Mais tost apres lorguilleuse damours reuint a elle en Iettant vng parfont sauspir; puis trespiteusement se prinst a complaindre en regretter son leal amy blanch*andin* Ia nauoit si dur cuor dhom*me* ne de fem*me* que delle neust pitie ¶ Le bon conte et la bonne contesse la reconforterent au mieulx quilz pourent, Mais ce riens ne valoit, car de plus en plus commencoit a renforchier son dueil / Ilz lamenerent en vne chambre; quant la fust venue, on la mist sur vne couche por lui reposer ¶ La com*tesse* et les dames furent autours delles doulantes et explourees de ce *que* nullement ne la peurent rapaisier, Car point ne cessoit de faire les plus piteulx et angoisseuses plaintes De jamais pour son leal ami que cuidoit avoir perdu ¶ Mais gaires narresta

[ed. 1595] slaine. now *Blanchardine* and *Sadony*, hauing slaine the murtherers and fettred *Subbion*, they mounted vpon

Blanchardyn binds Subyon on a horse, their horses, and tied *Sub*[1]*bion* with cordes fast to the back of an other horse which they found there; and

[1] sign. I 2. by the light of the Moone, tooke their way to *Castelford*, which was distance thence foure miles; *Sadony* leading the way, *Subbion* in the middest, and *Blanchardine* the hindmost. They posted so fast, that within short time they came before the gate of the Castell,

brings him to Castelford, where they allighted from their horses; then knocking at the gates, they were presently knowne, and with all speed let in, leading *Subbion* betweene them. the newes being brought to y^e^ Queene, her melancholy was turned to mirth, her sorrow to sollace, and her weeping to laughter. *Blanchardine* commaunded that *Subbion*

and puts him in a dungeon. should be imprisoned in the most obscure dungion within the Castell, and that himselfe would become his Iaylor. After which he assended vp into the Queenes

Blanchardyn rejoins Eglantine. chamber, whom he found new risen, raised by this happy news, at whose entrance her spirits began to be

---

que ses plaints lui seront retournes en Ioye, comme sy apres pourrez oyr ¶ Blanchandin et sadoine, qui en la maison des larons estoyent, ou Ilz trouverent subion dedens vne chambre ou Il estoit muchie mais ce Riens ne lui prouffita Car quant les deux vassaulx le veyrent la Ioye quilz en eurent fut moult grande / Ilz le prindrent et le saisirent et lui lierent piez et mains / puis le monterent sur vng fort cheual que leans trouverent ¶ Apres saillirent hors de la place / sy en tirerent leurs destriers, sur lesquelz Ilz monterent, et se mirent a chemin vers chasteaufort, qui a deux lieues de la estoit ¶ Sadoine aloit deuant, et subion apres, Et blanchandin le approuchoit derriere ensuiant. La luna luisoit belle et clerre / tant cheuau cherent que en peu despace furent deuant la port de chasteaufort, qui Ia estoit fermee. Ils commencherent a huchier, en eulx faisant recongnoistre ¶ Quant leur venue fut sceue, de toutes pars y venoyent courrant pour luy faire ouuerture; & si tost que dedens furent entrez, Ils descendirent au peront deuant la salle. Subion fut mis en vne chartre moult obscure, sans ce que oncques depuis leure que Il auoit este prins, Car bien sauoit que a mort estoit Iugie / Apres ce que les deux Barons furent leans entrez, leur venue fut noncee a lorguilleuse damours, qui moult en eut grant Ioye, comme assez pouez scauoir.

recomforted. and after many kisses and sweet imbracements they sate downe, and spent the night in discoursing of their aduentures past. [ed. 1595]

Next day they ride to Tormaday,

4 But when the day began to peepe, they tooke their horses and rode to *Tormaday*, against whome (in all kind manner) came the aged king of *Frize*, who for a while had rested himself there, accompanied with all 8 the noble Knights and Burgises of *Tormaday*: the walles were hanged with tapestry, the streets were strewed with rushes and sweet smelling roses, to gratulate their comming; the matrons compiling garlands of 12 sundry flowers, the Ladyes dauncing, the damsels singing, the musicke sounding a sweet concordance to their entrie. Thus in tryumph they assended the princely pallace, most sumpteously adorned with rich cloth of 16 golde, embost with pearle and stone, where, by the whole aduice and generall consent of all, they were affiaunced.

and Blanchardyn and Eglantine are betrothd.

Tantost lui furent muez tous ses pleurs et regretz en p*ar*fecte Ioye et 20 leesse. Elle se leua en grant haste; mais ja si tost ne sceut estre leuee q*ue* blanchandin et sadoine ne fussent venus vers elle, dont la Ioye fut Redoublee / Car deu*ant* tous, elle baisa et embracha son amy / Moult se deuiserent ensamble de plusieurs choses, La Ioye, la 24 recueillote, et la gr*ant* amour que fist blanchandin au bon conte de chasteaufort, au preuost, et au ch*ev*alier du gue, auec les Remerciemens deulx, seroient trop longues, si reciter les vouloie. Mais p*our* cause de briefte, men passe. Ils passerent la nuit ¶ Puis, quant ce 28 vint le matin, Ils sappresterent et m*onterent* a cheual, en tenant leur chemin vers tourmaday, ou desia leur venue fut sceue. Le bon Roy de frize, pere de blanchandin, et t*ous* ceulx de la ville, vindrent au deuant, ense*m*ble tous les colleges de la cite, a crois et confanons p*our* 32 receuoir leur dame et blanchandin qui leur seigneur deuoit estre. ¶ Moult grand Ioye et grant feste se firent quant ce vint a lassambler ¶ La ville fut toute te*n*ndue et encourtinee et Ionchie derbe verde, p*ar* les rues, dames et damoiselles bourgois et pucelles estoient aux 36 fenestres, chantans et demenans Ioye ¶ La estoyent plusieurs et diuers Instrumens qui Iettoyent melodieux sons. Ils cheuaucherent Iusques au palais, ou tous descendirent ¶ Moult grant Ioye y fut demenee ¶ Apres que tous furent rasserisiez par le conseil des princes 40 et pareillemens de t*ous* ceulx du Royaulme, blanchandin fianca la

[ed. 1595]

The neighboring Princes, which long had bent their deuotions to the[1] sweet Saint which kept her shrine in *Tormaday* (I meane the faire and chast Lady *Eglantine*, surnamed the proude Lady in loue), hauing receiued notice by their espialls, which kept continuall residence within the Citty of *Tormaday*, to certifie the newes which happened there, to their Princes and Counsels, hearing (I say) that this Queene, whose obstinacie a[1]gainst Cupid was incomparable, and peeuish conceit in loue most absurd, had nowe entred the chapter house of his mother *Venus*, being limed in the bush of *Blanchardines* beauty, whose large commendations and magnanimious corage was caryed by the swift winges of flying fame throughout many Realmes and prouinces, the like before was sildome or neuer heard. These kings (I say) whose fancies before that time had receiued the perfect impression of loue in the Angellike beautie of that Princely Queene, whose amber lockes trust vp in golden trammels, was a sufficient addamant to draw all Iron hearts vnto her, now seeing all hope of her recouerie past, and their desires frustrate, with franke and friendly consent, not only come to visit and veiw *Blanchardine*, but also brought such honorable presentes and Kingly Iuels to welcome him to *Tormaday*, and to congratulate the happie mariage betweene him and the faire Princesse *Eglantine*, as their Countries and kingdomes did afford. Some presented him with stately coursers and Iennets of seruice, some with ships of huge and mightie burthen, some with Pearles and Iuels of inestimable valure. And to be short, euery one, though at first his foe and vtter enemie, yet in time veiwing his maiesticall and princely corage, became his true and faithful freends, esteeming him worthy of greater honor than either their personages, presents, or the obtaining of the beautifull Queene of *Tormaday* could afford.

The Princes near are told of Eglantine's submission to Venus.

The Kings

bring marriage-presents

of coursers, ships and jewels.

[1] *Orig.* thee

[ed. 1595]

Eglantine and Blanchardyn are wedded and crownd.

And on the next morning, the beautifull Queene was royally led to and from the Church (where she was espoused to *Blanchardine*) by two Kings, *Sadony* and the king of *Frize:* and the same day crowned King and Queene of *Tormaday*, to the exceeding comfort of all their subiectes and friendes. After their returne from the Church to the Court, they were feasted with all possible cheere that could bee deuised: and after dinner the Trumpets sounded to the Iustes and tiltings vntill supper. And after supper, maskes, playes, and Princely deuises, spent the time till they went to bed.

The wedding-feast lasts 20 days.

On the morrow the feast began a-fresh, and continued for the space of twentie daies. After all which

---

belle lorguilleuse damours / Puis quant ce vint a lendemain matin, lorguilleuse damours fut menee au moustier a destree de deux Roys ¶ Cest assauoir, du Roy de frize et du Roy sadoine / Et par leuesque de la cite furent espousez les deux amans, et furent couronnez comme Roy et Royne du Royaulme de tourmaday. Moult grande et noble fut loffrande ¶ Apres ce que messe fut faicte, Ilz retournerent au palays ou les tables furent dreschees ¶ Leaue fut coruee si sasseirent au mengier: de leur metz ne entremetz ne vous fay long compte, car moult richement furent seruis de tou ce que corps dhomme onpouoit aaisier ¶ Des habillemens et atours dont lespoux et espousee furent parez ou vestuz, ne vous vueil tenir compte ¶ Mais bien vous ose dire que oncques puis ceneans parauant ne auoit ou veu ne sceu plus riches atours ne habillemens que sur les deux amans estoyent; car tous deux estoyent tant beaulx que dieu et nature ny eust sceu que amendir ¶ Puis apres ce quilz orent disne, Ioustes tournois commencerent, danses et esbatemens / Puis apres, quant temps et heure fut de soupper, Ilz sassirent au mengier / Se au disner avoyent este bien servis, aussi le furent au soupper ¶ Quant le soupper fut fait et acheue, et que tous temps fut de eulx retraire, Les deux amans furent menez en vne chambre, ou Ils se coucherent ensamble, et engendrerent celle nuyt vng filz qui en son temps ot nom Rambault le frison ¶ Le quel fist et acheua pluseurs et haultes prouesses, et morut en la trespitouse bataille de Ramcheuaulx, auec Roland et oliuire, qui plus de luy vouldra sauoir, regarde en son histore, qui de luy fait mention, et retournerous a notre matiere ¶ Quant ce vint a lendemain, tous se leuerent par le palais, et recommenca la feste qui dura vng Iours entiers ¶ Apres que la solempnite et feste des nopces

[ed. 1595] 1 sign. I 3.

Subyon is executed.

arroyalties were finysh[1]ed by the commandement of *Blanchardine*, was *Subyon* and all his accomplices brought to execution. now the neues being caried with the swift wings of fame into *Frizeland*, the Lords of *Frize* repaired to *Tormaday*, to accompany home their aged King, and to congratulate this happy marriage of *Blanchardine* and his new Queene.

Blanchardyn's father, the King of Friesland,

After the aged King of *Frize*, Father to *Blanchardine*, had seene the espousalls of this beautifull Queene and his noble Sonne; being decrepit & stiffe with age, hauing liued to fourscore and vpward, vnto whome, although his late enlargement from captiuitie, and this new-come ioy of his deere sonne *Blanchardine*, being now married to the beautifull Queene of *Tormaday*, bred delight; Yet through debillitie of nature, which was sore infeebled by his hard imprisonment, he

is taken very ill.

was surprised with an vncoth malladie and extreame contagion of dangerous sicknes; in the which he had not long remained, but in the view of all, life began to vade, and death opproche. And more to hasten on deathes speedy pace to this sencles olde man, the

The Frisian Nobles

nobles of *Frizeland*, hauing receiued sure and certaine inteligence from *Tormaday* of the life and freedome of their King at that time there, and the princely mariage which now was fully concluded betweene his successiue heire, their naturall leige *Blanchardine*, with the renouned Lady and Queene of *Tormaday*, they came

visit him.

thither; at whose approche, this fainting olde man, hoping to receiue glad tidings from his aged wife the Queene of *Frize*, began with cheerefull countenance to lift himselfe vp in his bed, as though no kinde of

---

furent passees par le commandement du Roy blanchandin, Subion, et tous ses complices furent mis a mort ¶ Assez tost apres les barons du Royaulme de frize, arriuerent a tourmaday pour veoir le Roy leur seigneur, et le Roy blanchandin son filz, dont la Ioye fut renforcee.

deadly malladie or aged griefe had attainted his withered limbes. But when he had a while listened to the sweet harmonie of their sugred speach, which presaged no kind of disaster, but all pleasure and sollace that might be, at the length he demaunded of the welfare of the aged Queene his wife; vnto whome, reply being made, that long time since, vpon the vnfortunate report and tragicall tidings of his captiuitie by *Darius*, sonne to the Pagan king *Alimodes*, shee fell sicke and died; hee, listening to this impittious tale, fell as one distraught into a sound. But comming to himselfe, powred forth these speeches, [1]the true testimonies of his faithfull loue: 'and is she gon, the comfort of my youth, the staffe of my age, the day of my night, the sonshine of my blisse, the sollace of my soule, and the life of my death? Ah! to to well I suspected (though alas I knew not the certentie) that my captiuitie would bring her callamity, and my imprisonment her death. But since all humane flesh is mortall, and nothing vnder the Sunne permanent, what auailes my sorowful grones and passions? to weake, alas, to recall her againe, or any way to remedie my misfortune!' with these or the like exclaimes, this silly aged King, panting betweene life and death, lay still a while, till finding his heart ouer charged with an other passion, he prosecuted his first complaint: 'O sacred Ioue, searcher of all secret thoughts, whose eternall dietie raigneth within the highest heauens, who from my cradle hast destined me to perpetuall miserie, now shew thy self a righteous iudge, and reuenge my wronges

[ed. 1595]

When Blanchardyn's Father is told of his wife's death,

[1] sign. I 3, back.

he lamenteth her,

and prays God

Mais quant le bon Roy sceut et fut bien aduerti que de ce monde transitoire esto(it) la Royne sa femme Hors, moult grant dueil en fut a demener. Et aussi fist le Roy blanchandin, qui moult en fut doulant et criste. Mais si grant dueil nest que en la fin ne conuiengne passer. Ia soit et que le bon Roy de frize pour quelque reconfort que on lui sceust faire, Il ne delaissa son dueil; et tant que du grant courroux

[ed. 1595]

to revenge him on the Infidels.

vppon the accursed broode of infidels, who so irreligiously prophane thy blessed name, & suffer them not to escape thy reuenging powre, but at thy pleasure consume and confound the workers of this my woe! and now dissolue my daies and weary life, & leade me through th' unknowne passages to my deere and sweetest wife, that though our daies on earth did finde small comfort, yet our soules in heauen may finde consolation.' And with this orizon he yeilded himself to God, and died. When the brute of this heauie tidinges came to the eares of *Blanchardine* and his faire Queene, although they swume before in the hauen of happines, and floted on the floodes of al felicitie (as they thought), yet in that very instant and moment of time, a cloudie mist began to obscure their brightest sonshine, and a frost of cares to ouer runne their summers blisse.

Blanchardyn's Father dies.

Blanchardyn reproaches himself

Now began *Blanchardine* to accuse and condemne himselfe of vnnaturall ingratitude and disobedience to his parentes, to whome both nature and dutie bound him to bee submissiue and kind; now he began to maligne the time, the place, and the cause of his departure and priuie escape from his fathers Court. But all in vaine, for as teares, praiers, nor vowes can recall the dead: so had I wist, and time abused and mispent, is in vaine to [1]be desired. 'And yet (quoth he) how vnnaturall was I to forsake them whome nature charged me to loue and obey! now I may iustlie accuse my self of the murther of these my louing parents: alas! I cannot excuse my selfe, neither can I plead ignoraunce that I knew not that my departure would be the finishing of my parentes ioyes, and cause of their death, which now (to my open shame) I finde most true. And should I, nay, could I, suffer my selfe to be led and carried away with such vaine fantasies, as leaue them

[1] sign. I 4.

for causing his parents' death by leaving them.

---

quil en eut, Il coucha malade, dont Il morut ¶ Le Roy blanch*andin*

comfortles to whome I was the greatest comfort. Die, *Blanchardine*, die! and the rather die, that art the cause of thy parents death: alas! to kill a man is hainous murder; but to murder my parentes, a sinne against Sanctitie: all creatures haue care to foster those that gaue them life; and I, careles in killing my father. The Storke, when he seeth his sire olde & redy to die with famine, taketh him vpon his shoulders, and feedeth him by his trauaile: But I, insteede of feeding, haue famisht, and in place of trauelling, haue traiterously ouerthrowne my parents.' [ed. 1595] Death is his fit punishment.

The Lordes of *Tormaday*, seeing this soddaine and vnexpected chaunce of the death of the aged King, & the heauie plight of *Blanchardine* and his beautifull Quéene, humbly on their knees began to expostulate him in this manner: 'Noble prince! as the salue commeth to late, where the sore is irrecuperable; as phisicke is naught worth where the pacient is passing; and as fire giuen to the ordinance, tis to late to recall the shot; So, mightie King, booteles are these teares which are shed for the dead. the honor of your father hath eterniz'd his name for euer, though his body be here interred; and if fame be the marke whereat all noble mindes do shoote, then may you boast that he cannot die whose fame is so ferre spred throughout the world. Leaue therefore (braue King) to bewaile him whome you haue cause to ioy for, and comfort our pensiue Queene and your faire spouse, whose torments cannot cease, seeing you so sad.' As one newly risen from a traunce, or out of a heauy slumber, so *Blanchardine*, hauing listened to this short and sweete discourse of his nobles, began to recall his sences home, which before were wandring after the Ghost of his father, through

The Tormadians comfort Blanchardyn, and beg him to stop sorrowing, and to cheer his wife.

---

son filz fut en tresamert desplaisance, et aussi fut la Royne sa femme, qui moult lamoit. Il fut porte en terre, et son seruice et obseques

[ed. 1595] the Elizian feeldes, and [1]perceiuing sorrow to be both
[1] sign. I 4, back. needlesse and bootlesse, so well as the time and this hard occasion would permit, he began to be more cheereful; and so pacing toward the Queene with a simpering smile, neither presaging mirth nor mourning,

Blanchardyn comforts Eglantine, he began to recomfort her: 'How now, faire loue? what, are your melancholies such as nothing can make you merrie? sweete hart, be pacified, and shake of these vntimelye passions, and learne by me to disgest the hard and harsh pilles of vnhappie fortune. The cause is mine; and if sorrow be expected in any, it is I that must be sorrowful; but I haue found it both hurtfull to my body and [not] auailable[2] to the dead, and therefore haue shaken it of as a thing of no regarde. Let vs not therefore (sweete wife) be the cause of a mournfull

and prays her to be merry. courte, but the authors of merry company, since it hath pleased God to sorte our haps to our harts contentments in our happy wedding.' The Queene, whose sadnes grew by reason of her husbands heauinesse, seeing him to haue so quickly dismissed his heauy passions, became presentlye iocond & merry; & so betweene them commaunded great preparation to be forthwith made, to performe the obsequies of the deceased King of *Freeze*,

They bury the King of Friesland with great solemnity. his Father; which shortly, with all solemnitie fitting his estate, was accomplished, to the great admiration of all beholders, for the sumptuous magnificencie and surpassing pompe wherwith he was interred; all costly odors and sweet senting spices were bountifully be-

[2] ? unavailable

---

faictes, comme a vng tel Roy appartint. Apres tous les meschiefz et Infortunes de blanchandin et de sa dame comme Roy et Royne, rempliz et aournes de toutes bonnes vertus, vesquirent le demourant leur vie en paix et transquilite en seruice de dieu, amez et cremus de leurs voisins; Et eurent telle grace de nostre seigneur que ains que du monde se partissent veirent leur filz grant a porter armes, et le feirent couronner roy de frize ¶ Et vesquirent tres longtemps, en eulx

stowed vpon him; great almes and charity were dealt and distributed; and innumerable sollemne processions & praiers were made for him, in honor of his person dead, and loue of his Sonne liuing. [ed. 1595]

Now *Sadonie*, who was not only a beholder, but a principall actor in all this heauy tragedie, after these obsequies were solemnized, and that the estate of his sworne freend *Blanchardine* and his faire Queene rested in perfect quiet, voyde and free both of forraine and domesticall enimies, bethinking himselfe of his beautifull *Beautrix*, his trusty Regent of *Cassidony* (hee, I say) whome loue had stonge to the quicke by his late marriage, comming to *Blanchardine*, began thus: 'Since, Noble freend, and true copartner of all mishaps, that fortune hath spit her deadly spight, [1]and that now there remaineth no more seruice for me to doe in defence of your royall person, your Realme and Queene; and that my princely Queene languisheth at home, by reason of my long absence, whose princely person is the true Idea of my thought; let me craue fauor to depart, vntill occasion or your freendly letters call me hether againe, where and when I will not faile, so long as life shall rest within me, to do you all possible fauor and kindnes.' *Blanchardine* (imagining by himselfe) that the Sting of loue was a sufficient pricke to call *Sadony* home, and that he should greatly iniury him & his faire *Beautrix*, in withholding them a sunder; not onely gaue his consent for his departure, but with all honor accompanied him to his ships, with his Princely *Eglantine*, where, not without millions of teares and many kind imbracements, they parted companie.

Sadoyne

asks Blanchardyn

[1] sign. K 1.

to let him go home to his wife Beatrice.

Blanchardyn sees Sadoyne to his ship,

Thus with pleasant gale and quiet tide, *Neptune*

---

gouuernant en ce monde, tellement que apres leur mort furent moult regretez de leurs subgetes et voisins, et dautres qui ne les congnoissoient, pour le grant renom de leur vie ¶ Tellement se gouuernerent en ce monde transitoire, que Ilz trouuerent paix au Royaulme de

[ed. 1595] and he sets sail.

guiding the healme, sayled *Sadony* and his warlike companie towardes the Realme of *Cassidony*, where his princely Queene, the beautifull *Beautrix*, held her Royall court, but heauy and mournfull for the absence of her Lorde and husband *Sadony;* for wrathfull *Nemisis*, enuying of her good hap, and willing to heape greater woes vpon the Queene, then before shee suspected, altered her hoped blisse into a deadly bane. For when the calme silence of the night procured quiet to all liuing creatures, and that *Hesperus*, the harbenger of *Cinthia*, had giuen charge to call the inferior stars with twinkling light to illumine the earth; *Eolus* on the sodaine began to roare, and with outragious stormes and cruell blastes to bannish againe the starrs from the firmament, & in their places to spred his dusky clouds, so that instead of light there was obscuritie, with huge and horible crakes of thuunder: By force whereof, the wandering Prince *Sadony* and his amazed company were, from a sodaine hope of happy arriuall, driuen into a dismall feare of drowning: then began the pitifull clamor of the people, seeing euery waue ready to swallow up the ship wherein they were caried, the foggy mist to thicken with cloudy vapors, that vnneth could the saylors see to doe their labours. *Sadony* (whose corage no fortune was able to daunt) ha[1]uing his assured hope in the God whome *Blanchardine* made him to know, seeing his company to faint and in dispaire, began to exhort and comfort them in this sort:

But at night a storm rises,

and threatens to drown them.

[1] sign. K 1, back.

'Trustie companion[s] and copartners of mishap, since it hath pleased the maiestie of the eternall God to terrifie *with* his thunderclaps our feeble hearts, and that all hope of safetie is vtterly denied; let vs with one consent humble our selues before his mercy seat; and no doubt, as in many other our calamities, so in this our desperate distress, he will with the eyes of pitty looke downe vpon our penitencie, and by his

Sadoyne bids his monks pray to God.

omnipotency appease the rage of these troubled seas, [ed. 1595]
which threateneth imminent death and destruction.
Frollike, deere friends! and the God of *Blanchardine*
defend us!' The company seeing *Sadonie* so coragious The monks, cheerd by Sadoyne's words,
and full of haughtie valor, inciting them to call vpon
the God of *Blanchardine*, euery one casting away his
dastard feare, eleuating their hearts and hands to
heauen, made their orizons thus: 'Imortall *Iehoua*, pray to God,
guider of this glorious roume! although our dim-sighted
eies haue been long couered *with* the obscure vaile of
ignorance, & haue abandoned our hearts from thy
sacred law, yet since it hath pleased thee to make thy
name and glorie knowne among vs, suffer vs not to
miscarie, vntill wee haue yeelded thee all conding and
heauenly honor, so that from our lips thy praise may
flow, and in our hearts thy diety take roote!' No
sooner was this short & zealous praier finished, but
horned *Luna* began to shew her head, the cloudes to
vanish, the windes to cease, and the sea to calme, and the sea soon grows calm.
which yeelded such fuell to their faith, that for euer
they acknowledged the omnipotence of *Blanchardines*
God, and left the same to their posterities. Then the
skilfull Pilots, whose wandring course was past their
compasse, looking to the skyes, were directed a true
passage by a christall starre, so that within short time
they reacht the shore of *Cassidony*, where the beauti- Sadoyne reaches Cassidonye, and is receivd by his wife Beatrice.
full *Beautrix*, with her Lordly Peeres and Princely
Ladies, awaited their landing. When *Sadony* was

---

cieulx. Et sadoine son tresleal compaignon retourna en cassidoine, ou lui et la Royne beatrix vesquirent en transquilite de ame et de corps ¶ Ceste histoire ne touche plus auant ou gouuernement du Roy blanchandin, na de la Royne sa femme ¶ Si finirons nostre hystoire en priant au pere et au filz et au saint esprit, que en la fin de noz Iours, nous vueille sa grace ottroyer. Amen.

[*underlined in red ink*] **Explicit expliciat**
Quy plus vult scribere scribat.

[ed. 1595] now escaped the danger of the sea, and safely come a shore, after humble thankes to God, he seazing vpon the rosiall lips of his royall Queene, in whose countenance snow and blood made such a mixture, that in
[1] sign. K 2. [1]the opinion of all, if nature should deuise to frame her paragon she might fayle in perfection. But after many kinde curtesies and amiable imbracements betweene *Sadony* and his *Beautrix*, and the Lordes and
Sadoyne repairs to his Court, Ladies, where euery one stroue with kindnes to welcome home her loue, they repaired to the court, where, for that night, the King and his Queene spent the time in content, and al the rest congratulated their happy meetings. On the morrow, when glorious *Phœbus* began to cut the cloudes, and drewe the darknes from the earth, every one prepared himselfe to be ready to attend the princes pleasure.

After *Sadony* had royally presented himselfe to the veiw of all, giuing a princely boniure to the Lordes
rewards his soldiers, and nobles, he commaunded that the soldiers, whose trauels had beene great, should repaire to his presence, to receiue a recompence for their paines; which bountie did so combine the trustie minds of all vnto him, that base was he accompted, that would refuse to hazard his life where and when it pleased *Sadony* to commaund.
Then were the lawes, which in his absence the Quéene
and ratifies laws. and Counsell had deuised, presented to him to ratifie, which he *with* all princely magnificencie did forthwith establish, to the great admiration and singuler content of all his subiectes and people. Now tatling swift-winged fame, the speedy messenger of happie newes, ceased not vntil these tidinges were brought to the
His father, the King of Prussia, cares of the King of *Spruse* at the cittie *Marienbourgh* (then in his profound and deep meditations for his sonne *Sadony*), and his departed companion. But when he heard of the hard aduentures which his sonne had escaped by sea, his deliuerie from death on land,

and his most happy marriage with the beautifull *Beautrix*, banishing feare (whose cankering rust had almost consumed his pleasure) hee, with all his nobles and people, offered burnt sacrifices to their Mahon for this happie tidings. Yet not content nor satisfied in minde, he rigged certaine ships, wherein he and diuers of his Lordes embarqued themselues, longing to visite his son at *Cassidonie*; and led by this sweete desire, after they had sayled the space of one weeke, they came ashore within those territories. But when newes was brought to *Sadony* that certaine [1]Pagans were arriued, and craued to bee admitted his princely presence: Ignorant altogether what or whence they shoulde be: seating himselfe in his Royall throne, accompanied with his faire Queene and chiefe peeres, hee commaunded them to bee brought to his presence, vpon whose approche, *Sadony* knowing his father by the maiestie of his countenaunce, desended from his seate, humbling himselfe on his knées at his fathers feete. The faire *Beautrix* vnwitting who he might be, to whome *Sadony* should shewe such reuerence, stood in a maze. But after she knew him to be father to *Sadony*, with a most gracious and amiable cheere came to entertaine him; to whome the King of *Spruse* rendred millions of thankes, both for the life and marriage of his sonne, without whose rescue hee had bin traiterously murdred, and hanged by *Alimodes*. But the faire Quéene answered, that both her life, liuing, and people rested in the safetie of *Sadony*, 'without whome (quoth shee) neythir may I, nor my kingdome, continue.' Now when the King of *Spruse* had listened to her zealous and sugred tale, fixing a stedfast countenaunce on her face, he seemed as one rauished in contemplation, admiring the beauty and bounty of the Queene. But *Sadony*, thinking his father (after his ariual from sea) to be desirous to repose himself, led him with all maiestie

[ed. 1595]

hears of Sadoyne's marriage,

and comes to see him.

[1] sign. K 2, back.

Sadoyne

and Beatrice

welcome his father.

Beatrice's love for Sadoyne.

[ed. 1595]

Sadoyne lodges his Father royally.

into a most princely lodging; where after his repast, he went to bed. the other Lords of his troope, and all their followers, were so honorably entertained there, that the commendation of *Sadonies* bountie was bruted euery where. Now on the next morning, when (according to custome) *Sadony* and his faire Queene repaired to the Church to heare deuine seruice, the King of *Spruse* not suspecting that his Sonne *Sadony* had altered his religion from his Mahomet; after the Priestes had begun to sing a sollemne procession in the honor of Christ, he, as a man distraught in sence, and ouercome with madding frenzy, ran vp and downe cursing and exclaiming against his sonne, so that neither perswasions, teares, vowes, nor praiers, might once appease his franticke rage; till retiring himself all sollitary into his chamber, tormented with passions & agonies, at length he fell a sleep; to whome, a little after, entred diuers of the Lordes [1] which accompanied *Sadonie* from *Marienbrough* with *Blanchardine*, and perswaded the King that the idolatrous Mahomet was a false deceauer, and of no diety, which by sundry and wonderfull miracles, they had founde Christ to be the true Messias and sonne of God; and, therefore, with all humilitie, ioyntly on their knees, they entreated his maiestie to leaue his superstitious worshipping of blockish Mahomet, and with all deuotion to acknowledge [2] Christ to be the true God. And euen at that very instant the stony heart of this Pagan King was mollified, who forsaking his idolatrie, became a christian. This happie newes so delighted his sonne, that vnder heauen nothing could make him more content. Then laboured *Sadony* and his faire Queene, with all royaltie, to welcome their father and his followers, where their entertainment was exceeding measure, both for magnificencie and cost. So past the time a moneth or more of their abode in iollity,

But when the King of Prussia finds that his son Sadoyne has turnd Christian

he at first curses him,

[1] sign. K 3.

but, being perswaded by his Lords,

he, the King, becomes a Christian too.

[2] *Orig.* acknowledged

vntill the King, desirous to returne to *Marienbourgh*, requested leaue of *Sadony* for his departure: who seeing the tickle state of his fathers kingdome, in his absence, wanting a gouernour there, was the more willing; and so, all possible prouision being made, with princely bounty bestowed by *Sadony* and his *Beautrix* vpon the Lords of *Spruse*, they accompanied the King to his ships. And after humble dutie done by *Sadony* to his father, and kinde curtesie to the rest, he recommended them to the mercy of *Blanchardines* God.

[ed. 1596]

After a happy month,

Sadoyne's father goes home to Prussia.

Thus, Gentlemen, to satisfie your expectations, & performe my promise, I find you the second part of *Blanchardines* aduentures, whose succes (if I finde as fortunate as his first) looke shortly, so soone as time and leasure will serue, for the finishing of all his Tragidies.

Look out for more of Blanchardyn's adventures.

FINIS.

[Woodblock.]

THE MOSTE

Pleaſaunt Hiſtorye of *Blanchardine*,

Sonne to the King of Friz; & *the faire*

Lady *Eglantine* Queene of *Tormaday*,

(ſurnamed) *The proud Ladye*

in LOVE.

[Woodblock.]

LONDON

Printed for *VVilliam Blackewall*, and are to be ſolde at his Shop, ouer againſt Guild-Hall Gate. *1595.*

[1] *To the woorfhipful and moft towardly*

Gentleman M. *William Peeter*, fonne and

heire to the Woorfhipfull Sir

John Peeter Knight.

ALthough with barren pen (right Worſſhipful) I haue vndertaken the tranſlation of this Hiſtorie of *Blanchardine*, & the dedication therof to you, whome many fauours haue bound me to honour: knowing the matter to determine nothing but honor & loyaltie, which both may challenge a great propertie in your self: I haue prefumed to offer theſe fruites of my labours to your fauourable acceptaunce, as part & parcell of my bounden duty to your Worſhips Father, your vertuous Mother and your ſelfe, whoſe deſerts haue tyed me during life the vaſſaile of your and their commaunds in all obſeruancie.

And if all men are by nature and dutie bound to gratifie his welderuing Freinds, then muſt not I ouerſlip time to make requitall of your many olde bounties by ſome ſlender gift, ſuch as the zeale of my duty & the abilitie of my minde is able to perfourme; and yet ſſhall I neuer be able to ridde the ſcore of your gratious demerits towardes me the meaneſt of many fauourits, nor cancel the bandes [2]of my dutie to your woorſſhipful houſe. But hauing imagined many waies to preſent you with the teſtimonie of my humble looue, & finding none either more agreeing to mine eſtat, or fitting for your worſſhip then this new tranſlation of this pleaſant hiſtory out of Latin, which I haue at idle times vndertaken: whoſe ſtile, although it may ſeeme rude and barberous and vnfitting your Worſſhip, yet I doe not miſtruſt, but the matter, beeing both pithie and pleſaunt, will incite you

[1] sign. A 2. [2] sign. A 2, back.

to read it at your leaſures, & cenſure it (not according to the worth), but according to the dutiful deſire of the giuer.

And though I, the vnſkilfulleſt of many, doe ſeeme as it were to pluck *Hercules* clubbe out of his hands in vndertaking this tranſlation, which might beſeem a far deeper ſcholler then my ſelf: yet hauing not in my pore oppinion impaired the credit nor wronged my Author in my tranſlation, forcing him to ſpeak rude Engliſh (which floweth with eloquence in latine), yet becauſe my leaſure ſerued, and my dutie bad mee be thankfull, I rather choſe this more then any other, which with all dutiful affection I commend to your learned veiw.

Thus crauing your acceptance of this pore widowes mite, vnder taking the patronage of the fame, I wiſh you all helth and happines.

Your Worſhips at command,
P. T. G.

[Part I of ed. 1595 ends on H 4, with

Thus, Gentlemen, haue I abruptly finiſhed this firſt part of *Blanchardines* Aduentures, with the true conſtant loue of fayre *Eglantine*, the proude Ladie in loue: which, if it ſhall paſſe with your good fauors, I will verie ſhortly make the ſecond part readie for the preſſe. In the meane while I wiſh ye well.

FINIS.]

[Leaf A j. Woodblock.]

The ſecond part,

OF THE MOST

Excellent and Famous Historye of

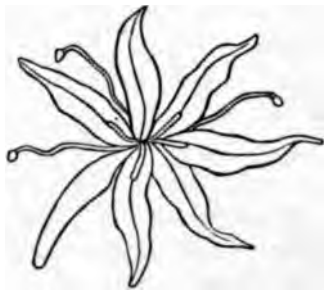
Blanchardine, Sonne to the King of *Frize*,

and faire Eglantine Queene of Torma-

day, surnamed *The Proud Lady*

in Loue.

By P. T. G. *Gent.*



Imprinted at London for *VVilliam Blackwall, and* are to be ſolde at his Shop, ouer-againſt Guilde-hall Gate. 1595.

[1]To the moſte forward Patrone of

learning and braue accomplifht Gentleman,

M. *William Peetre*, ſonne and heir to the

right worſhipfull ſir *John* 4

Peetre knight.

Ipercyan the vnſkilfull Piper, when he had founded vpon his Oaten reed his ruſtic Roundelaies in preſence of God Mercurie, before whome, Orpheus (douting of 8 his cunning) was aſhamed to tune his Harpe: being at the firſt vncontroled, in the end began to blowe lowder. So I, right worſhipfull, not vnlike this rude Piper, hauing preſumed to tune my ruſtic ſtringes to larum foorth my ſimple muſicke in the 12 tranſlation of the firſt parte of Blanchardines aduentures, in preſence of you, whoſe learned cenſure as farre paſſeth my capacitie, as Mercuries cunning did poore Hipercyans ſkill: yet hauing found your fauourable acceptance of the former, I am encouraged to per- 16 ſeuer in the dedication of the ſecond parte alſo, to you, his firſt and moſt worthy Patrone; to whoſe vaſſelage, not only many vndeſerued fauours, but bountifull rewardes haue bound me during life, in all obſeruancie. And hauing no fitter meane to make manifeſt the 20 integritie of my zeale, wherewith I honor your wor[2]ſhippfull houſe: I thought it my beſt to take hold of occaſion, whileſt (in my conceit) ſhe proffered her ſelfe to be taken, which I greatly feared, if now I ſhould negligently ouerſlip, I ſhould ſcantly hereafter ouertake. 24

This conſideration (right worſhipfull) was the ſpur that prickt me forth to offer the ſimple kernell which this fruitleſſe ſhell incloſeth, to your fauourable view, which I truſt you will vouchſafe to accept,

[1] sign. A 2. [2] sign. A 2, back.

though not according to the value, which is nothing, yet for the dutifull defire of the giuer, which is my moſt. For in this I proteſt, you may well decerne, that my willing minde dooth bewraie my good meaning. And as the brighteſt Sun wanteth not fuell to yeild increaſe to his glorious light; ſo there is not wanting in me a ſufficient will, to do you all poſſible dutie and ſeruice (by which two, the Scutchion of my zeale is and ſhall for euer be ſupported). Thus more then halfe aſſured, that this my poore Booke ſhall finde ſhelture to flie vnder the ſhadow of your wing, in whoſe good grace (if once it be armed) I force not what back-biting Momus or his curriſh mates can imagine againſt it. And as theſe (my Premities, patronized by you) ſhall ſeeme pleaſing; ſo wil I alwaies be moſt readie (if any matter of more worth chance into my handes) to offer it vp in all dutie at your ſhrine: vntill when I take my leaue, praying God in this life to grace you with all happines, and in the other life with all bleſſednes.

Your Worſhips euer deuoted,

P. T. G.

NAME INDEX.

Achilles, the hero of the Trojan War, seen on the tapestry by Blanchardyn, 15/15.
Almanye, Germany, 124/10.
Alymodes, King of Cassydonye, besieging Tormaday, 38/2, 45/35, 55/18, 56/13, etc.

Babylonye, Babylon, 125/9.
Beatrice, daughter of King Alymodes, afterwards wife to Sadoyne, 92/18, 93/1, 97/2, etc.
Blanchardyn, son of the King of Frise, 12/12, 20, etc.

Cassydonye, the kingdom of Alymodes, afterwards of Sadoyne, 91/3, 95/11, 18, 96/25.
Castelforde, Earl of, 179/20, 180/4, 181/9, 182/13, 197/18.
Caxton, 1/5.
Corbadas, nephew to King Alymodes, slain by Blanchardyn, 62/21.
Corboraunt, brother to King Alymodes, 167/9, 168/14, 169/15.

Darye, Daryus, son to King Alymodes, 56/28, 57/13, 86/7, 92/27, 94/31, 95/11.
Deyphebus, one of the heroes of the Trojan War, depicted on the tapestry, 15/14.

Eglantine, Queen of Tormaday, the pucelle in amours, 2/1, 3/3, 182/5, etc., etc.
Englonde, England, 1/4.

Fryse (Friesland?), the native country of Blanchardyn, 16/14, 18/21, 21/3, 31/22, etc.

Grece, Greece, Blanchardyn pretends to be of Greece, 99/36.
Grekes, Greekes, before Troy, 15/13.

Hector, 15/13.
Henry the Seventh, to his mother Caxton dedicates his book, 1/3.

Mahoum, Mahomet, 100/17.
Margarete, Duchess of Sommerset, to her 'Blanchardyn' is dedicated, 1/2.
Maryenborugh, Marienburg in Prussia, 95/6, 98/12, 101/1, 102/24, etc.
Mocastre, the castle of Mocastre, in Greece, 100/7.

Nourwaye, Northweye, Norweghe, Nourthwege (preceded by the article, on account of -way),[1] 95/12, 96/24, 120/29, 127/21, 132/26, 128/1, 153/6.

Parys, son of Priam, 15/14.
Polonye, Poleyne, Poland, 101/2, 31, 105/4, 32, 106/30, 107/19, 108/1, 4.
Polonyens, Poles invade Prussia, 106/3, 107/11, 17, 108/20.
Provost of Tormaday, 44/30, 46/3, etc.
Pruce, Prussia, 98/13, 108/22, 33, 140/11.
Prussyens, 107/1.

[1] Hence *Macbeth* I. ii: 'Sweno, *the* Norway's king, craves composition.'

Rome, 124/10.
Rubyon, a giant, suitor for Beatrice, in the army of King Alymodes, 56/32, 82/25, 83/4 ff.

Sadoyn[e], son of the King of Prussia, 102/24 ff.
Salamandre, the native country of the giant Rubyon and of his brother, 93/19, 95/1, 96/29 ff.
Spayne, 124/10.
Subyon, an upstart in the court of Eglantine, who betrays her, 173/9, 24, 175/19, 176/3.
Syluayne, a thief, 204/8, 205/4, 19.

Tormaday, the residence of Eglantine, 34/10, 38/5, 7, 39/19 ff.
Troians, 15/3.
Troye, 14/13, 15/1, 11.
Troylus, 15/14.

GLOSSARY.

A, *prep.* (O. E. *on.*) It answers to Modern English *on* or *in*, and precedes nouns, adjectives, and participles present.
(*a*) abak, back, *adv.* 167/19; a fote, on foot, 190/6; a horsbak, 180/27, 183/16; awerke, at work, to work, 60/16; a lande, 198/30, 199/25.
(*b*) a hyghe, on high, 20/12; alowde, aloud, 180/8, 185/1; alowe, 107/34.
(*c*) the noyse and the feste that was *adoyng*, 67/5; she wist not, whether she was *a*-wakyng or a slepe, 152/34.

A, *prep.* of: a power, 109/9. Probably also in 'alonge' and 'alyue,' *see* Introduction, p. xvi.

A, prefix, be-, afore, before, 176/1, 190/6.

Abak, *adv.* back, 167/19.

Accomptes, accounts; make accomptes, make hope, 186/27.

Acoynt, acquaint, 66/27. (O. Fr. *acointier.*)

Acquyte, acquit, 171/26.

Ado, affair, 178/28, 195/2. (Original: *affaire.*)

Affectual, hearty; prayenge right affectually, 49/27.

Affeyt, educate, 14/17. (O. Fr. *afaitier*, to tame, to educate.)

Afor, before, 37/17, 176/1.

Alonge, *adv.* fully, 26/6, 199/3.

Alonge, *prep.* along, 188/12.

Alyaunce, alliance, 67/16; plur. 8/23.

Amarytude, bitterness, 90/5. (L. *amaritudo.* Original: *amertume.*)

Amours, amoures, love in connection with pucelle, *i. e.* Eglantine, passim; besides this, 69/2, 26, 92/19, 75/15 (amours and loue).

Amyte, friendship, 188/9. (O. Fr. *amité.*)

An-angred, angry, 106/7, 169/19, 170/26.

Apayde, content, satisfied, 28/13, 34/4, 39/15.

Apostata, renegate, 70/6.

Appete, aim at, 13/26.

Appiere, appear, 187/21.

Ar, ere, before, 62/30.

Ascrye, exclaim, 106/33, 113/2, 169/29. Cf. escrye. (O. Fr. *escrier.*)

Asondre, asunder, 29/24.

Aspye, *vb.* spy, 18/10.

Assaut, assault, 69/3.

Astate, estate, 176/10.

Aswaged, assuage, 155/14.

Atones, at once, 195/5.

Atte, at, 197/9, 198/15, 206/8.

Attouch, touch, 26/8.

Auantage, advantage, 18/11, 129/25; auauntage, 75/34.

Auaunced, advance, 101/34, 141/17.

Aulmonere, purse, 82/8. (O. Fr. *aumosniere.*)

Auowe, vow, 106/5.

Awerke, at work, to work, 60/16.

Ax, ask, 23/13, 33/19, 42/1, 13, 47/12.

Barnag[e], valiantness, 33/25. (O.F. *barnage.*)

Bataylle, regiment (same meaning in O. Fr.), 184/32, 201/9, 10.

Batelment, battlement, 90/18.

Beaulte, beauty, 8/7, 13/6; (beawte, 13/9).
Become, go, 18/13.
Behouffe, behoof, 49/26.
Behourdyng, jousting, 76/14. (O. F. *behourd*, M. H. G. *buhurd*.) Cf. Chaucer, *C. T.*, Prologue, l. 52: 'Ful ofte tyme he hadde the *bord* bygonne.' But several parallel instances are cited to show that *bord* here means table, the dais at which the guests and host sat.
Beneured, happy, 11/10. (O. Fr. *ben eurez* = bien heureux.)
Benyngne, benign, 189/21.
Beslepe, sleep in, 178/15.
Bestaylle, cattle, 7/3, 5. (O. Fr. *bestail*.)
Blasure, escutcheon, 15/21.
Bode (preterite of *bide*), abode, 180/27.
Bren, burn, 52/27.
Broch, broach, 25/4, 26/4, 184/21.
Bruit (bruyt), report, 19/11, 14, 211/29.
Bruse, break, 28/9; brusen = bruised. (O. Fr. *brisier*.)
Bruyaunt, making a noise, a bustle, 42/5. (O. Fr. *bruire*, to make a noise.)
Bussynes, straight trumpets, 57/11, 183/6. (O. Fr. *busine*; Lat. *buccina*.)
Butyue? = buty, booty, 204/14.
Byfyghteresse, valiant woman, 189/15. (Original: *batailleresse*.)

Caytyf, cative, prisoner, 146/3. (O. Fr. *caitif*; Lat. *captivus*.)
Cheff, chief, 55/2.
Chere, cheer, face, 42/5. (O. Fr. *chiere*.)
Chose (preterite of *chuse*), saw, 25/23; chosen, seen, 53/16.
Choys, sight, 56/2.
Chuse, perceive, see, 48/9, 64/5. (Original: *choisir*.)
Cleues, cliffs, 117/14.
Coll, embrace, 195/3. (O. Fr. *accoler*.)
Combrauns, obstacle, hindrance. (O. Fr. *combrance*.)
Complayse, please, 157/5. (Lat. *complacere*; O. Fr. *complaire*.)
Comprehende, encompass, embrace, 124/6.
Conestable, head captain, 100/29, 107/34; counstable, 104/13.
Conquest, *vb.* conquer, take.
Conteyne, behave; look well.
Corage (O. Fr.), mind, 15/17, 16/2, 43/22, 51/11, 52/22, etc.; plur. 17/11.
Coulpe, fault, 74/9. (Lat. *culpa*.)
Coyffe, coif, the cap under the helmet, 28/19. (O. Fr. *coiffe*.)
Crauent, overthrow. (O. Fr. *cravanter*.)
Credence, belief, faith, 185/20. O. Fr. *credance, crëance*.
Cure, care, 65/23. (Lat. *cura*.)
Curteys, courteous, 39/27, 29.

Damesel (dameseyll, 143/22; damoysell, 39/2, 43/28, 47/4, etc.), damsel, 143/8.
Dampnable, damnable, 177/21.
Defend, prohibit, 184/8.
Deffensable, defendable, 190/18.
Delyber, deliberate, 117/32.
Delyte, delight, 13/17.
Demayne (demene, 7/21), complayntes, make, utter, 21/6. (O. Fr. *demener*.)
Departe, lay a, lay apart, 17/9.
Destrer, courser, 27/13. (O. Fr. *destrier*.)
Detrench, hew to pieces, 28/18, 59/6, 85/30. (O. Fr. *detrenchier*.)
Deuoyer, duty, 101/6; deuoyre, 113/3. (O. Fr. *devoir*.)
Deuyse, *vb.* talk, 52/17.
Deuyses, *sb.* talking, conversation, 30/1, 121/5, 129/21, 131/2, 144/32, 153/10. (O. Fr. *deviser*, relate.)
Displeysaunt, displeasing, disagreeable, 27/19; displeased, 127/11.
Dolaunt, sorry, grieved, 21/2, 25/25, 99/6, etc. (O. Fr. *dolent, dolant*, from the verb *doloir*; Lat. *dolere*.)
Doleaunce, grief, 26/3, 179/2.
Dommage, (1) it were dommage, it were a pity, 64/27, 74/7.
(2) damage, injury, 86/27; damage, 92/10.
Dommage, *vb.* injure, damage, 200/29.
Dompt, subdue, 196/14.

Doub (dowb), dub, 24/2, 8.
Drad, dreaded, 53/21.
Dronke, drunk, 178/9.
Drue, drew, 23/6.
Dure, endure, 123/19.
Dyspleasaunce, displeasure, sorrow, 60/9.

Efte, afterwards, 59/11.
Eke, also, 60/21, 126/13. (O. E. *ēāc.*)
Embate, refl. enter vehemently. (O. Fr. *s'embatre.*)
Emonge, among, 191/3.
Empraynte, encounter, 62/30. (O. Fr. *empreinte.*)
Enfamouse, infamous, 178/5.
Engyne, wit, 17/3. (O. Fr. *engien*; Lat. *ingenium.*)
Entent, intention, attention, 194/6, 202/26.
Entier (O. Fr.), entire, 179/5.
Eny, any, 178/8, 184/19, 188/33, 196/31.
Eschewe, evade, 185/14. (O. Fr. *esquiver.*)
Esprised, inflamed, 68/2, 77/10, 79/33. (O. Fr. *espris*, from *esprendre.*)
Exercyte, army, 174/33, 175/16, 192/11, 197/7. (Lat. *exercitus.*)

Facion, fashion, maner, 17/2, 157/7, 189/15.
Famyllyer, familiar, intimate friend, 51/16.
Fantassye, sorrowful thoughts, 112/6.
Fantasyouse wylle, imagination, 17/7.
Fayeture, stature, 53/18. (O. Fr. *faicture.*)
Faytes of armes, feats, 14/17, 63/23, 93/4, 106/12, 24, 157/17.
Feery, ferry, 34/8.
Felawe, fellow, 8/6, 8/19.
Felyship, fellowship, following company, 132/2, 135/11, 201/22.
Fet, fetch, 117/7.
Forthar, further, 31/5.
Foyson, plenty, 7/2, 58/27, 89/7. Cf. Fuson. (O. Fr. *foison.*)
Frayed, afraid, 87/13.
Frist, first, 62/20.
Fuson, foison, 96/6, 179/31.

Gadre, gather, 11/8.
Galhouse, gallows, 187/24, 189/3.
Gardebras, a piece of armour to protect the shoulders and arms, 83/16. (O. Fr. Du Cange, *antebrachia.*)
Germayn (cousin), german, 73/31, 163/22.
Graff, engraft, 104/24.
Grommes, grooms, 19/8.
Guysarme (O. Fr.), a long weapon with a spear at its head, 190/17, 35, 191/15, 202/24.
Gybet (gybette), gallows, 182/22, 188/1, 191/12.

Habandoune, abandon, 111/21, 136/17.
Haboundaunce, abundance, 144/13, 148/9. 172/11.
Haboundaunt, 11/12.
Haue = lead, take, bring, 96/20, 177/32, 181/17, 183/2, 189/30, etc.
Hauoyre, property, 64/26, 92/1. (O. Fr. *avoir.*)
Hawten, proud, 173/10. (O. Fr. *haltain.*)
Henged, hanged, 29/7.
Heue, heave, 28/15, 57/17.
Hit, it, 19/17, 25/10, 29/8, etc.

Incontynent (O. Fr.), immediately, 56/16, 60/4, 64/30, 89/30, 93/30, 187/1, 194/7.
Inprenable, impregnable, 182/8.
Iouencell (O. Fr.), youth, 18/5, 19/25, 20/28, 23/4, 25/16, etc.

Kene, cows, 114/9.
Kerle, churl, 173/18; 'churl' occurs, 173/13, 16. (O. E. *ceorl.*)
Knowlege, he came to his knowlege, came again to himself, recovered his senses, 49/19.
Kyen, kine, cows, 119/11. Cf. Kene.
Kynrede, kindred, 17/9.
Kyt, cut, 85/30.

Lad, led, 50/19.
Largesse, liberality, 82/19.
Leches cyrurgiens, surgeons, 102/18. (O. E. *lǣce.*)
Lese, lose, 43/15.

Lette, hinder, 41/6.
Leuer, liefer, rather, 183/23.
Loenge (O. Fr.), praise, 72/9.
Long, belong, 17/4, 111/26.
Louenge, loenge, praise, 160/8.
Lynage, kindred, 72/23, 78/32, 99/35, 109/13.

Machyne, intend, 177/19, 199/4. (Lat. *machinari.*)
Madamoselle, 53/3.
Maister, captain, 205/30.
Malgre, in spite of, 189/9. Cf. Maulgre. (O. Fr. *malgré.*)
Mark, observe, notice, 179/30.
Martrons, martens, 50/26.
Maulgre, malgre, in spite of, 8/25, 9/1.
Maumetys (from Mahomet), idols, 137/27.
Mayster = maister, master, 3/8, 14/2, 14/19, 15/8, 16/10, etc.
Maystresse, nurse, governess, 38/4, 49/6, 51/4, etc.
Maystrye, victory, 200/11.
Medle, fight, battle, 180/14. (O. Fr. *meslee.*)
Merveyll (Mervayll), marvel, 51/5, 56/31, 63/16, etc.
Meyne, band, 205/1. (O. Fr. *meignee.*)
Mo, Moo, more, 104/31, 106/31, 167/6, etc.
Modere, moderate, 5/7. (O. Fr. *modérer.*)
Mowe, be able, 14/8, 32/7, 38/14, 43/14, 46/31, etc. (O. E. *mugan.*)
Myddes, Myddys, middle, 27/18, 48/28.
Mykel (Mekel), much, 71/26, 93/13, 186/23.
Mynysshe, diminish, 71/13.
Myschaunte, miserable, wicked, 178/5, 186/20, 188/29. (O. Fr. *meschëant.*)
Myspryse, mistake, misbehave, 49/32. (O. Fr. *mesprendre.*)
Myster, be in need, 77/32. (O. Fr. *mestier*, need, want.)

Ne, nor, 37/1.
Necessayre, necessary, 197/28.
Nother, a, an other (a very common mistake; cf. the tone, the tother, that one, that other), 3/20, 177/35, 188/26, 194/32.
Noureture (norreture), breeding, education, 60/12, 74/8.
Nouryce, nurse, 39/4.
Nyghe, approach, 135/22.
Nys, ne is, is not, 19/22, 133/4, 148/2.

Obeyssaunce, obedience, 69/27, 135/35, 196/15.
Oblyuyon, forgetting, forgetfulness, 74/1, 94/11.
Obtempre, obtemperate, grant, 93/17.
Occysion, slaughter, 58/4, 88/13, 142/28, 166/22. (Lat. *occisio.*)
Olyphauntes, trumpet, 183/5. (O. Fr. *olifan.*)
Oost, host, army, 6/19, 9/11, 194/25, 197/8, etc.
Oryson, prayer, 12/8, 98/8. (O. Fr. *orison.*)
Ouerwenynge (Original: oultrecuidant), bold, conceited, 72/26, 186/21.
Oure (Owre), hour, 97/4, 113/13, 117/10, etc.

Paas, pace, 29/18, 40/10.
Palays, palace, 12/6, 14/20, etc.
Parauenture, peradventure, 72/15.
Parell, peril, 49/11, 98/7.
Parfit, perfect, 179/2, 192/23.
Parfurnysshe, grant, 169/1.
Part, depart, 19/1, 20/14.
Penoncelles (dim. of pennon, standard), colours, 56/5.
Pensefull, sad, melancholy, 16/10, 31/10, 127/4, 193/9.
Perce, pierce, 54/8.
Perdurable, lasting, 185/23.
Perell, Pereyll, peril, 182/29, 189/12, 26, 201/24. Cf. Parell.
Personne, person, 145/23.
Pert, expert (Original: *appert*), skilled, 190/34.
Peyne, pain, 42/25, 179/1, etc.
Peysaunt, heavy, 168/11. (Fr. *pesant.*)
Peyse. *See* Poyse.
Pleysaunt, pleasant, 199/31, 200/28.
Porfend, cleave, 28/21. (O. Fr. *pourfendre.*)

Powl, pull, 119/17.
Poyse, weight; assault, attack, 194/15, 28, 201/15. (O. Fr. *poids.*)
Praty, pretty, 53/16, 56/30, 66/23.
Preesse, press, throng, 194/26.
Prese, press, 168/4.
Prest, ready, 23/20, 28/6, 47/24, etc.
Preu, Prew, valiant, 164/32, 165/8, 178/7, 193/10. (O. Fr. *preud, preu.*)
Proche, approach, 65/25.
Proes, prowess, 82/32, 109/4, 180/34, 195/12.
Proffe, proof, test, 40/21.
Promesse, promise, 90/7.
Promettre, *vb.* promise, 78/13; promytte, 131/12, 137/20, 138/30, etc.
Pryuate, deprive, 23/21.
Pucell, Pucelle, Pucel, maid, damsel, 40/11, 32, etc.
Pusell, pucelle, damsel, 143/13.
Pyere, peer, equal, 147/30.
Pyght (Original: *adroit*), skilled, 47/31.
Pytoyoble, pitiful, 94/23.

Quareylles, arrows, 202/20. (O. Fr. *quarrel.*)
Queyntaunce, acquaintance, 67/30.
Quite, acquit, 29/22, 143/12, 19.

Raenson, ransom, 6/13, 89/35, 92/22.
Rayson, reason, 126/6.
Recount (Original: *rencontra*), meet, 163/21. Perhaps a misprint, the regular word being *recountre*, 86/2, 132/4, etc.
Recule, draw back, 88/22, 106/31, 107/18, 164/9, etc.; recuyelle, 107/5.
Redoubt, dread, 1/2, 11/11.
Reffut, refuge, 184/3. (O. Fr. *refuit, refui.*)
Reforce, strengthen, 107/1, 110/13, 113/6.
Refrene, refrain, 185/11; refreyn, 181/25.
Renge, range, 105/10, 106/22.
Rengne, reign, 140/13.
Renomme, renoun, 38/14, 71/14, 82/32, 99/9, 100/2.
Renommed, renouned, 48/5.
Renoyouse, disagreeable, 174/23.
Renyed, renegate, 185/31.
Replyque, reply, 54/6.
Rest, the spere on the rest (Original: *la lance au poing*), 24/16.
Retentiss, resound, echo, 183/7.
Reuerence, make the reuerence, courtesy, bow, 70/22, 77/2.
Rewle, rule, 58/17.
Rewthe, ruth, regret, sorrow, 17/2, 20/16, 21/5, 30/11, etc.
Roche, rock, 97/26, 100/11.
Roughte, reached, attacked, 28/7, 108/4. (M. E. rechen, *pt. t.* raghte, raughte.)
Roume, room, 165/7.
Royalme (realme), realm, 6/25, 20/16, 18, 101/2, 103/14, etc.
Rydde, rode (sg. influenced by the plural), 83/27.

Salew, salute, 23/3.
Sauf, save, except, 133/26, 136/1, 138/9.
Sawt, assault, 187/5.
Scape, escape, 181/16, 205/22.
Seen, considering (Original: *attendu*), 29/20.
Self, same; that self knyght, 51/25.
Semblaunt, appearance; make a semblaunt, let appear, 37/16.
Sepayr, separate, 131/29.
Shewe, show, 137/1.
Solempne, solemn, 177/16.
Sore, *adv.* very, 49/2, 59/17, 33, 60/17, etc.
Sorough, sorrow, 70/7, 90/14.
Soudyoure, soldier, 38/13, 90/1.
Special, intimate friend, 84/34.
Sporys (Spowrys, 26/4), spurs, 18/8, 25/4.
Sprenct, besprinkled, 25/25.
Stablysshe, establish, 144/25.
Sterke ded, quite dead, 27/7, 30/13, 62/25, 87/11.
Strenthe, strength, 190/13.
Subgette, subject, 1/6, 11/11.
Succombe, subdue, 104/30.
Swone, swoon, 19/28.
Swoune, swoon, 19/11, 30/7.
Syn, synce, afterwards, 15/2, 40/1, 195/4.
Syth, since, 180/3, 183/2, 187/20, etc.

Tenement, feudal possession, tenure, 52/6.
Thabylyments = the habiliments, 15/26. The *e* is dropped before nouns beginning with a vowel.
Thende, the ende, 184/35, 187/17, 24, 197/16.
Thentree, the entrance, 181/9.
Thoo days, those days, 144/10.
Threty, thirty, 71/27. (O. E. *þrittig.*)
Thusage, the usage, 14/2.
To-, as prefix of verbs involves the idea of separation, dismembering; cf. O. E. *tóberstan*, burst asunder; *tóbeatan*, beat to pieces.
To brayne, dash out the brain, 141/27, 169/1.
To cutte, cut to pieces, 101/20, 141/31.
To fore, before, 1/10, 3/8, 15/23.
To hewe, hew to pieces, 142/23, 164/2.
Torent, rend asunder, 97/21.
Tourbe, multitude, 191/20. (Lat. *turba.*)
Toure, tower, 90/16, 19, 206/21.
Tournoye, tilt, joust, 14/2.
To your ward = towards you, 38/14; cf. to them warde, 86/1; to hym warde, 89/3.
Trad, *pt. t.* of tread, 49/1, 89/5.
Trahyssh, betray, 178/21.
Traueylle, work, to labour, 26/21, 31/19.
Trenchaunt, sharp, 28/3.
Tryste, melancholy, 184/1; trystesse, sadness, 112/3.
Tyse, entice, 77/8.

Unfamouse, infamous, 186/20.
Unpolysshed, unpolluted, 23/25.

Vaunce, advance, 40/23, 53/19, 77/1, etc.
Veraye, true, 41/2.
Vitayll, victuals, 7/3.
Vouchsauff, 29/2, 46/10.
Vysage, face, 89/23, 98/23.

Walop, gallop, 26/5, 42/5, 204/5.
Warauntyse, protect, defend, 88/1.
Ware, clever, 167/25. Cf. M. E. 'ware and wise.'
Waunton, wanton, 72/31.
Werke, work, 40/15, 71/34, 81/24, 82/35, etc.
Wexe, wax, become, 54/1, 64/16.
Where as, where, 4/26, 13/18.
Whyle, other, sometimes, 1/13.
Wrecke, revenge, 95/20. (O. E. *wracu.*)
Wyst, knew, 29/3, 13, 49/4, 183/21.

Y-, prefix forming past participle (O. E. *ge.*)
Yblinded, 113/32.
Ybounde, 113/32, 170/35.
Ybrought, 107/20.
Yeast, 111/25.
Ygadred, 144/14.
Yholde, 110/1.
Yhorsed, 102/5.
Youghthe, youth, 174/29.
Yrought, reached, 169/4.
Ysette, 162/24.

Richard Clay & Sons, Limited, London and Bungay.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LVIII.

Caxton's

Blanchardyn and Eglantine

c. 1489.

FROM LORD SPENCER'S UNIQUE IMPERFECT COPY, COMPLETED BY THE ORIGINAL FRENCH AND THE SECOND ENGLISH VERSION OF 1595,

EDITED BY

DR. LEON KELLNER,

OF VIENNA.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,

DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

1890.

[*Reprinted 1906.*]

Price Seventeen Shillings.

Early English Text Soci

Committee of Management:

Director: DR. FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL,

Treasurer: HENRY B. WHEATLEY, E

Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67 VICTORIA ROAD, FI

Hon. Secs. for America: { North & East: Prof. G. L. Kittredge, Harvard C
South & West: Prof. J. W. Bright, Johns Hopkin

LORD ALDENHAM, M.A.	Prof. NAPIER, M.A.,
Prof. ISRAEL GOLLANCZ, M.A.	EDWARD B. PEACOCK
SIDNEY L. LEE, M.A., D.Lit.	ALFRED W. POLLARD
HENRY LITTLEHALES, Esq.	Rev. Prof. WALTER W.
Rev. Prof. J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A.	Dr. HENRY SWEET, M
Dr. J. A. H. MURRAY, M.A.	Dr. W. ALDIS WRIGHT

(*With power to add Workers to their number.*)

Bankers:

THE UNION OF LONDON AND SMITH'S BANK, 2, PRINCES

The Early English Text Society was started by Dr. Furnivall purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which Eng rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early langu

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, beside *Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxt black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded venience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the forty-one years of the Society's existence, it has p whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £30,000, an amount of g for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, mu and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of the of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspere, who care two goin the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have be for it; and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work the pared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the nu Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that every Membe before his or her friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for libe Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper History of our Langu Life is possible.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 for the Original Series, and £1 1*s.* for the Extra Series, due in advance January, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, of London and Smith's Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. Dalziel, Esq., Ph.D., Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts post must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1*s.* for the Original Series, and Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at th after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third be *List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.*

Early English Text Society.

Committee of Management:

Director: DR. FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A.

Treasurer: HENRY B. WHEATLEY, ESQ.

Hon. Sec.: W. A. DALZIEL, ESQ., 67 VICTORIA ROAD, FINSBURY PARK, N.

Hon. Secs. for America: North & East: Prof. G. L. KITTREDGE, Harvard Coll., Cambr., Mass.
South & West: Prof. J. W. BRIGHT, Johns Hopkins Univ., Baltimore.

LORD ALDENHAM, M.A.	PROF. NAPIER, M.A., Ph.D.
PROF. ISRAEL GOLLANCZ, M.A.	EDWARD B. PEACOCK, ESQ.
SIDNEY L. LEE, M.A., D.Lit.	ALFRED W. POLLARD, M.A.
HENRY LITTLEHALES, ESQ.	REV. PROF. WALTER W. SKEAT, Litt.D.
REV. PROF. J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A.	DR. HENRY SWEET, M.A.
DR. J. A. H. MURRAY, M.A.	DR. W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A.

(*With power to add Workers to their number.*)

Bankers:

THE UNION OF LONDON AND SMITH'S BANK, 2, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

THE Early English Text Society was started by Dr. Furnivall in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early language and life.

On the starting of the Society, so many Texts of importance were at once taken in hand by its Editors, that it became necessary in 1867 to open, besides the *Original Series* with which the Society began, an *Extra Series* which should be mainly devoted to fresh editions of all that is most valuable in printed MSS. and Caxton's and other black-letter books, though first editions of MSS. will not be excluded when the convenience of issuing them demands their inclusion in the Extra Series.

During the forty-one years of the Society's existence, it has produced, with whatever shortcomings, and at a cost of over £30,000, an amount of good solid work for which all students of our Language, and some of our Literature, must be grateful, and which has rendered possible the beginnings (at least) of proper Histories and Dictionaries of that Language and Literature, and has illustrated the thoughts, the life, the manners and customs of our forefathers and foremothers.

But the Society's experience has shown the very small number of those inheritors of the speech of Cynewulf, Chaucer, and Shakspere, who care two guineas a year for the records of that speech. 'Let the dead past bury its dead' is still the cry of Great Britain and her Colonies, and of America, in the matter of language. The Society has never had money enough to produce the Texts that could easily have been got ready for it: and many Editors are now anxious to send to press the work they have prepared. The necessity has therefore arisen for trying to increase the number of the Society's members, and to induce its well-wishers to help it by gifts of money, either in one sum or by instalments. The Committee trust that every Member will bring before his or her friends and acquaintances the Society's claims for liberal support. Until all Early English MSS. are printed, no proper History of our Language or Social Life is possible.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1*s.* a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 1*s.* for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, crost 'Union of London and Smith's Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them, must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1*s.* for the Original Series, and 1*s.* for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the *list-prices by sending* the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

Among the MSS. and old books which need copying or re-editing, are:—

ORIGINAL SERIES.

English Inventories and other MSS. in Canterbury Cathedral (5th Report, Hist. MSS. Com.).
Maumetrie, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
The Romance of Troy. Harl. 525, Trentham.
Biblical MS., Corpus Cambr. 434 (ab. 1375).
Hampole's unprinted Works.
þe Clowde of Unknowyng, from Harl. MSS. 2373, 959, Bibl. Reg. 17 C 26, &c. Univ. Coll. Oxf. 14.
A Lanterne of Liȝt, from Harl. MS. 2324.
Soule-hele, from the Vernon MS.
Lydgate's unprinted Works.
Boethius de Consol.; **Pilgrim**, 1426, &c. &c.
Early Treatises on Music: Descant, the Gamme, &c.
Skelton's englishing of Diodorus Siculus.
Boethius, in prose, MS. Auct. F. 3. 5, Bodley.
Penitential Psalms, by Rd. Maydenstoon, Brampton, &c. (Rawlinson, A. 389, Douce 232, &c.).
Documents from the early Registers of the Bishops of all Dioceses in Great Britain.
Ordinances and Documents of the City of Worcester.
T. Brews's Passion of Christ, 1422. Harl. 2338.
Jn. Crophill or Crephill's Tracts, Harl. 1735.
Burgh's Cato.
Memoriale Credencium, &c., Harl. 2398.
Book for Recluses, Harl. 2372.
Lollard Theological Treatises, Harl. 2343, 2330, &c.
H. Selby's Northern Ethical Tract, Harl. 2388, art. 20.
Hilton's Ladder of Perfection, Cott. Faust. B 6, &c.
Supplementary Early English Lives of Saints.
Select Prose Treatises from the Vernon MS.
Metrical Homilies, Edinburgh MS.
Lyrical Poems from the Fairfax MS. 16, &c.
Prose Life of St. Audry, A.D. 1595, Corp. Oxf. 120.
English Miscellanies from MSS., Corp. Oxford.
Miscellanies from Oxford College MSS.
Dieue Mori, Jesus Coll. Oxf. 39; Bodl. Laud 99.
Mirrour of the blessed lijf of Ihesu Crist. MSS. of Sir Hy. Ingilby, Bart., Lord Aldenham, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 123, &c.
Poem on Virtues and Vices, &c., Harl. 2260.
Maundevyle's Legend of Gwydo, Queen's, Oxf. 383.
Book of Warrants of Edw. VI., &c., New Coll. Oxf. 328.
Adam Loutfut's Heraldic Tracts, Harl. 6149-50.
Rules for Gunpowder and Ordnance, Harl. 6355.
John Watton's englisht Speculum Christiani, Corpus, Oxf. 155, Laud G.12, Thoresby 536, Harl. 2250, art. 20.
Verse and Prose in Harl. MS. 4012.
The Englisht Disciplina Pasteralis, and Statutes of Black Roger, in Worcester Cathedral MS. 172.

EXTRA SERIES.

Eris of Tolous.
Ypotis.
Sir Eglamoure.
Sir Gowther.
Dame Siriz, &c.
Orfeo (Digby, 86).
Dialogues between the Soul and Body.
Barlaam and Josaphat.
Amis and Amiloun.
Ipomedon.
Sir Generides, from Lord Tollemache's MS.
The Troy-Book fragments once said Barbour's, in the Cambr. Univ. Library and Douce MSS.
Poems of Charles, Duke of Orleans.
Carols and Songs.
Songs and Ballads, Ashmole MS. 48.
The Siege of Rouen, from Harl. MSS. 2256. 753, Egerton 1995, Bodl. 3562, E. Museo 124, &c.
Octavian.
Ywain and Gawain.
Libeaus Desconus.
Auntyrs of Arther.
Avowyng of King Arther.
Sir Perceval of Galles.
Sir Isumbras.
Partonope of Blois, Univ. Coll. Oxf. 188, &c.
Pilgrimage to Jerusalem, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 357.
Other Pilgrimages to Jerusalem, Harl. 2333, &c.
Horæ, Penitential Psalms, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxf. 207
St. Brandan's Confession, Queen's Coll. Oxf. 210.
Scotch Heraldry Tracts, copy of Caxton's **Book of Chivalry**, &c., Queen's Coll. Oxford 161.
Stevyn Scrope's Doctryne and Wysedome of the Auncyent Philosophers, A.D. 1450, Holl. 2256.

The Subscription to the Society, which constitutes membership, is £1 1s. a year for the ORIGINAL SERIES, and £1 1s. for the EXTRA SERIES, due in advance on the 1st of JANUARY, and should be paid by Cheque, Postal Order, or Money-Order, crost 'Union of London and Smith's Bank,' to the Hon. Secretary, W. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. Members who want their Texts posted to them must add to their prepaid Subscriptions 1s. for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series, yearly. The Society's Texts are also sold separately at the prices put after them in the Lists; but Members can get back-Texts at one-third less than the List-prices by sending the cash for them in advance to the Hon. Secretary.

Early English Text Society.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1905 *are* —

127. **An Alphabet of Tales**, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part II. 10s.
128. **The Medieval Records of a London City Church (St. Mary-at-Hill)**, ed. by Hy. Littlehales. Pt. II. 10s
129. **The English Register of Godstow Nunnery**, ed. from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Pt. I. 10s.

The Publications for 1906 *will be* :—

130. **The English Register of Godstow Nunnery**, edited from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. A. Clark. Pt. II. 15s.
131. **The Brut, or Chronicle of England**, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. H. Brie. Part I. [*At Press.*
132. **John Metham's Works**, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hardin Craig, and given by the owner of the MS.

The Publications for 1906 *and* 1907 *will be chosen from* :—

The Osney Cartulary, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. [*At Press.*
The Coventry Leet Book, edited by Miss M. Dormer Harris. Part I. [*At Press.*
The English Register of Godstow Nunnery, edited by the Rev. Dr. Andrew Clark. Part III.
An Alphabet of Tales, in Northern English, from the Latin, ed. Mrs. M. M. Banks. Part III.
Twenty-six Political and other Poems from Digby MS. 102, &c., edited by Dr. J. Kail. Part II.
The Land Troy-Book, edited from the unique MS. Lincoln 305, by Dr. J. Ernst Wülfing. Part III.
The Old English Rule of Bp. Chrodegang, and the **Capitula of Bp. Theodulf**, ed. Prof. Napier, Ph.D. [*At Press.*
Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne (1303), and its French original, re-ed. by Dr. Furnivall. Part III.
The Alliterative Siege of Jerusalem, edited by Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Prof. Kaluza, Ph.D. [*At Press.*
Alain Chartier's Quadrilogue, englisht, edited from the unique MS. by Prof. J. W. H. Atkins, M.A.
Minor Poems of the Vernon MS. Part III. Introduction and Glossary by H. Hartley, M.A.
Sir David Lyndesay's Works. Part VI. and last. Edited by the Rev. Wm. Bayne, M.A. [*At Press.*
Jacob's Well, edited from the unique Salisbury Cathedral MS. by Dr. A. Brandeis. Part II. [*At Press.*
Vices and Virtues, from the unique MS., ab. 1200 A.D., ed. Prof. Dr. F. Holthausen. Part II. [*At Press.*
The Exeter Book (Anglo-Saxon Poems), re-ed. from the unique MS., by Prof. Gollancz, M.A. Part II. [*At Press.*
Prayers and Devotions, from the unique MS. Cotton Titus D. 19, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq. [*Copied.*
North-English Metrical Homilies, from Ashmole MS. 42 &c., ed. G. H. Gerould, D.Litt.
Vegetius on the Art of War, edited from the MSS. by L. C. Wharton, M.A.
Shirley's Book of Gode Maners, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
The Wars of Alexander the Great, Thornton MS., ed. by J. S. Westlake, M.A., and I. A. Magnus, Litt.D.

EXTRA SERIES.

The Publications for 1905 (*one guinea*) *are* :—

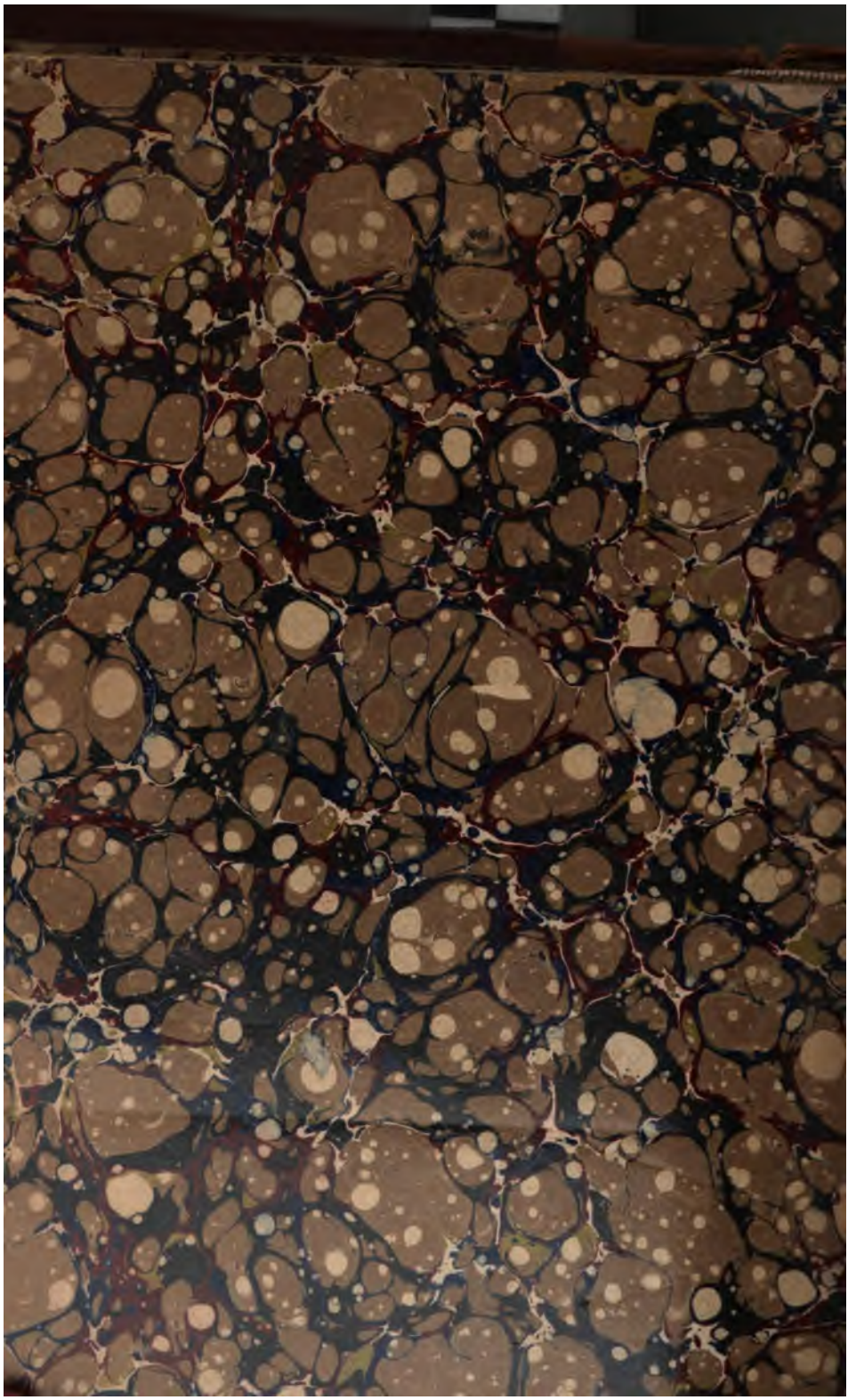
XCIV. **Respublica**, a Play on Social England in Q. Mary's reign, A.D. 1553, ed. Leonard A. Magnus, Litt.D. 12s.
XCV. **The Legend of the Holy Grail**, by Miss Dorothy Kempe, Pt. V of Lovelich's **History of Holy Grail**. 6s.
XCVI. **Myrc's Festial**, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part I. 12s.

The Publications for 1906 *and* 1907 *will be chosen from* :—

XCVII. **Lydgate's Troy Book**, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Hy. Bergen. Part I. [*At Press.*
XCVIII. **Skelton's Magnificence**, edited by Dr. Robert L. Ramsay, with an Introduction. [*At Press.*
Emare, re-edited from the MSS. by Miss Edith Rickert, Ph.D. [*At Press.*
Lydgate's Siege of Thebes, re-edited from the MSS. by Prof. Dr. A. Erdmann. [*At Press.*
The Owl and Nightingale: 2 Texts parallel, ed. G. F. H. Sykes, Esq. [*At Press.*
The Harrowing of Hell, four parallel Texts, re-edited by Prof. Hulme, M.A., Ph.D.
Ballads, Carols, &c., from J. Hyde's MS. Balliol 354, edited by Dr. R. Dyboski.
Myrc's Festial, edited from the best MSS. by Dr. Erbe. Part II.
William of Shoreham's Poems, re-edited by Dr. M. Konrath. Part II. [*At Press.*
The Non-Cycle Miracle Plays, re-edited by O. Waterhouse, B.A.
Melusine, the prose Romance, from the unique MS., ab. 1500, ed. A. K. Donald, B.A. Part II. [*At Press.*
Lovelich's Romance of Merlin, edited from the unique MS. by Dr. E. A. Kock. Part II.
Promptorium Parvulorum, c. 1440, from the Winchester MS., ed. Rev. A. L. Mayhew, M.A. Part I. [*At Press.*
Lydgate's Dance of Death, edited from the MSS. by Miss Florence Warren.
Wynkyn de Worde's English and French Phrase-book, etc., edited by Hermann Oelsner, Ph.D.
Secreta Secretorum: three prose Englishings, ab. 1440, ed. R. Steele, B.A. Part II. [*At Press.*
The Craft of Nombrynge, the earliest English Treatise on Arithmetic, ed. R. Steele, B.A. [*At Press.*
The Book of the Foundation of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, MS. ab. 1423, ed. Dr. Norman Moore. [*Set.*
Caxton's Mirror of the World, with 27 Woodcuts, edited by O. H. Prior, M.A.
The Chester Plays, Part II., re-edited by Dr. Matthews. [*At Press.*
Lichfield Gilds, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall; Introduction by Prof. R. C. K. Gonner. [*Text done.*
John Hart's Orthographie, from a unique MS. 1551, and his black-letter text, 1569, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
John Hart's Methode to teach Reading, 1570, ed. Prof. Otto Jespersen, Ph.D.
Extracts from the Rochester Diocesan Registers, ed. Hy. Littlehales, Esq.
The Three Kings' Sons, Part II., French collation, Introduction, &c., by Dr. L. Kellner.
The Coventry Plays, re-edited from the unique MS. by Dr. Matthews.
The Ancren Riwle, edited from its five MSS., by the late Prof. E. Kölbing, Ph.D., and Dr. Tolhausen.
Lovelich's History of the Holy Grail, Part VI. ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph.D.

LONDON: KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.
BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13 UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NON-CIR



Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 005 675 306

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

JUN 24 2000

STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY
Stanford, California